

UC-NRLF



B 3 287 575





Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2008 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

The Three Kings' Sons

edited by

F. J. Furnivall

Part I

(all published)

EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY

Extra Series, 67

1895

KRAUS REPRINT CO.

Millwood, New York

1973

G252
E2
11.11
11.11
11.11

*Unaltered Reprint produced with the permission of the
Early English Text Society*

KRAUS REPRINT CO.
A U.S. Division of Kraus-Thomson Organization Limited

Printed in Germany

The Three Kings' Sons.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series, LXVII.

1895.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

The Three Kings' Sons.

(ENGLISHT FROM THE FRENCH.)

PART I, THE TEXT.

EDITED FROM ITS UNIQUE MS, HARLEIAN 326, ABOUT 1500 A.D.

BY

F. J. FURNIVALL, M.A.,

TRINITY HALL, CAMBRIDGE; HON. DR. PHIL., BERLIN.

LONDON :

PUBLISHT FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO.,
PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHARING-CROSS ROAD.

1895.

Extra Series, LXVII.

R. CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON & BUNGAY.

PR
1119
A2
ser. 2
Mo. 67
MAIN

FOREWORDS.

WHAT a blessing it was, in old Days of Romance, for a Christian King, beset by Turks, to have a beautiful daughter! Of course all the young Princes and knights of Christendom pictured to themselves the lovely girl in distress, about to be sacrificed to a Heathen brute, and they at once resolv'd to go and fight for her father, and marry her. They thus kild two—nay, three—birds with one stone: first, they fought for the Faith, and saved their souls; next, they got a chance of the girl; and last, of her father's Kingdom. War, Love, and Sovereignty,—what could a man want more?

Here, surely, was a good subject for a story; and so thought the Frenchman—David Aubert, or some one else¹—who wrote the original of the enlight'nt romance (Harl. 326, ab. 1500 A.D.) told in the following pages. It is not a stirring narrative, for it's after the time when men really cared for fighting. In all the battles, no one is split in two; no one has his head clean cut off at one swipe; no one's back is broken; no one's arm or leg even is chopt right off. All the old details of a combat are smotherd up in generalities. Folks' feelings and apprehensions are dwelt upon; and the repetitions are as frequent and as tedious as in Tory speeches against Home Rule. Still, the story is readable, and this it is in brief:—

King Alfour of Sicily is invaded and half-conquered by the Turks. He has a lovely daughter Iolante. To help them, Prince Philip of France steals away incognito from Paris, and falls ill in Toledo. When well, he proceeds to Sicily with one of King Alfour's generals, Ferant, whom he rescues from

¹ "Several copies of this Romance are in the Bibliothèque Nationale, one of which (No. 6766) is described by Paulin Paris in *Les Manuscrits François*, tome i. (1836), pp. 106—108. This French MS was transcribed at Hesdin in 1463 by David Aubert, librarian to Philip the Good, Duke of Burgundy. For an account of Aubert, see the description of vol. i. of Perceforest in Royal MS. 15. E. V. (under *British and English Traditions*), in the authorship of which romance he there (at f. 3) claims (p. 2) a share. It seems that he makes a similar claim in the MS of the '*Conquestes du noble empereur Charlemaine*' (see J. Marchal's *Catalogue des MSS . . . de Bourgogne*, Brussels, tome ii. p. 291); and it is conjectured by Gaston Paris (*Histoire poétique de Charlemagne*, 1865, p. 96) that the whole authorship of the present Romance may not improbably be ascribed to David Aubert."—H. Ward's *Catalog*, i. 782-3.

the Turks, when taken in his first battle, and also captures King Ferabras of Persia. On seeing Princess Iolante, Philip falls violently in love with her.

Also to aid King Alfour, a joint expedition of French, Scotch and English troops, led by Prince David of Scotland, sails for Sicily, but is repulst. Afterwards a storm wrecks the allied fleet, and Prince David is saved from his Turkish foes, only by the mercy of Orcays, the Sultan's son, who soon sets him free, and sends him to Ferant and Prince Philip. They fight often with the Turks, and win, as Philip and David hearten the downcast Sicilian troops. Prince David falls in love with Iolante too.

Meantime, the third King's son, Prince Humphrey of England, steals away from England, also to help King Alfour. His ship is driven ashore at a Turkish town, and he is thrown into a dungeon. From this, he is freed by K. Ferabras of Persia, who has been temporarily releast by the Sicilians, and has promist to liberate Christian prisoners. By him, Prince Humphrey is enabled to join Prince Philip of France and Prince David of Scotland, and all three incognito,¹ are servants of Ferant, and attend on Princess Iolante, whom they all, of course, love. The Turkish prince, Orcays, who is taken prisoner, is also desperately in love with her.

In one battle, Prince Philip is taken, and beaten till he bleeds, by the Sultan, but is rescued. At last the Sultan is slain. King Alfour—by the help of the Three Princes—recovers all his cities, drives out the Turks, and is made Emperor of Germany.

War being over, the Three Princes go home, but return the next May as Kings—of France, England, and Scotland,—their fathers having died. They come back for the grand three-days' Tourney for the hand of Princess Iolante. King Philip of France wins her; and as the other kings have to be provided with wives, King Humphrey of England gives one of his beautiful sisters to King David of Scotland, and the other to the Sultan of Turkey; while he himself weds the Sultan's lovely sister, who has followed her brother's example, and turned Christian. There are grand wedding festivities; and the Emperor and Kings visit one another. King Philip gets Sicily after the Emperor's death. He and Kings Humphrey and David live happy with their wives, and have lots of fine children; but Sultan Orcays dies soon, childless; and his English widow comes back to England.

For language, the text has not much interest—to me, at least. *Finance*² for 'ransom' (p. 20/39, 93/13, &c.); 'yngoodly' for excellent (p. 174/23),

¹ Prince Philip's incognito is 'Le Despurveu' till Iolante changes it to 'Le Surnome.' Prince David is 'Athis,' and Prince Humphrey 'Ector.'

² This word is also used thus in the Romance of *Partenay*, l. 1853.

‘amegred’ = emaciated, Fr. *amaigrir* (p. 9/36); ‘chapelet,’ metaphorically (p. 25/1); ‘ensured’ = trained (p. 10/18), and a few other words are noteworthy: see Mr. Thomas Austin’s Glossary, where some interesting information, glossing Thucydides (IV. 135), will be found on p. 123/3. But Dr. Leon Kellner will deal with the Vocabulary, Syntax, sources, &c. in his Introduction. He was to have edited the Text,—of which his Wife made an excellent copy for the Society,—but he was prevented by his revision of Dr. R. Morris’s *Historical English Accidence*. I therefore had to take up *The Three Kings’ Sons*, and here is Part I. Dr. Kellner has collated the English text with its French original in Paris, and hopes to give us Part II next year. Our knowledge of the existence of the English version is due to Mr. Henry Ward’s admirable *Catalogue of the Romances in the British Museum*, one of the best bits of work that any member of the Museum staff has ever turned out.

F. J. FURNIVALL.

3, St. George’s Square, London, N.W.,
Saturday midnight, 9 Sept. 1893.

The Three Kings' Sons.

[Harley 326, leaf 8. The slight tags to final f and g are not printed].

A
4
 ftir the crucifyng of oure lord Ihesu crist, and that the After Christ's death,
 holy cristen feith was magnified and augmented in alle
 the Reaumes that at this day be cristenen / and that
 were founde in oure holy feith by the Apostells, and
 aftir by the holy doctoures / that same feith of oure
 lord Ihesu crist was so moche honoured and kepte that
 alle cristen Reaumes were in so good tranquillite and pees, that
8
 there was no warre a-monges them. ¶ And in this tyme reigned a
 kyng in fraunce, of right excellent and grete recommendacion,
 whos name was Charles, and had weddid a right faire lady,
 doughter to the kyng of Nauerne, whiche for hir vertues was so
12
 moche biloued and honoured of alle maner people thoroughout the
 Reaume, that more might no princesse be / The kyng and the
 Quene governed the Reaume in suche lone, pees, and concord, that
 the laude & praise therof sounded and spred ouer alle the worlde,
16
 for neuer thei did nor suffred, to their power, no creature to haue
 wrong nor violence; and if any gentilman were disherite bi mys-
 fortune or euil gouernaunce of his fadir, or were in any maner
 mysery or trouble, thei wolde helpe and comfort hym, & do their
20
 deuoir to reeouer hym ^{his} right, and suche honour as he was born [1 leaf 8, bk.]
 vnto. And in like wise, if ther were any poure gentilwoman
 frendles / thei wold helpe to mary hir / and so did they by Mar-
 chauntes that were fallen in-to pouerte by Infortune: thei wold
24
 releue them / and so wele thei did, þat by their merites the grace
 of god so largely abounded in them that thei had a sone / wherof
 thei were so ioifull / that more they might not be; and good cause
 had thei to be glad / for long it was or they had any / and at laste
28
 god sent them suche one as was bettir than any man can write of,
 aswele towards god as to the world / and god had formed hym of
 suche beaute, witte, trouthe and worthynes / and of alle condicions

and when
all Christian
kings are at
peace,

Charles, the
King of
France, weds
a princess of
Nauerne.

They help
all men in
trouble,

and poor
girls to
marry.

At last they
have a son,

(the best pos-
sible.

All the realm
thank God.

The Prince
is christend
Philip,

is well
brought-up,

[² leaf 9]

and grows
wiser and
better till he
is 19.

Now I turn
to the King
of Sicily.

that to a kynges sone perteyne to haue, not only for to gouerne that Reaume / but for to haue had al that part of the world vnder his gouernaunce. Now may ye thynke wele / that at his birthe the kyng & the Quene, and alle the Reaume, were gretly reioised / and gave thankinges and preisynges to god, with general processions, doying thorough alle the Reaume as belongith to suche cas / and moche more were thei comfortid / that the Reaume shold be succeeded by hym that came of that noble lyne / than of any othir cristen prince that they myght haue aftir the deth of their kyng. ¶ It is to thinke¹ that childe was cristened as to a kynges sone bilongeth / and he was named Philip. ¶ Of his norture & of his kepyng in his childhode / it is to thynke¹ also that he was diligently kepte / 12 and whan he was paste vij. yere age / he was putte in the handes of notable knyghtes / whiche were chosen by the kyng and his counsell for the most noble of the Reaume, bycause that by them he shulde be induced in alle good maners & condicions; for at that tyme / the 16 sones of kynges and of grete princes aftir that age were put in the handes of the moost notable knyghtes and worthi men / that the kynges or princes had in their lond / for bicause that the condicions of princes may many tymes auaille and helpe to the comon wele / and that princes wele condicioned may make and restore a desolat Reaume / and the contrary may put the moost noble and myghti Reaume in captyuyte & wrecchidnes. ¶ Wherefore it befil that this yonge Philip, the kynges sone, was so wele & honorably 24 norissed to god-ward and to the worlde / that alle thei of the Reaume, grete and litle, loued hym as moche as fadir myght loue the childe / and with all this was ²he the moost faire creature that any hert coude deuise / and the moost anyable persone to beholde / 28 that they that beheld hym, consideryng the maner & condicions werewith he was enewred / coude neuer be satisfied in beholdyng hym, so moche thei desired it / and more and more multiplied and grewe in hym witte, trouthe and curtesie / so long til he came to the 32 age of xix. yere, in such perfeccion as I haue tolde you / so moche biloued and so moche honoured / that vnnethe was there any withyn the Reaume that coude be wele content without they had seyn hym sumtyme of the yere. ¶ Now shal I leue of a while to speke of 36 hym til tyme shal be / and shal speke of the kyng of Syzile, whiche was at that tyme the next Reaume vnto the mysbileuers and enemyes of the feith / the whiche suffrid for the feith of Ihesu crist

¹ Bear in mind, remember.

moche peyne and duresse / he and alle tho of his Reaume / yn-so-
moche that they were brought to the vtirmost poynt of there
destruccïon / sauf that god sent them socours / like as ye may here
4 fether yn this present Boke.

[*Illumination: a Wedding.*]

- N**ow seith the tale / that than was there a kyng yn that King Alfour of Sicily
Reaume named Alfour, a valaunt knight, and gretely
loued & dred god / and kepte his commaundementes as-
8 moche as any prince might, and so shewed it wele ; for to
sustene the feith / put he his body many ¹tymes in auenture / and [1 leaf 9, bk.]
shedde his blode in diuerse batailles. ¶ This kyng was to mary /
and,—for to haue comfort and helpe ayenst the miscreauntes / that (In order to get help against the heathen)
12 night and day made him warre, aswele the Turke as othir / holding
the dampnable feith of Machounmete,—had counseil of his princes
and Barons to aske to wif the doughter of the kyng of Spayne, named asks for Princess Sybil of Spain (daughter of K. Albers),
16 Sybille / And the kyng of Spayne was called Albors, and had to
wif the doughter of the kyng of Portyngale / and it was concluded
by the hole counseil of the Reaume / that in asmoche as the kyng
of fraunce had no doughter / that this was the moost myghty place
for the kyng of Sizile to be alied with / to haue helpe and comfort
20 for to sustene his warres. ¶ Now then were notable messangers
sent forth / and thei labored so that, by the kyng of Spayne, his
doughter was agreed & yeuen to the kyng of Syzile ; wherof all his
Reaume was right ioiful, and trusted by tho seide kyng of Spayne
24 to be gretely socoured and holpen. ¶ Now was this lady delynerd
to the Ambassatours, whiche brought hir in-to the Reaume of Sizile,
wher-as she was resceyued with fulle grette honour / the kyng
married hir with right grette ioie / and withyn litle while she was and weds her.
28 with Childe / wherof the Reaume was gretly reioised / abidyng the
grace of god til it came to the tyme of .ix. monethes ende / that she
was deliuerd / and had a doughter whiche was cristened and named She has a lovely girl, Iolante,
Iolante, whiche was in hir daies the fairest lady of the world / best
32 condicïoned and the best biloued ; & not without cause / for in hir
were all the noble vertues that might or ought to be comprised in
so high a pryncesse / and to reherce ferthir .I. passe ouir / for I haue
neithir witte nor tonge that sulliseth therto / for in hir tyme she
36 passed in beaute and vertu all that part of the worlde / for all the most beautiful in that part of the world.
though the kyng hir fladir were so good a prince & so valiaunt a
knyght / yit was the Reaume more susteyned and aided by a hundird
part for hir sake than for his, for the pite that eneri body had of
40 the destruccïon of such one as she was / And whan she came to

4 *King Alfour afterwards seeks help, and gets it for Iolante's sake.*

the age of .xiiij. yere / hir renone was so grete that it spredde
thorough the worlde. And yif the kyng hir ffadir wold haue yeuen
hir to the grete Turke for his eldest sone, he might haue had peas
for hym and aH his Reaume; but he wold in no wise be agreable 4
therto, for he was so verry parfit goddys knyght, that he had leuer
a diede / And thus eueri day increasid his warres / and his losse
grewe more and more; but vigorously, and ¹as a valiaunt knyght,
he diffendid his Reaume so long, til his tresour was nygh dispendid / 8
and his Reaume at the poynt of perdicion, his noble men amen-
yssht be the warres, in-so-moche that he was fayn to sende to alle
cristen kynges, to asserteyne hem what cas he was yn / requiryng
hem in the name of oure lorde Ihesu criste / that, forto mayntene his 12
holy feith / they wold socoure hym & helpe hym. ¶ Now trewe it
was that many notable knyghtes, that had no warres in the cristen
Reaumes, disported them thorough diuerse Reaumes / wherof many
passid by the Reaume of Sizile / and whan thei vndirstode the 16
warres that were there / some of them contynued stille there / and
some retourned in-to their contrees / to abile them self for the warres
whiche were dispuruaide there / wherof there were diuerse knyghtes
of ffrance / aswele as of othir contrees / that were come out of the 20
Reaume of Sizile / & euerich exorted gretly their kyng or prince,
vndir whos obeisaunce thei were, to entreprynse the viage, & shewed
them the grete pite that was of the Reaume, & of that faire & good
lady the kynges doughter / of whom eueri man seide more wele than 24
othir / and for the pite & loue that many had of hir / thei abode ful
long in the kynges seruice at their owne charge, for he was not of
power to sowde them / the Reaume was so gretely empouerysht /
thus for hir loue had he the seruice of many a noble knyght. 28
THies tidynge were opende & knowen thorough aH cristendome
to alle kynges and prynces / yn so moche / that there was
daily grete speche therof yn euery Court, Seyng that the reaume of
Sizile was nygh lost without any socours, which was to grete a 32
pite that so valiaunt a prince / and so noble a Reaume, & so grete,
so faire & so good a lady, shold so be destroyed by the myscreauntes,
whiche was to grete a shame to aH cristen Reaumes, seeng the litle
seruice they did to god, wherthorough they dred that god wold 36
vttirly be displeid / All thies thinges were often deuised in eueri
Court / but for aH that / was noon that adressed hem, neither to go
nor to sende any socours. ¶ I ye haue herde here-to-fore the maner
& condicions of Philip the sone of the kyng of ffrance / that was 40

K. Alhors
will not wed
Iolante to a
Turk,

and is then so
ward against
[1 leaf 10]

that he has
to ask help
from all
Christian
kings.

French and
other knyghts
also beg for
aid for Sicily,

and the mat-
ter is talkt
about at every
Court.

- the yong man of the worlde that moost loued & dred god. This viage of Sizile herd he often spoken of, and many tymes wolde he speke to his fadir, and meue him as ferre as he durst, to sende som
- 4 socours to this poure kyng of Sizile / and besought hym to be ware of goddes displeasir, 'remembryng the grete wele / god had yeuē
- hym / the Reaume, & the grete possession that he helde / the tranquillite and peas that was in his Reaume / and he to do no thyng
- 8 in the seruice of hym that had yeuē him all that / and though there were noon othir thinge but pite / that aught to meue eueri prince to the socours of so honorable a kyng and so faire a lady. Thus many tymes & ofte the right noble sone of the kyng of
- 12 ffraunce amonested his fadir, & so long þat þe kyng was constrained to answere him, seyng thiese wordes / "my sone, .I. knowe wele / that in this that ye exorte me to do socours to the kyng of Sizile, cometh of an high and a noble corage, wherof I am
- 16 right glad & wele content / but y must remembre agein the charge of this Reaume, the payne and trauaile that .I. haue had, and haue, to kepe & mayntene it in good peas / for many grete prynces & lordes holde of me / that somtyme by enuy and presumption
- 20 wold rebelle and reise werre / wherby the Reaume shold gretly be empeired / but by grete iustise that y haue alwey kepte, & ener shal to my power. wherfore it neuer yit bifelle so, ne neuer shaft, yif god be pleasid. And be sure I haue remembrid this matier ful
- 24 ofte, and fayn wold do suche seruice as might be to god agreable / but I wote not how, for yif .I. shold sende any of my blode / the remenaunt that be of estate wold haue enuy ther-at / and othir
- kynges and princes that wold go vndir me wold not go vndir them /
- 28 & thus the seruice that y shol[d] do to god might litil profit or nought / And yif y shold go in myn oune persone / the Reaume that god bath yeuē me to kepe shold be without a gouernour / for ye be but yonge yet / and thus at my comyng ageyn / yif euer it pleased
- 32 god I shold retourne, I might lightly fynde my Reaume empeired and divided in such maner that it might be grete damage to vs bothe, & to the comon wele / wherof we sholde come to late to repentaunce. And yif y sholde sende you forth / take hede how
- 36 other kynges and princes wold be content to go vndir you & in your company / but rathir might growe enuy / wherof might falle to you such mysauenture / that y had leuer god sende me the dethe /
- ye knowe wele that in you is all my trust / and the only comfort of
- 40 this Reaume, and for this y wol that ye haue no lenger hope nor

Prince Philip
urges his
father, K.
Charles,
to help the
poor king of
Sizile.
[1 ff. 10, bk.]

But K.
Charles
makes ex-
cuses:

it would in-
jure France,

stir up enuy
among his
nobles,

risk the
Prince's life;

6 *King Charles will not help the King of Sicily. No one else does.*

desire to go, nor entreprynse this viage / for and I knewe any man
withyn my Reaume, were he neuer so gret, that wold yeue you any
[1 leaf 11] counseH or comfort theryn, he sholde dye for it, as he that wele
had deserued it, for he shold take out of this Reaume the grace 4
that god hath yeuen vs / that is, to haue an heire male aftir my
daies, whiche is ynough to the pleasir of all the Reaume / By whos
and if he was
kild, France
would be
more desolate
than Sicily. losse this Reaume sholde be more desolate / then that of Sizile; not
by the ennemyes of the feithe, but he enuy & warre of grete 8
princes marchers vnto this Reaume, whiche thinge may lightly by-
falle for lakke of Iustice and good gouernaunce. But y trust yn
god that, of his grace, aftir my daies ye shaH guyde this Reaume as
wele as y haue don, & better / if it please hym to yeue you lif, 12
whiche is the thyng in the worlde that y moost desire / therfore,
yif ye haue had any desire a-fore this to take on you that viage,
lete it passe out of your mynde / for my hert can neuer be agreable
therto / ye se also othir cristen princes, in especiaH the kynge of 16
Spayne, whos doughter the kynge of Sizile hath married, in trust to
haue helpe & comfort of hym / yit y can not vndirstonde that he is
any thyng comforted by hym. Beholde o that othir side, The
kynge of Ingland hath a sone, right wele condicioned as men say / 20
and of age to entreprynse suche auentures / & he hath .ij. faire
doughters, wherby he is comforted that the Reaume shall not out
of the lyne / & he knoweth thies tidynges aswele as y do / yit can
y here no worde that he any thyng puruaieth to the socours of the 24
kynge of Sizile / Beholde / ferther, the kynge of Scottes, that hath
.iiij. sones, wherof / one is in the age of Armes, wele norissed &
condicioned, as y vndirstonde / & wele may ye wite that he hath
thies tidynges aswele as othir / and he doth nothyng ther-to, and 28
yet is he the kynge that hath leste excuse, sith he hath .iiij. sones,
as it is saide / and yif he wold sende forth one of them / and sende
vnto the kynge of Inglande and to me / y wote wele that for to do
seruice vnto god / ther is noon of vs two but wolde aide therto 32
vnto oure power. Se ferther, also the Emperour, that sholde be
the verry trewe defence of the Church, & sustenaunce / and the
right arme that aught to be defender / and y can here no thyng
that he doth to the socours, helpe or comfort of the kynge of Sizile. 36
Then I, that am ferre from the marches, & of noon acq[ui]taunce
nor alliance, shold be the first premeuer or exorter to enterprynse
the viage, it accordeth not. Beholde thorough all almayne, where as
or any Ger-
man prince. so many grete princes be, whiche of theym presenteth hem forward / 40

- whan I fynde any that ¹this Viage wol take vpon theym, & they sende to me, seurely y shal do seruice to god to my power; but tyl that tyme I wol not entremete me ther-with." ¶ This yonge Philippe, vnderstondyng the wordes of his ffadir, consideryng that they were resonable, dredyng his displeasir, answerd hym litil, seyng al sobrelly / "My lord, y know weH youre causes be good & resonable / but and eueri Prynce be of that opinion / the 8 socours ys like to come to late to the good kynge of Sizile. Where nelith to be sought a gretter prynce or a better gouernour than he is / yif it pleased your grace to sende him of youre folkys. and yif ye thinke ther sholde growe any enuy to sende them in the 12 conduyt of a grete lorde / put hem then in the gouernaunce of knyghtes, suche as be notable, & preued wise and worthy; and yene them in charge to do what the kynge wil commaunde them / and thus shal thei be sure of a good Capteyne / And than shal 16 there be no cristen prynce but that may and aught to make of you his mirroure & example to do as ye haue dōn, to þe wele of all cristendome, wherof the honour shold be doubled in you, ynasmoeche as ye were the first meuer & begynner therof."
- 20 **T**He kynge, consideryng the wordes of his sone, thought hem trewe & right honorable / al-though he had no wille therto / yit answerd hym thus: "my sone, youre seyng is good and laudable, & I wol remembre it / and take auyse vpon your exorta- 24 cion." The right noble sone of the kynge was wise, and knewe anon / that this was but a meane to be delyuerd of hym, & that he had no wille to entende to this matter; & thus moornyng, pensif and right soroufull, he departed fro hym / & went to his chambre, 28 where-as were many noble folkes; and he withdrew he in-to an Inner chambre with suche as pleasid hym / and made one rede holy stories and lyues of Seyntes, seruantes to the cristen feith / wher-by he sawe the paynes and trauailes that the holy Apostells 32 and Martirs had soffred to gete the perdurable glorie. Sone aftir he went ayen in-to his Chambre, where-as he founde many yonge lordes, sonys to the grete princes and grete lordes of the Reaume / that had be brought vp of childhode with hym, whiche caused 36 bitwene him and them a verry naturel loue; and they exorted hym to speke to the kynge for this Viage of Sizile, whiche they knewe for trouthe that ouir alle thyng he desired; & gladly eueri man meuth his maister of suche matiers as moost may please hym / 40 Also eche of ²theym was of the age to bere Armes / and ouir all

[1 ff. 11, bk.]
Till they
move, he,
K. Charles,
will do no-
thing.

Prince Philip
answers his
father's ob-
jections,

and urges
him to help
K. Alfour.

K. Charles
puts his son
off:

says he'll
think about
it.

Prince Philip
goes, griev-
ing,

to his room,

where his
young friends
urge the
Sicilian enter-
prise on him.

[2 leaf 12]

Prince
Philip says
little,

but in bed

reflects on the
vanity of
earthly glory.

He desires to
be employd in
God's service,

and to work,
like the
Saints, alone.

[1 lf. 12, bk.]

He resolves
to give up
his heirship
to the Crown,

thyng desired to be at that viage / and often saide to their maister /
 " yif ye myghte haue this viage, ye shold haue al the sute of the
 world / for eueri man wold be ioifuH to put hym vnder you. Ector
 of Troie nor Alisaundre had neuer the renome that ye shold haue 4
 aftir your dethe " / This yong philippe, heryng dayly thies wordes,
 knowyng the kynges pleasir contrary, answerd lesse than he was
 wont to do, wherof they that spake to hym of þe matier were
 abashed, & thought in hem self that he was not so hote ther-yn as 8
 he had ben bifore / but for trouthe he was more ardaunt in his
 mynde than euir he was. Thus euerichon departid, for it was tyme
 to go to slepe. This yong prince beyng in his bedde, contynuelly
 thinkyng on the wordes that he had hadde with his ffadir / aftir 12
 came him to remembraunce the stories he hadde herd redde a litle
 bifore his going to bedde / callyng to mynde also / the paynes that
 be in this world / hou myghti a kyng someuer he be, here hath he
 no surete in noon erthly thyng / but only of the kyngdom of 16
 heuen, that neuer hath fyne / thus he debated in him self, seyng
 thies wordes / " A, verray god! y may do the no seruice / I haue
 the wille, but I haue not the power / I remembre the paynes /
 the seyntes of whom I rede to day endured to come to thy Reaume. 20
 Alas! y had neuer payn for the / but aH wele and glorie / hou may
 y than achene that crowne without ende / I am of thy grace
 abidyng on that is erthly / whiche right sone y may lese / for
 dethe shal make the departyng; & than shaH I haue no more 24
 possessioun nor part yn erthe than the porest in this Reaume;
 wele cured were I, yif y might make a chaunge of that crowne that
 is morteH, for that whiche ys ymmorteH. So y pray the, very god,
 þat of thy grace thou wilt helpe me, though y may not now / that 28
 here-aftir this Reaume and I may be employd in thy seruice."
 After, he torned hym in his bedde, and said in this wise: " what
 seruice may y do / y haue no power but of myn only body, that
 neuer sawe no thyng, ne wote not what it is of Armes / ner neuer 32
 sawe company assembled. y am yong & but a childe; what seruyce
 may .I. than do to god?" / than seide he ageyn, " A, good lord /
 tho that y redde of to-day, that sought the Reaume of heuen / ne
 did it not in grete company, but only with their owne propre 36
 bodies. It were they that sought the very parfit glorie, and god
 was suffised with the desertes of their owne bodies / wherfore alle
 thynges ¹considered, y shaH put forth my body / and renounce all
 the successioun þat in this world may befall me, and for his sake 40

- promyse with good hert to go vnto the seruice of the kyng of
 Sizile / and neuer to departe til the warres be ended / or ellis y^{and fight for}
 shaft dye yn the defence of his reau^{Sicily.}me" / and thus vtirly con-
 4 cludid Phelip to departe, & to abandoune the Reaume and aH his
 frendes / thynkyng yn hym self / hou to conduyte this matier
 that no lyving creature shold haue knowlage therof / ffor wele
 wist he that there was noman in alle the Reaume, and he knewe it /
 8 that durst concele it fro the kynge; for he was sure / and they did
 othirwise / they shold die; and therefore determyned he yn alle
 poyntes to entreprise this viage without discoueryng of his entent
 to any lyving creature / considering wele that he had not ben
 12 accostomed to be alone / and that it shold be to hym right straunge /
 neuirtheles, for the loue of oure lord, he determyned to suffre &
 bere paciently all paynes and troubles that he wolde sende hym.
 In this determynacion & purpose contynued Phelip the space of a
 16 Moneth and more / thynkyng on that besinesse / and did so that he^{He collects}
 puruaide hym of money y-nough to fynde hym .v. or .vj. yere /^{money,}
 trustyng withyn that terme to fynde some good auenture / So it
 befel that on a Monday at night, the mone shone faire and clere,
 20 and he departid out of Paris; and this was the xxijth day of ffenyrer /^{leaves Paris}
 And his age was than xxv. yere / and at his departyng, he verrily^{on Monday,}
 promysed in his mynde neuer to be knowen what he was, til the^{Feb. 22, when}
 warres were ffynysshed / and bettir for to couer hym self / he^{he is 25,}
 24 chaunged his name / & concludid to calle hym self "le despurueu" /^{and changes}
 and passed so forth / & thought wele that whan his goyng was^{his name to}
 known, that ouir all the marches men sholde seke hym, and in^{'Le Despur-}
 especiaH vpone the marches of Sizile, for this that many folkes^{ueu.'}
 28 had knowen his desire thiderward; & therefore he auised hym
 not to go that way, but rather drewe hym to the Reaume of
 Spayne; for he thought / yn-asmoche as the kynge of Sizile had
 maryed þe kynge of Spaynes doughtir, there he sholde here more
 32 certeyn tidynges þan in any othir Reaume / So rode he forth the^{He rides fast}
 streight way towarde Spayne / yn so grete haste that he rode more^{to Spain,}
 in one day / than any of the best ryders the kynge his ffadir had /
 did in two / and rode so forth, aH-wey vnkno^{wn}, so long tyme til
 36 he came to Spayne / so sore chaunged & amegred that vnothe any
 man myght him knowe / for he had not the lif / he had ben
 accostomed to / where-thorough, yif god of his grace had not ¹the
 better comforted & holpen him / he had neuer departed out of
 40 Spayne alyue / alweis, what payne and trauaile so euer he had, he

and reaches
Toledo,
where K. Al-
bors is.

He lodges
with a bur-
gess,

and calls
himself 'Le
Despurueu.'

He falls very
ill,

and is in bed
for 6 months.

The Tuesday
morning after
Prince Philip
leaves Paris,

toke it in pacience, for the loue of god. So fortun'd hym to come
to a Cite was named Towlette / where-as the kynge was / And
for-asmoche as he thought there were folkes a-boute the kynge of
alle nacions, as wele of ffraunce as of othir / and perauenture suche 4
as might lyghtly knowe hym / it thought hym good to fynde some
secrete loggyng where-as he shold not be often seyn / and so, by
the meane of a gentilman that he mette by the way / he was loggid
in the hous of a noble Burgeis, one of the moost riche of the 8
Towne / whiche had weddid the Aunt of that same gentilman / at
whos request they loggid hym right wele, and made hym right good
chere / which felle wele for le Despurueu; for thei were good and
notable folkes, & had a sone & a daughter of right grete and 12
notable recommendacion, faire persones of good condicions, & wele
and honorably norissed / & withyn litle while that the Despurueu
had ben there, the loued hym as their owne sone / & the sone &
the daughter loued hym as their brother. And to the sone of the 16
hous taught he such thynges of honour, that folkes meruailed to se
hym so wele ensured / And the daughter taught he to syng / to
harpe, & to play at the chesse, and all such goodly th[y]nges as
bilonge to a gentilwoman of honour. ¶ Now felle it so / that 20
while he was in this reste aftir his grete trauaile, whiche he was
not accustomed to / bifelle hym a grete sikenesse, that alle tho that
sawe him inged in hym no thyng but dethe / and durid in hym
more than half a yere / so that he might neuer rise of his bedde, 24
whereby he was so moche empeired / that, & he had ben in the
presence of his ffadir / he coude not know hym / and moche more
greued hym his sekenesse / for it taried hym fro the seruice of god /
than for any payne that he endured / but our lorde, in whos 28
kepyng he had put hym, whiche wold not refuse his seruice / made
hym to haue that sikenes / for othir wise might he neuer accom-
plissh his desire vnknownen / there was so grete serche for hym yn
eueri cristen Reaume / for so grete sorowe was neuer seyn in no 32
contre as was for his departyng, thoroughout alle ffraunce. [Illum. 13, bk.]

THe tuysday in the mornyng, aftir the departyng of the
kynge's sone, came lordes, knyghtes and squyers, as they
were accustomed to be at the risyng of their maister, & 36
founde not yit opyn þe chamber dore; for on the nyght
afore had he made alle the folkes to awoide, as wele his chambrelayn
as othir, seyng that he wold be that nyght alone / whereby they
supposed that he had som lady or Ientilwoman there / that he wolde 40

- not haue knowen. Thus they alle retourned ageyn in the mornynge
to his Chambre dore, and there awated right longe, & durst make
no noyse, for displeasir, tiH it was the houre of noone / meruailynge
4 grettly that he was not stiryng, for he was not accustomed to be in
his bedde at that tyme. So concluded they that the Chambrelayn
shold^t knocke at the dore / whiche he did all ferefully / but noon
answerd hym, wherof they meruailed gretly / and bode ther so
8 long / that it passed two of the klokke / then worde came to the
kyng therof, whiche meruailed gretly, and forthwith went in-to the
grete chambre of his sones / and founde there many lordes, knyghtes
and Squyers, that awaited on hym / of whom he axed "what may
12 this be" / and they tolde hym the trouthe / wherof he was gretly
abashed, for neuer bifore had he founde his sone of suche demean-
yng. So he went to the dore, and knocke^t so loude as tough he
sholde haue brokyn vp ^{the} dore / but no body answerd hym /
16 whereof he toke grete displeasir, and made the dore to be broken
vp / and fonde the Chambre al redy, and the bedde made / and no
body theryn; wherof the kyng was sore ameruailed / & made to
seche hym ouir all / but noon coude here of hym; than sent he to
20 the stabells, & fond that the best smaH hors that he had was goon /
that was the kyng plainly assured that he was not in the toune.
And wele knewe he that his sone was not departed in this maner
to come sone ageyn / wherfore he toke suche sorowe that he felle in
24 a sowne / and at last, whan he was releued ageyn / he made the
moost pitous regrettes that any man might make / "Alas," quoth
he, "my dere sone / what haue I forfete vnto you? / ye haue put me
to dethe without desert / for y haue loued you more than my self /
28 ye were my ioie, my recomfort, and myn esperauce / Alas / aH this
haue ye taken fro me / þat am your ffadir, & by this meane shal
abregge my lif / I was he þat more gladly wolde haue died to
haue lenthid youre lif, than to haue lyued by youre dethe; my
32 trust was, that god had geue you vnto me for my grete ioie / but y
se wele ye are come in-to this world for to abregge my daies / wold
god y had agreed to youre request / touchinge the viage of Sizile /
yn-to whiche place I thinke wele ye be gon / but ye be so dis-
36 purnaide / that y thinke ye shal neuer perfourme half way,
seyng your softe & tendre norisshyng / Alas, my frendes! helpe to
comfort a discomfortid / that calleth hym self at this day the
moost wrecchid kyng that leuyth. Alas, my wiff! whan ye shal
40 knowe thies tidyngis, .I. haue grete drede hou ye shal bere the

the Chamber-
lain knocks
at his door;

so does King
Charles.
[1 leaf 14]

They break
it open,
and find the
room empty,

but the best
nag is out of
the stable.

K. Charles
regrets that
he refused to
let Philip go
to Sicily.

grete paynes that youre hert shaH suffre / Now y requyre you,
my frendes, enquere our aH, yif any lyuyng creature be gon
with hym / for than shold my soroufuH hert be in the lesse
dispeire" /

4

The Queen
of France
grieues for
the loss of
her son.

YE may thinke that whan the tidinges came to the Quene, she
had as moche sorowe / as the hert of any modre sholde haue
that had lost suche a sone / for there was no lyuyng body
that might reconfort hir / Hir sorow & hir compleint was more 8
than y can deuise you. The kinge, and she, that gladly and by
naturaH reson shold comforte eche one othir / they might vnnethes
opyn their mowthes, but as folkes ded & transitory. In like wise
was the sorow so grete of alle suche as were there / for they entendid 12

[1 ll. 14, bk.]

neither the kyng, neither ¹the Quene, but rente their here, &
made vnmessurable sorow, as folkes vtterly dispeired / The tidinges
spred our aH the Cite of Parys: there might ye here brayng &
cryng in al þe cite of aH maner of folkes, grete & smale / there is 16
no man that can recorde the sorow that the Cite made / for they
might no more make, though thei had lost on o day alle the frendes
thei had / In like wise felle it thorough aH the Reaume of ffrance /
for ther was neuer noon erthly man more biloued than was this 20
yonge Phelip, the kynges sone / not only in the Reaume of
ffrance, but in alle othir Reaumes that marched ther-to / whiche,
whan thei herd the losse of this childe, thei made meruailous sorow /
And wite for trouthe, that in the Reaume of ffrance was lost at 24
that houre aH ioie, whiche dured as longe as his sorowfuH ffadir
lyued / for neuer aftir sawe he the thinge in the worlde that he
moost loued / that was, his right dere sone, whiche was grete cause
of shortnyng of his lif / ffor aftir his sones departyng, coude he 28
neuer here tidynges of hym / for no serche he coude make. ¶ Now

The King is
never after
glad.

While Prince
Philip is sick
in Toledo,
his host's
children,
Florentine
and John,
tell him how
he is lost
from France.

seith the tale / that while Phelip lay thus seke in his bed at Tow-
lette / ffaire florentyne, the daughter of his hoste, & hir brothir
Iohn, oftentymes wolde visite hym, and telle him the tidynges of 32
the Reaume of ffrance, how the kynges sone was lost / the renome
that was of hym / the sorow that was for his lone. but, fynally, he
neuer made semblaunt / that it touched him in any thyng. ¶ So
long contynued this terme, that it was passed half a yere sith he 36
departed out of ffrance, in somoch that the speche was alle lefte /
and put yn forgetyng, of the losse of the kynges sone / at whiche
tyme he was in recoueryng, by the helpe of his good hoste and
hostesse and their childe / and by *that* tyme was he al-most oute 40

He recovers.

of the drede of knowlage, by length of tyme and his grete sikenes.
¶ Now aȝ this tyme contynued the warres of Sizile; for the grete
Turke and his brother fferabras, kyng of Peerce, contynuelly
4 enforced them to conquere the Reaume, whiche was by that tyme
more than half conquered / whereby the kyng of Sizile was con-
streyned to sende to alle cristen princes for socours, takyng god to
witness that, and that Reaume were tourned to the mysbeleue / it
8 was for lak of pite & helpe of theym, for without socours it was not yn
his power to kepe it lenger / than such a day as he apointed by his
wrytyng. ¶ Thus sent he notable knyghtes, bothe to the Pope
and to alle other Reaumes / among whiche he sent vnto the kyng
12 of Spayne one of the moost notable knyghtes of his Reaume /
whiche was named fferant / and was his Senesshaȝ. and he had a
Brother, right a valiaunt man / whiche had in gouernance part of
the frontiers ayenst the ennemyes of the feith / and right honourably
16 demeaned hym there. ¶ Now fferant departed out of Sizile yn-to
Spayn, and spede so wele his iourneis that he came to Towlette,
where-as he founde the kyng, whiche resceyued hym with right
grete honour, & loggid there as the Despurueu was, that by than
20 was wele recouerd. & whan he knewe the cause of fferantes comyng /
it reioised hym more than aȝ the goold in Spayne coude haue done /
trustyng to become his seruant / and to go with hym in-to Sizile /
than felle he in acqeytaunce with his folkes / whiche had so grete
24 loue vnto hym, for the grete weles that they sawe in hym / that they
brought hym in acqeyntance with their maister, whiche was right
glad of his company. ffor so wele demeaned hym, le Despurueu, to
fferant / and alle his men / that he was gretly desired of them alle to go
28 in-to Sizile with them / But our alle othir, fferant desired hym moost /
wherof le Despurueu was as glad as any man might be / for it was the
thyng yn the erthe that he moost desired. Thus is the Despurueu
be-lefte with fferant / thinkyng verrily to vse part of his youth yn
32 the warres for the loue of god. ¶ Now seith the tale, that fferant
bode at the Cite of Towlette til that he sawe wele his abidyng there
might litil profit his maister / for he sped in substance nothing that
he came for / wherefore he toke his leue of the kyng, & retourned in-
36 to Sizile / and le Despurueu, his newe seruannt, with hym / for whos
departyng / his hoste & his hostesse toke asmoche sorow as, and he had
be their sone / and cursed the houre that the knyght of Sizile came in-
to that contre / thus departed fferant the Senesshaȝ, right sorowfull
40 of that he hath no better spelde, & employede his iourney / til that

The Great
Turk and K.
Ferasbras of
Persia subdue
half Sicily.

[leaf 15]

K. Alfour
sends Ferant
to ask help
from K. Al-
bors of Spain.

Prince Philip
gets to know
Ferant,

and leaves
Toledo with
him, as his
servant.

he approached the Reaume of Sizile, auisying alwey his newe ser-
 uaunt / consideryng withyn hym self / his persone, his beaute / his
 maner, his humbles / wherof he was moche ameruailed / for he
 wende not that yn the body of any one man might haue ben so 4
 many vertues to-gedir / So thought he wele / that if he had as
 moche worthynesse and prowes as he had persone & maner, he shold
 be the moost perfyt thinge that euer god made sith tyme of his
 passion. ¶ And yit all¹ were it that he were not valiaunt yn 8
 armes, yit were he worthy to serue any kyng, for it is litle seen
 that alle vertues be complete in one man. Thus rode they forth so
 longe til he entred in-to the Reaume of Sizile / and logged hym the
 first night in a Towne called Taprey, of the whiche, Olyuer, brother 12
 to fferant, was Captayne / and for the moost part was abiding ther /
 fferabrace, brother to the Soudan, was yn an other Towne but .iiij.
 leeges thens / that was named / ffoundey, whiche he had conquered
 vpon the kyng of Sizile / fferant was trauailed & wery, & purposed 16
 to rest hym ther with his brother a senenight or a fourtnight / And
 sone after he was come / the tidynges were knowen to fferabrace,
 kyng of Perce / whiche seide to his folkes, "It were il don of vs yif
 we went not to se fferant that is retourned fro Spayn / and he is with 20
 his brother, oure neighbore / & so, if we might take any prisoner, we
 shold knowe of alle their tidynges / fferant is a valiant knyght, y
 doute not / if he reste longe vnsought of vs, with-oute he haue the
 gretter besynesse he wol come biforn vs / wherfore it shalbe good for 24
 vs to go thidir to-morow. To this counseile, accorde alle they that
 were with hym / for the ceason was faire & plesaunt / It was than
 yn the entre of Aprile / thus as they concluded, they did / for full 28
 erly in the morne they departed from that place with a ij. M. 28
 feighters, holdyng their wey streight to the place where as fferant
 and his brother. were / and whan thei were nygh there / they
 departed in two: yn the tain part / was kyng fferabrace / and the
 tothir was a nigh kynnesman of his / when the warte espied the 32
 fforeriders, he blewe a Trompet / and fferaunt rose vp / & went to
 the yate, where as he founde his brother all redi, to whom he seide /
 "Brothir, this course is made for me / and for to take som of oure
 folkes to knewe of my tidynges; but, y pray you, lete no man go 36
 oute / for y knowe for trouthe that he hath moche people / and ye
 haue not in this Towne passed v. or vj. hundred feightyngmen /
 and therefore lete them be, for the entreprise of enemyes is euer
 vnprofitable" / Olyuer, that was a full good man of warre, seide to 40

[¹ If. 15, bk.]

Ferant and
 Prince Philip
 reach Taprey
 in Sicily.

K. Ferabras,
 the Sultan's
 brother, is
 at Foulé, 4
 leagues off,

and marches,
 with 2000
 men, to Ta-
 prey.

Ferant will
 not attack
 them.

- his brother / "ye sey trouthe," and made to shitte the yates fast /
wherof many were right sory / and ouir alle othir Le Desparuen, Prince Philip is sory,
that hath herde the wordes a foresaide, and was redy armed, and
4 on horsbak, desiryng to haue seyn som dedes of Armes / wherof he
had neuer no thinge seyn / ¹whan he sawe this conclusion / he set [1 leaf 16]
vp his hors / and went vp to the walles and sawe the fforeriders, but goes up on the walls,
whiche was but right a fewe people / wherof he had grete meruaile
8 that so litle compaignie durst come so nere where so many a good
man was / Aftir this, that so long tyme currouers had be bfore
the place, & sawe that ther wold no man come oute / they sente
the kynge worde therof, desiryng to knowe his pleasir / The kynge,
12 heryng thies tidings, concluded to come bfore the place to shewe
his puissaunce / than brake he oute with bothe thembussmentes,
and came yn ordenaunce bfore the place / Le Desparuen, seeng and sees the full force of Turks and Persians,
this compaignie, thought wele that he was with a notable & a wise
16 maister / & that he had grete fore-sight yn suche case / ffor he sawe
where thembussmentes departed yn dyuers compaignies / and
enviroinid the towne as they wolde haue bisieged it / fferant and
his brother, seeng the Turques thus dissecuerd in diuerse com-
20 paignies, purposed to gyue them a scarmyssh at one of the yates /
where-as the leest compaignie was, thinkyng wele that the moost
parte of the kynges people wolde drawe thiderward / and whan it
were so, he wold issue out and set vpon the kynge, there his baner
24 was / thus as y haue deuised was doñ. they began to scarmyssh / With them the Christians skirmish, and K. Ferabras is left with few troops.
and the cri aroos, & eueri man drewe thiderward, so that the kynge
was but with fewe accompaigned. And than fferant & his Brothir
made open the yate / and came alle on a frussch out of the Towne
28 so egrely and with suche force that, wold the kynge or not / he
was fayne to lese his place & to withdrawe hym shamefully / and
had at the same encountre of his men slayn moo then vj.^{xx}, at
whiche iourney auauuced hym self le Desparuen a fore alle othir / and He is driven back,
32 did so wele in armes that alle that euer sy hym & knewe him of and Prince Philip fights gallantly,
his parte, were gretly encoraged therby / and blessed them for the
meruailes that thei sy him do yn his armes ; and his enemyes were
as moche abasshed & confused by his prowessse. the mooste parte of
36 the folkes knewe hym not / but only they that he was come in
compaignie with, out of the Reaume of Spayne / many went to
fferant to telle him the grete meruailes that his seruaunt Le Des-
paruen did / wherof he was ioifull, and praid alle theym that tolde to Ferant's joy.
40 thies tidynges / that they wold drawe toward hym / and do him

[¹ lf. 16, bk.]
The Turks
rally,

and the Chris-
tian trumpets
sound a re-
treat.

But Prince
Philip fights
on.

Ferant, in
helping him,
is taken
prisoner by
the Turks.

Prince Philip
rescues Fe-
rant,

captures K.
Ferabras,

and they
all re-enter
Tabrey.

helpe & socours, yf nede were. The crie & the noise aroos on alle
parties so moche / that the Turques *withdrew* ¹theym alle to the
kyng to socoure hym / and whan they were assembled to-gedre /
thei were a right grete puissance / as yn regarde of theym of the 4
Towne / the tuo Brethre save welle it was tyme to withdrawe /
and made a trompet to blowe retreat on alle parties, & made their
people to withdrawe. But le Despurneu, that neuer had be yn cure
with suche thinges, made no semblaunt to withdrawe hym / but 8
defendid hym & assailed his enemyes alwey stille so long, that
fferant hym self was constreyned to fecche hym / and put hym
forth a-fore hym / and bade hym aH angrely / to withdrawe hym /
and fferant had taried so longe for the seching of his seruauant, that 12
his enemyes presed so fast / that almoost they had enterd the
barers, and had closed yn fferant aH a-boute. Le Despurneu, seying
this / knowing wele that this auenture was falle to his maister by
hym, had leuer hane diede than faile his maister, & retourned his 16
hors, and smote in-to the thikkest of the prees *with* suche ire and
force / that he that mette *with* his fuH stroke ouirthrowe / & did so
wele that he came to theym that had taken his maister / and smote
yn amouges them / and by his grete worthynesse deliuerd the place 20
saue of the kyng to whom men had deliuerd his maister / whiche
in no wise wold lete him go / yit at the last he might not chese /
for Olyuer, that sawe his brother taken, & the grete armes that le
Despurneu did, assembled his folkes ageyn, and retourned aH at ones 24
in suche wise & *with* suche vigour, that, wolde the Turques or not /
thei lost grounde / Le Despurneu, seying that the cristen men wan
place and approched nere / and that he rescowed his maister / knewe
wele the kyng that was nere, and toke his hors by the bridle / & 28
gate his hede vnder his arme / and by might drewe the kyng forth,
whedir he wolde or no / and deliuerd hym to his maister / that
forthwith sent hym yn-to the Towne / and commaunded that eueri
man sholde withdrawe / And toke his seruauant by the bridle, & 32
ledde hym forth *with* hym. The kynges folkes, seying the losse of
their maister, & the grete vigour of the cristen men / were so abused
that they made but litle prese / And thus retourned the cristen in-to
the Towne aH at their ease. It is to thinke,² that Le Despurneu was 36
not the first that entird / for it annoied hym moche that it dured no
lenger / for it semed hym the moost grete pleasir that euir he was at
yn aH hys ³lif / hou-be-it / that by his harnais and hys body it

[³ leaf 17]

² bear in mind.

- shewed wele that he had not ben idle / nor also right amyably
 delte with, for in many places the blode ranne out of such hurtes as
 he had / Anon as they were entird in to the Towne, the brigge was
 4 drawn / and folkes ordeigned on the walles to kepe theym / Le
 Despurueu, when he had conveid his maister to his loggyng / he went
 to his Inne / and vnarmed him / and leide hym downe on a bedde. Prince Philip
unarms and
goes to bed.
- ¶ The Turques seeng their kynge prisoner, & many of their folkes
 8 ded and taken / it semed them that bifore that Towne thei might
 litle profit / But many thought it was better to abide til they knewe
 the pleasir of the Soudan / to whom they sent the trouthe of thies
 tidynges, & thought it was nede for them to take good kepe aboute The Turks
wait for the
Sultan's
order before
raising the
siege.
- 12 the Towne / that the kynge were not had a-way ; for yf the Soudan
 wolde hastily come & set a sege ther / he might lyghtly haue ageyn
 his brother / thus as they concluded, they did / and loggid them bi-
 fore the Towne / abidyng an answeere of þe Soudan. ¶ Now
- 16 retourne we to fferant þat was at his logging vnarmed / right ioifult
 of the good auenture that was bifallen hym / and than went he to
 the kynge / that be than was also vnarmed / & made as good chere
 as he coude after the auenture that was fallen, for wele trusted he
- 20 sone to be socoured / Ouir aH the Towne was ther no knyght, All the
townsfolk
praise Prince
Philip's
 Squyer, lady, nor Ientilwoman, riche ne pore / but that spake of le
 Despurueu ; of his grete noblesse, of his persone, and of his maner ;
 & aH gaue hym the preise & loos aboute aH othir / seyng that it
- 24 came hym of grete corage / whan he sawe his maister taken / that
 he allone so mightily a-mong so moche people rescowed his maister /
 and ar any man came at hym / so valiauntly toke the kynge
 prisoner / there was neuer noon sawe yn one man more worthy-
 28 nesse shewed in a day / his enemyes fled his strokes, & they on his
 part had ioie and recomfort / and the leest hardy became valiaunt /
 & were encoraged by his prowesse. ¶ Suche wordes and semblable
 were spoken of hym thourgh aH the Towne, of grete / meane & litil.
- 32 ¶ Now is fferant with his prisoner, and welcomed hym, and did
 hym aH the honour and pleasir that any man coude do his prisoner,
 comfortyng hym, seyng that by hym / and by his good meanes, a
 pees sholde be made bitwene his brother and the kynge of Sizile, &
- 36 he trusted that for that cause god had ordeyned hym to haue hym [11. 17, bk.]
 prisoner / for without grace of god ne might it haue ben / for this
 he knewe for trouthe / that he that had taken hym / had neuer
 sene swerde drawn bifore in bataile / and yit was ther no leuyng
 40 man / that moost had vsed the warres coude more haue done / wher-
- THREE KINGS' SONS. C

Ferant asks
Ferabras to
make peace
between the
Sultan and
the King of
Sicily.

by aH men might knowe / that it was verily goddes werke.
 wherfore he praide the kyng, his prisoner, that he wolde put hym
 in deuoir to make the pees betwene his brothir and the kyng of
 Sizile his maister / and in so doyng / he shold wyne grete loos 4
 and renome, & gete hym self out of the daunger he was yn now.
 fferabrace, kyng of Perce, seeng hym prisoner / heryng the wordes
 of his maister, answerd hym in this maner / "yif it pleasid Mahun
 that y myght do any thyng touchyng the pees of this tuo kynges, y 8
 wolde right gladly emploie me, though y were not prisoner / for y
 was neuer of contrary wille / But the debate is betwene them
 for sustenance of the feith that he holdeth ayenst oure bileue /
 whiche, by the feith y owe to that god that y honoure, y had leuer dy 12
 than be a treter in any mater contrary to oure bileue / yif youre
 kyng were content to holde oure lawe, the peas were sone made /
 but othirwise y se no remedy" / "Be my feith," seild fferant, "than
 shaH we neuer haue pees" / than lefte they of thies wordes, and the 16
 kyng required fferant that he might se hym that had taken him /
 for ouer all thing he desired it / fferant knewe wele that he was
 right wery of the payne & trauail that he had pat day, wherfore
 he had no wille to sende for hym / hou be it / that he had more 20
 desire to se hym than kyng fferabrace had / for he loued hym as
 moche as any man myght loue his lady / and grete cause had he /
 for that day had he rescowed hym from the dethe / for, and he had
 be brought to the Soudan, aH the golde on erthe ne might haue 24
 bought his lif / and so Answerd he to kyng fferabrace, "sir, y
 suppose that he be at reste, but to-morowe, and god be pleased, y
 shalt sende hym vnto you" / the kyng answerd, "at your pleasir
 be it / but y shalt neuer be at hertes ease til y se hym / for I desire 28
 as moche to se him, as seke man doth his hele" / fferant sawe the
 kynges desire moche; and to accomplishe it, wist not what to do /
 for he dred that his seruau^t were sore hurt, wherfore he durst not
 sende for hym / so wist not he what to 1 answer, but praide the 32
 kyng to haue pacience til on the morowe, whiche answerd hym /
 "so most y / for my wille may not be accomplisht. I am a prisoner;
 but y sey you for trouthe, and y were at my liberte, y wolde se
 hym or y slepte, what trauail so euer y toke on me / wherfor, and 36
 he be any thyng hurt, and ye wold do me that grace to brynge me
 ther he is, ye shold do me grete comfort and pleasir" / fferant,
 heryng thies wordes, toke conclusion in hym self / that he wold go
 se Le Despurueu his seruau^t, and seide to the kyng, that yif his 40

[1 leaf 18]
 Ferant begs
 him to wait
 till next day.

- seruaunt might come to hym, he wolde brynge hym to hym that
 night / and yif he might not go / he wolde biseche hym of his
 goodnesse to come se hym / thus departed he from the kyng,
 4 whiche praide him right specially that he might se him assone as it
 coude be / for he coude not bileue that it were any mortal man / but
 som spirituel thinge sent from heuen to punyssh hym for his
 trespaces; for he thought "it was not possible to be in one man that
 8 y haue seyn hym do this day" / fferant began to laugh, and seide /
 "sir, whan ye se hym ye shall not fynde him dispuruaide of moche
 more" / thus departed fferant fro the kynge / and came to the place
 where Le Despurueu was loggid / and was leide on a bedde full euel
 12 ordeyned for / and litle remembred of any man. and so he entird
 in-to the chambre of le Despurueu, whiche, whan he sawe hym, was
 all abasshid / & wolde haue risen ayenst hym / but he might
 vnnethe remewe. whan his maister sawe him in that plite, he
 16 raune to hym, and caught hym in his armes, wepyng for pite that
 he had of hym, and in his mynde leide grete blame vnto him self /
 that he had noon erste visited hym / seyng, "alas, my frende, ye
 are porely awaited on after the high dedes that ye haue don to day.
 20 I pray you foryeue it me / y knowe wele that hym that gaue me
 ioie & honour, y haue put yn foryetyng, take the honour to me,
 whiche cometh of your bounte, that y haue so simply remembred
 it; but pardon me, my frende / for the remenaunt of my lif y shall
 24 better remembre you / ye aught nomore to thanke me than of
 your dethe for lakke of helpe, yef ye had hadde any mortall wounde,
 and all othir wise haue ye deserved vnto me / seing the grete payne
 & trauaile that ye haue endured this day to saue my lif & myn
 28 honour; and y, as a wretch full of vnkynndenes, haue put you all in
 foryeting, whiche reschewed me this day from dethe / and .I. not
 comforte you with one onely visitacion." Le Despurueu, heryng
 his maisters wordes, was so ashamed that he coude vnnethe loke vp /
 32 doing him all the honour that he might after the hurtis but he
 had on him, reputyng him-self full vnworthy to haue any suche
 honour. "seing / my lorde, I neuer deserved such honour as ye put
 me to / god yeue me grace to do you seruice that may please you / &
 36 therwith all wold haue drawn him bak as all shamefast / but his
 maister wold not suffre hym / & fourthwith sende for the best
 Surieoun withyn the Towne / and men to serche his woundes a-fore
 hym; & though he were right sore hurt / thier was no peril of dethe
 40 yn hym / so that he were wele loked to / then was he ordeigned for

Ferant goes
to Prince
Philip's
lodging,

and is
ashamed to
find it so
poor.

He apologizes
for his neg-
lect of Philip,

[16, 18, bk 1]
who saved
his life.

He sends for
the best
Surgeon to
attend
Philip.

Ferant has
Prince
Philip's
room done
up,

and lets K.
Feralbras
come to see
him.

Feralbras
praises
Prince Philip
very highly.

[1 leaf 19]

Philip asks
him to make
peace be-
tween his
brother, the
Sultan, and
the King of
Sicily.

in the best maner. Than sent kynge fferabrace to fferant, prayng
him that he might se his maister. fferant made the chambre right
wele to be apointed, and made torches to be brought yn / and sent
priuelie to the kynge, that yif it pleasid him he might come / whiche 4
came with right a ioifull herte / and for the grete desire pat he had
to se Le Despurueu, he felt noon of all the peyne & trauail that he
had endured that day. So came he in to the Chambre, and ffounde
fferant talkyng with le Despurueu, whiche was leide on a couche / 8
and whan fferant espied the kynge, he kneled downe & toke hym
by the hande, and shewed hym hym that hadde taken hym / whiche
knewe nothinge of his comyng / but assone as he perecyued hym /
he knelid vp as wele as he myght / the kyng toke hym yn his armes, 12
& made hym to arise, seyng / "my right swete frende, yif ye had be
sontyme to-day as humble vnto me / and lowly as ye be nowe / y
had not ben here / Although your maner were ffeers & vigours yn
the felde / it is here humble & anyable, wherby your dedes be the 16
more to be preised. and now y se yowē / Notwithstandyng the grete
peyne & trauail that ye haue endured to-day, me thinketh your
persone resembleth your werkes, for yn worthynesse non may com-
pare with you. In like wise, in persone, beaute & maner, y knowe 20
noon comparable / & it pleased god, y wolde y might contynne the
remenant of my lif / youre felawe / with that / that we were parte-
ners in all that y haue or euer shall haue, so that y might observe &
kepe myn owne feith." / Le Despurueu, ¹that seeth hym self thus 24
honoured and preised at the first dede of Armes that euer he was
at in his lif, was so abasshid that he wist not what to Answer, saue
only that he seid / "sir, ye do your honoure to praise so moche, so
pore a Ientilman as y am / the recommendacion is more yours than 28
myn / for to theym that sey wele, the honoure aught to tourne. I
wote not what to sey you / for forsothe it was the first auenture
that euer y was at / But it semed me, yif alle youre folkes had
resembled you, my lord / My maister that here is had not hadde 32
you nowe in his handes / albe it pat he put grete peyne ther-to /
And yif it were thus, that god by his grace wold consent / that by
youre goode meane the pees might be made bitwene your brother &
the kynge of Sizile / ynne good houre for youre self were ye prisoner / 36
for your grete renome sholde multiplie & double / and y bileue
verily that my lorde, my maister that here is, wold in that case
haue of you noo fynaunce, but holde for your raunsoun your peyne
and labour right wele employed. and as for me, y wolde right 40

- humbly biseche you theryn / if so simple a persone might make a
request in so hy a matier" / The kynge answerd hym, "my right
dere frende and felawe, if it were in my power & at my wylt, y
4 certifie you, þat to youre request y wolde emploie me / albe-it þat
.i. bileue neuer shalt y haue that power / seeng the matier as it is /"
with suche wordes they droue forth the tyme tilt fferant thought it
tyme for the kynge to departe / seyng vnto hym, "sir, ye be
8 trauailed / & so is your maister that toke you / if it pleased you, it
were tyme to go to reste, and for hym also" / After thies wordes
departed the kynge from le Desparuen. And fferant conueide him
to his loggyng / and came ageyn to le Desparuen / and puruaide
12 that no thing failed him / & folkes to waite aboute him / chargyng
theym to gif hym as grete attendaunce as they wold to hym self /
than toke he leue of hym, & went to his loggyng / where as he made
a letter vnto the kynge of Sizile, in such fourme, aftir the commen-
16 dacion & maner of wrytyng: "Sir, I am aryued in this your Towne /
at my retourne out of the Reaume of Spayne / the xxviij day of
marche / and for this, that I and my horses & all my folkes were so
trauailed and wery, y most of necessite tary with my brother a
20 while; and the ¹meane ceason of myn abidyng, Kynge fferabrace, [¹ lf. 19, bk.]
brother and lieftenaunt to the Soudan, was at ffounde, but iiij. or v.
litle myle hens, & knewe of my comyng / and for that he desired,
as y haue vndirstande, to haue some of my folkes to enquire the
24 tidynges of Spayne, & howe y haue spedde / concludid to ren bfore
this youre Towne, & had in his company .ij. thousand feighters and
moo, & made .ij. embusschementes, and sent his currouns a-fore this
toun / but for that my brother and I supposed somewhat their
28 entent / we wolde no body to issu out / & whan the kynge vndir-
stode by his folkes that ther wolde noon of vs come out / he came
bfore the Towne him-self with all his puissaunce, & parted theym
in diuerse parties, environyng the Towne rounde aboute / then
32 ordeyned we a right grete scarmysssh to be made ouer the yate that
was ferthist fro the kynge / by the whiche crye & scarmyssli the
moost part of the kynges folkes drew to that side / & than we,
seeng the kyng but with litle company, issued out on hym / at the
36 whiche tyme were many grete armes done on bothe parties / and
the kynge taken, and brought by strength to this your Towne /
where-as he is stille / and whan his folkes sawgh the takyng of
their lorde, they made, and make yet, a maner of abidyng bfore this
40 towne / & trust, as we ymagyne, to haue hasty remedie by the

On a hint
from Ferant,
K. Ferabras
leaves Prince
Phillip.

Ferant writes
to the King
of Sicily,

and tells him

how they took
K. Ferabras
prisoner.

Ferant
praises
Prince Philip
to the King
of Sicily;

Soudan. wherfore y dar not departe hens / nor sende vnto you the
kyng / whos taking was by miracle doon / by a very yong man of
my house / that is suche in alle thynges as the berer herof shalt
enforme you / & I beleue when ye se hym, ye shaHt like him bettir 4
than y write vnto you / if it please god, it shaHt not be the last
seruice that he shaft do you / and y beseche oure lordie, of his grace
to graunte you thacomplissment of youre high and noble desires :
Writen at your Towne of Talpoir, the .viij. day of Aprile." Thus 8
thies letters writen, he called a messangere right wise and discrete /
and delyuered them vnto hym / & bitwene mydnyght and the poynt
of the day he made him to departe / and so passed he forth, as god
wold, aHt peasebly / so that he came sauflly vnto the kyng of Sizile / 12
whom he founde right sorowfult. But whan he had seyne his
lettres, he was right ioiful, and made them to be radde in the pre-
sence of alle the noble men of his Court / whiche deuoutly to-gelirs
thankid & preised god / trustyng, that by this takyng, some frute 16
shold folowe. The kyng ¹commaundeth the Messangere alle
openly to telle his credence / whiche seide vnto hym, "sir, we
repute yn your towne to be a miracle / and I shaft telle you the
reason / In the Towne of Towlete was ther a yong man, a-boute 20
the age of .xx. yere / that lay seke of half a yere / which was newly
recoured at the conyng of my lord, my maister / This yong man is
so wele visaged / so faire made of body & of alle fetures, that it
semeth verily that nature haue made him with hir propre handes / 24
and with this excessif beaute / he hath so moche of humblesse and
bounte, that no man can bileue it / without seyng / & of maner he
passeth alle othir. This saide gentilman is of good nacion, but not
riche / So it fortunad my lord, my maister, to be logged ther as he 28
had leyne so longe seke ; and so wele demeaned him this yong man
to hym & to his folkes / that eueri man him preised / & so moche
that my lorde withhelde him for his seruauit / & brought hym with
hym, often deuysyng with his othir folkes the maner of this man / 32
and hym thought / that he might not faile to be valiaunt ; & so hath
he founde hym ; ffor at the besynesse he sawe him do so wondir-
fully yn armes, that it is to grete a meruaile / for my lorde was
taken / and he alone reskewed hym by his grete strength and 36
hardynes, and toke the kyng prisoner, & brought hym in-to your
Towne / and euery man that sawe the hardynes of this yong man,
toke suche corage & boldnes, that they abandoned theym to the
vtterest / & so they lefte mo than .V. C. of the kynges men ded in the 40

[1 leaf 20]

and so does
his mes-
senger,

who reports
how Philip
rescued
Ferant, and
captured
Ferabras.

place / & as the sonne passith the sterres, so passid this yong man
othir folkes. he is borne of the Reaume of ffraunce / and for con-
clusion / alle that se hym loue hym / honoure him / and cherissh
4 hym / and he that aught moost to hate hym, the kynge his
prisoner, swerith by his gouldes þat he wolde haue hym in his
company the remenaunt of his lif, to departe euenly with hym alle
the lande & goode he hath / This yong man, yif any man reherce
8 his honour or hardies / is as basshfuH as a mayden / he woH not
haue the kynge reputed as his prisoner, but for his maisters
prisoner" / the kynge was of thies tidynges full ioifnH, & thought
wele that god had sent this yong man to do hym yit a grettir aide /
12 anon he made to ryng the bellis in alle the ch[i]rches of the Towne /
and he and the Quene & his doughter, and alle othir in the Towne,
went on processiou / thankynge god of the good auenture that he
had gyuen them. Thus bode he 'stilt, herkenyng what the Turke [¶ If. 20, bk.]
16 wolde do vpon the takyng of his brother.

YE may wele wite that yn the Chambres of the ladies was
spred a-non the tidynges that fferauntes messangere had
brought / and rehersed alle the vertues of this yong Squyer,
20 Le Despurueu, wele asmoche or more than the messangere had
seide; for ye knowe wele the reporters put to somewhat more alway /
The Quene, her daughter, and alle the ladies & gentilwomen, heryng
recorded the right parfite bounte, beaute, and worthynes-e of this
24 yong man, desired meruailously to se hym. So ther was no day
but they had hym in speche, in so moche that some of the gentil-
men of the court had grete displeasir therof, thynkyng that by hym
aH their loos & grace sholde be the lesse / Thus bigan the enuye
28 bitwene the yong men of the Court & le Despurueu, that aftir was
goode & profitable for the kynge / for that they wolde be as worthy
in armes as he, their corage & hardies doubled, whiche did so moch
good to the Reaume of Sizile / that it was ayen reuied in honour /
32 as ye shaH here-aftir here. ¶ ye haue wele herd here-bifore, what
messangers the kynge of Sizile had sent in to alle reaumes / & that
the messangers had in charge to telle prynces hou it was with him /
for the disarge of hym, without he were shortly socoured / taking
36 god to his recorde, & aH the worlde / that the charge was theires /
and not his / Thus thies messangers, goyng to many kynges &
prynces / in especiaH to the kynge off ffraunce / of Englonde & of
Scotlonde, The kynge of ffraunce hanynng remembraunce of his
40 sone, that but litle a-fore he had lost, thynkyng yn hym self, that

Ferant's
messenger
continues his
praise of
Prince
Philip.

The Queen of
Sicily, the
Princess
Iolante, and
all the Court
Ladies are
eager to see
Philip.

The other
Courtiers
envy him;
but they fight
hard to equal
him.

The King of
France says

god had soffered it for that he hadde done noon helpe nor comfort to this cause / wherefore he had taken fro hym the thinge in the worlde that he best loued, then renewed a grete part of his sorowe, and thought / that of hym selue he was so olde & feble that he might 4 not go. But, & any of the kynges of England or of Scottes wolde

he'll send
40,000 men
to help the
King of
Sicily;

go, or any of their sones / he wolde aide theym *with* xli^{ti} thousand men wagid for a yere / The messenger of Sizile heryng the answeere of the kynge of ffraunce, was right glad and ioifuH therof, hauyng grete pite 8

[1 leaf 21]

& compassion of the kynges sorowe, which semed ¹more ded than a-lyue. Thus departed he from hym, & went to the Reaume of Inglond / where he fonde the kynge / to whom he shewed his credence / and told him also the Answer of the kynge of ffraunce, 12 whiche he had founde in fuH grete annoy & trouble, seyng that it semed hym / if his sone had be stiH ther / with right good wille

and the King
of England
promises aid
too,

he wold a sent hym on that viage. The kynge of England, whan he had herd the messenger that spake fuH wele & wisely, he 16 thought moche on that werke / and had many counsellis at dyuerse tymes / And so, aftir sad deliberacion, he answerd the messangere yu this maner / “I knowe wele / that among other kynges & cristen prynces y am gretely bounden to god / for he hath gyuen me more 20 of weles than y haue or can deserue, wherefore y wolde ful gladly do hym seruice, though y may not so moche as y am biholden to do. I haue but one only sone for to holde my Reaume aftir my deth, which y may yn no wise departe *with* ; how be it / if ye can fynde 24 any kynge or prynce that woH entreprise this viage / y shaH helpe

If the King of
Scotland 'll
let one of his
3 Sons head
the Expedi-
tion.

hym forth with a good puissance / & if my brother & neighbore, the kynge of Scottes, that hath .iiij. sones, wolt entreprise it / y shalt put to yit more gretir helpe and payne than y wold do yu the 28 company of som othir / and me semyth he might lightlyer do it than the kynge of ffraunce or I, for he hath .iiij. sones ; and if it pleased him to sende forth one of theym, whiche shold only be gouernour and hede of this werke, it sholde be to him grete glorie & honour 32 *with* the seruice that he shold do to god.” The knyght of Sizile, heryng the answeere of the kynge of England / wist not what to answeere, the kynges seiying was so resonable / but so departid fro hym / and toke the streight wey toward Scotlond. And *withyn* 36 short while he came there the kynge was / & presented his *lettres*, & tolde his credence / and aH that he hadde founde with the kynges of ffraunce and of England. The kyng of Scottes remembred him self gretly in this werke / and thought that euerich of the kynges 40

- aforesaid had delyuerd to hym the Chapelet / knowyng wele he
 had moo sones to sende forth than any of that othir / and for that
 the matier appered to hym fult grete / he answerd no-thing lightly
 4 ther-to, but fult long tyme thought ther-vpon / and for that cause
 sent to assemble alle the estates of his Reaume / and at ¹their comyng (1 ff. 21, bk.]
 to hym, opened & declared to hem, as wele by lettre as by mouthe, The King of
 aH that the knyght of Sizile had brought hym. & for that he sawe Scotland
 8 this mater peisaunt, & gretely touchid hym, he wold make ther-to assembles his
 noon answer withoute their aduise & agrement, and gaue them Nobles and
 lene to take aduise ther-on ij. or iij daies, and commaunded theym Commons,
 at that tyme to be ther present ageyn, eueri man to sey his aduise.
- 12 Thus departed they, & counseiled to-gedre fro day to day / and
 were wele instructe; & remembred what thei shold answer. the
 day came that they were assigned to be a-fore the kynge, where-as
 they ordeyned a fult honourable knight to make the Answer for alle
 16 the iij. estates in generall, which knight, aftir the honoures & reuer-
 ences don to the kynge as to him bi-longed, for alle thestates of his
 lond seide / “Oure souerayn lord / we haue, my lordes that here be, who advise
 prynces, prelates, & Barons / knightes / Squyers, & Burgeis of thes him
 20 Reaume, thought on that it pleased your grace to open vnto us to-
 ching the aduertisment that ye had of the kynge of Sizile, the whiche to help the
 aduertisment touchid gretely to youre holy cristen feith / the sauacion King of
 of your soule / and to the honour of you & of your Reaume. & for Sicily,
 24 to geue you counsell we haue had deliberacion to take aduise to-
 gedre, suche as y shaH declare vnto you / offryng to you toward
 this conclusion / that we shaH put in auenture oure bodies & part and they will
 of oure goodes. we knowe wele that ye be created kynge / ye and back him
 28 alle othir, for the defence of the comon wele / & specially for to kepe with their
 & maytene the feith / and to this cause be ye ioyned & sacred / and bodies and
 if ye faile to the defence of the feithe whiche is the thinge that goods,
 most serueth to the comon wele, than go ye oute of the termes
- 32 wherfore ye were create / we knowe also the sorowe of the kynge of
 ffrance, that hath no children but one ~~pat~~ he loste of late tyme /
 the dispareunce also of the kynge of England, that hath but one
 sone / and ye haue iij., wherfore ye be lesse excusable than any of
 36 them, with the grete aide that they offre you, which semyth vs, seeng
 your grete worthynesse / the children that ye haue / & the offris
 that be made vnto you, by reason with your honour ye may take
 noon excuse, but ye may conclude to sende one of my lordes your
 40 sones, which that pleasith you / and for to knowe oure aduise, we

his eldest
son taking
command.
[¹ leaf 22]

The King of
Scotland

thinks of the
difficulties of
this Sicilian
Expedition

all night,

and next day

answers his
Estates:

[² lf. 22, bk.]

conclude alle / that the eldest shold be moost propre, for he is more
redy to harneys than any of that othir, & more sad ¹to conduyte a
grete entrepryse / and if it please you this to do, my lordes alle that
here be / haue made you suche offres as y haue seide here-bifore / 4
vndir whos correccioun y was ordeyned & commaunded to declare
this vnto you / and nowe alt lieth in your good grace, for, as it
pleasith you to commaunde, we are alle redy to accomplishe.”
¶ The kyng of Scottes, heryng the wordes of this forsaide knight 8
yn the byhalue of the .iij. estates of his land, thought fuH moche on
this matier, for it touchid him right nere, and therefore differred he
it / til on the morowe, ij. aftir none / and commaundid at that tyme /
eueri man to be ther ayen / thus euery man departed / and the 12
kyng, that neuir coude put this matier out of his mynde, thynkyng
yn hym self that it was in maner leide vnto hym by the kyng of
ffraunce & of Englund / & sith auised hym by the .iij. estates of his
land / & so restid it but at him self; wherfore hym thought, as a 16
man constreyned by honour, he might not refuse in this viage to
sende forth his sone. And then ayen aftir thies consideracions he
wolde argue yn hym self to the contrary / thinkyng, “this armee
may not be put on me without grete charge / I am the leest of the .iij. 20
kynges, & the despenses ar like to tourne on me / it behoueth me
to take grete hede that I haue a notable aide of eche of them / it
behoueth alway that my sone be acompaynyed with people of this
land, & that the grettist company come with hym, whiche may not 24
be without grete empouerisshment vnto this land, wherof y am nowe
fuH sorowfuH / And if y shold sende forth myn eldest sone / whiche
is the thinge yn this worlde that y best loue / yif he diede, y shold
be so sorowfuH / that y sholde neuir aftir haue ioie nor rest in my 28
herte / wherfore y wote not wele what y may sey / But y pray the,
my creatore, to counseH me aftir thy pleasir, & to myn honoure /”
thus aH nyght strone he & argued in his mynde / & wist not what
wey he might holde / be aroos in the mornyng, & herd his massis 32
with grete deuocioun, recommendyng him and his werkes to god /
aftir his massis and dyner dōn / as fully affermed of that he wolde
do / wente in-to the chambre wher alle thestates were redy at his
comyn. so entred he yn with visage and maner fuH trist and sorow- 36
full / & at his comyng, and silence commaundid, he spake to his
men and suggesttes / right hertly thankyng theym of the good wille
he founde them of towardes hym, ²and preisyng god with good
herte, that thestates of his Reaume were of suche & so high prud- 40

ence, dredying & louyng god, as he sawe by experience ; for euerichon
 of hem yn his parte offred seruice to oure lorde / wherof he was as
 ioifult as he might be. And in like wise he sawe, & verely knewe,
 4 the grete & naturall loue that alle they of his blode, with the
 remenaunt of the .iiij. forsaide estates bare vnto hym / yn-as-moche
 as eche of theym wold, & desired grete honoure of hym & of the
 Reaume, prayng theym also not to to be abasshed nor ameruailed,
 8 though that his manere were perauenture more sobre than it hath
 ben be-fore tyme, “for this matier goth full nere me / for many
 reasons / one is / that some folkes not wele seiying, perauenture wold
 say, ‘ beholde this presumptuous kyng, the leest of the .iiij., that is to
 12 wite, of ffrance & Englund / that of him selue wold enterprise this
 viage / that the tothir haue full grete doute to take on hande, whiche
 haue so many noble lordes of their lynage / wherof they might full
 lightly fynde a suffisaunt hede ’ / thus the thyng may turne more to
 16 charge than to preise. I conside, on that othir side / þat by the
 two forsaide kynges is ny all the charge leide on me / echon of them
 with helpe me / and ye my Cousyns, frendes, & suggettes, counseile
 me to entreprise this viage / & to sende forth my eldest sone,
 20 whiche y loue moost / wherto ye offre youre bodies and goodes to
 myne aide in this hy matier. and for asmoche, if y had not corage
 to do it, seeng your grete offers / I might be reputed with alle
 straungers, & amonge your selue, a man but of litle feith & of
 24 slakke corage / and therfore, what-som-euer befall vnto me therof /
 either sorowe or pouert, y ought more to put my trust yn you than
 any othir ; wherfore y am determynd & thoroughly concludid, bliss-
 yng me with the syne of the crosse, recommaundyng my dede to
 28 my blissed creatore / to make my sone Dauid to enterprise this
 viage / for y haue no sone but hym / but that were to yonge ther-to,
 & y pray god yene hym grace to do him suche seruice as may be to
 his pleasir / and y pray you alle my cousyns, frendes and suggettes,
 32 to streech forth your good willis acordyng to your promyses.” Alle
 the .iiij. estates, heryng the Answere of the kyng, had grete ioie,
 vndirstandyng his good wilt, and alle to-gedirs, & eche of them,
 helde vp his hand, promysyng ¹the kyng seruice with body &
 36 goodes. and thus was the matier perfittly concludid / and day taken
 of the departir at ffenyrer / and it was the ffenyrer aftir the depart-
 yng of Le Despurueu. The conclusion thus taken / the messenger
 of the kyng of Sizile was deliuered, to whom was shewed all then-
 40 tent of the kyng of Scottes, with that the kynges of ffrance & of

he may be
 blamed for
 presumption
 in starting
 the Expedi-
 tion;

but as the
 Kings of
 France and
 England, and
 his own sub-
 jects, haue all
 promist their
 help,

he will let his
 eldest son
 David under-
 take the
 enterprise.

[1 leaf 23]

The Sicilian
Messenger
reports that
the Expedi-
tion is de-
cided on.

The Sultan
hears of it,

and recalls
Ferabras's
troops.

Ferant is
orderd to
send Fera-
bras, and
Prince Philip,
to Sicily.

[1 ff. 23, bk.]
Prince Philip
grieves at
this, and

wants to
serve on the
frontier.

Englond wold do him any aide / Thus the knyght of Sizile departid
fult ioiful out of Scotland, & toke his wey by Englond & be
ffraunce, & shewed the ij. kynges aH the conclusion that hath be
taken in Scotlond / humbly bisechyng them this holy viage shold 4
not be letted / so hath he promys of both kynges, for no thyng they
wolde faile, but trewly performe aH that thei had seid bfore. The
messangers deuoir doon as is here rehersed / he toke the way
streight to Sizile, & came vnto the kyng / sone aftir the comyng 8
of fferauntes messangere / & tolde the kyng of aH his spede in the
forseide matier / ye may wele wite that the Soudan was not with-
out his espies in eueri cristen Reaume / wherthorugh he knewe of
the conclusion that was taken in Scotland assone or souner than 12
did the kyng of Sizile / and therfore sent he anone a messangere to
his brothers folkes that lay bfore fferaunt / commaundyng them to
departe thens & to retourne to their garison / for he had herd suche
tidynges that he was determyned to haue nō sege laide there as yet. 16
and as for the takyng of his brothir / he wolde remedie it when he
might, but yit he coulede not / thus alle his brother folkes retourned
in-to their garison / and fferaunt in alle haste sente the kyng
worde therof / whan the kyng knewe thies tidynges, he sent 20
fferaunt worde that he shold puruey for the comyng of kyng
fferabras vnto hym, and by suche a day as he apointed him / he
wolde sende him a feliship to helpe conuey the kyng the more
surely. fferthirmore he commaunded him not to leue behinde him 24
his newe esquier / of whom he had herde so moche wele reported /
& alle the ladies & gentilwomen of the court praied the messangere
that he might not be forgotten. Thus went the messangere forth to
fferaunt, & shewed him aH his message from the kyng, & from 28
the Quene & hir doughter, & from alle the ladies & gentilwomen of
the Court / And withyn litle while aftir, this came to the knowlage
of Le Despurueu, whiche desired ouir alle thinges to dwelle ¹ in some
place of the ffrouters / to prone his body in his youthe / and to do 32
that wherfore he was departed fro the kyng his fladir / feling him
self aH hole of his hurtes / and so made a request to his maister /
if it pleasid him, that he might abide with his brothir / for he neuir
entendid but to abide vpon the ffrouters / ffor / for to be a man of 36
Court now / wold he neuir a departed fro the place fro whens he
came. when fferaunt vndirstode his newe esquier, that thus wolde
take his leue of hym / whom he knewe such that noon other might
compare with / yif he were sorowfull, it was no meruaile / & vnnethe 40

- might he holde manere, seying vnto hym, "A! Le Despurueu! haue
y brought you from so fer contre, so sone to forsake me? haue ye
drede / that ye shaH not fynde fightyng y-now yn this contre / or
4 elles that y be a man of so pore condicïon / that y dar not holde my
fote nere the fire / truly I truste verily to be founde more often
vpon the ennemyes than they shal be that abide in this place / &
that more often, if ye be with me, ye shaH se strokes gyuen than yf
8 ye abode stille here / neurtheles, if ye be not pleased to abide in
my seruice, telle it me at ones, & y shaH do as me thinke good."
The yong gentilman, right shamefast and sorowfuH that he sawe his
maister wroth with hym, wenyng not to haue displeased hym for
12 abidyng with his brothir, answerd hym fuH humbly / "My lord! y
neur thought but that ther was more worthynes in you than y
durst thynke to se / but for that cause spake y not to you of myn
abidyng, but for the drede that y had that ye shold not be so often
16 at skarnysshes as your brother / for, as men sey, the kynge loues you
wele / therfore y thought that ye wolde kepe you nere aboute hym /
and ye knowe wele / it is not accostomed, ne reason, that kynges &
prynces, chefteynes of the warre, be allwey on the ffronters / and
20 for this drede y that y shold se but litle war, nor haue the lernyng
yn armes, whiche was the cause of my desire nowe to abide / but,
sir, and y haue displeased you / y beseche you to pardone me, for y
knowe neither kynge nor prynce levyng, as longe as ye haunte the
24 warres, for whom y wolde leue you. y haue so moche sene of
noblesse yn you / that y am assured y may lerne more in your
seruise / than y dar enterprise or may here" / fferaunt answerd hym,
"A, my frende! for lakke of warre ¹ye shaH not leue me as long as
28 y leue / for there is y-nough in this reaume for you & me, & many
moo" / thus fferaunt & his newe seruaunt be accorded. Then came
the day / that the kynge sent his folkes to fferaunt / whom they
founde alle redy in the felde / & kyng ffrabrace with him / than
32 departed he from his brother Olyuer, prayng hym to take good
hede to the place & the ffronters that he had in keypyng / So rode
he forth aH a day withoute any interrupcion. ¶ It is to thynke,
ffrabrace folkes dred them of the goyng of their maister, and that
36 he shold be brought to the kyng of Sizile / wherfore they did their
diligence to vndirstonde his departyng / & did so muche that they
knewe it for certayn that he was departed right wele accompanied /
than toke they counseill & aduise to-gedir; & it semyd theym that
40 puissaunce was not so bygge, but that they shold take a shame to

Ferant re-
proaches
Prince Philip
for wishing
to leave him.

He'll get him
his fill of
fighting.

Prince Philip
apologizes,

and agrees to
stop with
Ferant.

[1 leaf 24]

Ferabras's
men plan

to rescue
him.

They form
an ambush,
and set spies
in trees.

Ferant warns
his men that
they may be
attacked, and
advises them
to arm.

Some of them
come on the
enemy's
tracks.

The Turks at-
tack Ferant's
host.

suffre their maister thus to be gon. wherfore they vtirly concluded
to put them yn deuoir to the rescue of hym / the mone shone faire
& clere that night that they departed fro the garison / & they did
so moche by the next mornyng / that they passed fferaunt, and 4
embusshed theym yn a wode that was ny the same wey that
fferaunt sholde passe / they kepte theym cloos, & made their
wacchis to go vp in-to trees to se aferre whiche wey fferaunt sholde
come; and thei were in nombre xvj.C feightyng men / And with 8
fferaunt a vj.C or mo of the best men that longed to the kynge of
Sizile, whiche were that nyght wele loggid with fferaunt & kynge
ffirabrace, & made right mery & gretly auised le Despurueu, whiche
thought them of visage, persone, & maner, moche more to be prised 12
than the messangere had seide, & moche desired they to se hym yn
armes / & so did they souner than they wende. they auised him in
alle his wordes and his demeanyng, & founde him so assured & wise /
that they were ameruailled / this nyght passid forth, & the morn 16
came / and fferaunt, that was an yuly wise knyght of warre, saide
to his folkes, "my lordes, if the kynge oure soueray[n] lorde were
prisoner, as he is that we lede / and ye wold do by my counseil, &
we had the puissaunce that oure enemyes haue, ther is no place y 20
wolde souner put me in deuoir to reskewe hym, than here by / and
yistirday we rode armed & helmed / and as this day y se no man
charge hym with harneys; but y sey for me, y shall arme me as y did
[1 ll. 24, bk.] yisterday." some helde ¹opinion he seide wele, & did by his counseil, 24
& some toke litle hede therto / but le Despurueu was aH-wey armed /
for he had no valet to bere his harneys. fferaunt departed fro his
loggyng, the moost part of his folkes armed / & som not, whiche dere
a-bought it / thus rode they forth til they came ny to the wey therē 28
as the embusshementes were leide / many of the yong folkes of the
Court whiche had Grehoundes, trauerst the felde to fynde the hare
or some othir disporte, so longe, that they came on the trakkys of
there enemyes / and anon tolde fferaunt therof / but he was so ny 32
that he coude set no remedy to take none othir wey / but taried
stilt, & put kynge ffirabrace in sure garde / thus put he yn ordyn-
aunce all that he might. on the tothir part / the wacchis of the
enmys that were yn the trees tolde to the embusshementes what 36
they sawe / & sodeynly they shewed them-selue, & brake their
embusshmentes, and alle at ones ranne on fferaunt & his ffelishship.
and aftir the puissaunce that fferaunt had, he encountrid theym
right mightly / but fynally they might not wele haue endured, ne 40

had be the grete worthynesse & vertu of Le Despurueu, that did
 so wondrefully in Armes at that day, that eueri man meruailed /
 he ouirthrowe men & hors; noon myght withiⁿ-stonde his strokes /
 4 so wele was he knowen of his enemyes that euery man fledde hym /
 and as he was feightyng thus amonge his enemyes, they that were
 behynde hym, by strength of Armes / they reskewed kyngge ffrir-
 brace, and delyuerd hym to xx^{ti} men / that in alf haste toke the
 8 wey toward his place / and fortunèd that Le Despurueu, that so
 valiauntly fought, herde the crye & noise / howe men seide kyngge
 ffrirbrace was reskewed: "se where he goth!" he tourned sodeynly
 on that part, & sawe hym ferre on his way / then toke he his hors
 12 with the spores, & folowed the kyngge yn alf that he might, without
 espiying of any of fferauntes folkes, saue of .vj. that folowed hym.
 Le Despurueu hastid him in suche wise, that in a valey he ouirtoke
 the kyngge, & smote yn amonges them, & did so, that he slewe v. or
 16 vj. of them or the tothir vj. coude ouirtake him, whiche, at their
 comyng, with the helpe of Le Despurueu, discomfited the Remenaunt.
 Le Despurueu toke ageyn his prisoner / & be that tyme bothe their
 horses were so wery & fortrauailed that they might no ferther / but
 20 bothe were fayne to alight a fote, to lete their horses take brethe /
 In this meane tyme fferaunt espied that his prisoner was goñ / &
 1 that he had lost his newe seruauⁿt / if he were sorowfult, it is no
 question, not only for losse of the kyngge / but specially for his
 24 seruauⁿt, by whom god had sent him so faire auentures. thus sorow-
 fuH, he cursed the houre that he came ther / and wissed that day
 he had be slayne. Alle tho that were yn his company, as litle as they
 had knowen le Despurueu, yet for the dedes in armes they had sene
 28 hym doñ that day, thought the losse of hym was as grete a sorowe /
 as if the Reaume of Sizile had ben vtirly lost / and yn this sorow,
 as they were to-gedre biholdyng the wey where-as kyngge ffrirbrace
 wente / they sawe vj. or viij. horsis comyng / than drewe they them
 32 to-gedir, wenyng to haue hadde newe to do, & that they had ben
 of a newe feliship to a set on them / than sent they som of their
 forriders thiderward / & anone as they came ny them, they knewe
 verrily they were of their folkes. than went they to them, and
 36 knewe Le Despurueu / that brought ageyn the kyng. than seide
 they to hym, "A, right noble Snyer, flour of honour, ye be wel-
 come / for ye haue recomforted this day the moost discomfortable
 company that euer was / for by your dedis they haue reconerd such
 40 honour and surete that they ar out of aH perile. Blissid be the

Prince
Philip's val-
our alone
saves Fer-
ant's men.

K. Ferabras
is rescued,

but Prince
Philip spurs
after him,

and retakes
him.

[1 leaf 25]
Ferant
mourns
Prince
Philip's sup-
posed loss,

but he soon
arises up,
with his
Prisoner
again.

wey that ye came on hiderwarde, and the place fro whens ye came ! "
 Than anon one of them rode ageyn in aH haste to fferaunt / and
 whan he sawe him, he seide / " My lord, be mery, for yondre is Le
 Despurueu aH hole & sauf, that by his grete myght & harlynes hathi 4
 brought ageyn kynge ffrabrace." ye may wele thynke the ioie was
 grete thorough aH the company / whan that worde was herd / and
 eueri man presid who might be first with hym. whan fferaunt came
 to hym / he toke him in his armes & kist him / and did him suche 8
 honour that the pore yong gentilman was gretly abasshet of / than
 seide fferaunt vnto him / " that day y firste sawe you, was the moost
 happy day that euer y had / And beholde ye nowe whethir y haue
 gabbid vnto you / haue ye failed nowe at the begynnyng, of the 12
 fyndyng of som auenture with me? had it nedid you now for this
 cause to haue hiden with my brothir / yif ye so had don / there
 had bifallen this day the moost pitous auenture that euer was in
 Sizile / that only by your persone is come to good conclusion /" 16
 eueri man seide to Le Despurueu so many goodly wordes of honour /
 that he wist not what to Answere / but as a man shame-fast, smote
 yn amonge the tothir feliship, for to eschewe such wordes as moche
 [1 ff. 25, bk.] as he might; so he yeldid kynge ffrabrace his prisoner to 1 the 20
 handes of his maister / After the auenture thus befallne, they with
 grete ioie departed alle to gedir / and toke their way in right good
 ordenaunce; and eueri man seide that fferaunt was right a wise
 knyght, for he had tolde them fult wele in the morning as was 24
 sith befallen. ffro that day forth, fonde they no recountre that dis-
 tourbed theym yn their viage / & with-yn litle season they came
 thider as the kynge was. bifore their comyng, many were gon bifore
 to take vp their loggyng; & also som officers of armes & par- 28
 cenantes that had be at this iourney, wente in aH haste to the
 kynge / & tolde hym aH the maner & trouth therof / And wite
 wele the kynge was as ioifuH as he might be / and gretely mernailed
 of the grete prowess that he herd euery day of this yong man, Le 32
 Despurueu; & moche he desired to see him, for he thought wele it
 was some tokne that god wold recouer him; for the armes that he
 herd reported of hym, semyd to hym not to be possible to noon
 erthly man / If the kyng were yn this opynyoun / so were alle the 36
 knyghtes, squyers, ladies, & gentilwomen / and the faire & good
 Iolante, the kynges doughter, that in alle hir werkes was wise,
 womanly, & vertuous: whan she herde at any tyme of the honour
 of this yong man, she toke meruailous grete pleasir ther-yn / & she 40

Prince Philip
 is greeted
 and kist by
 Feraunt's
 men.

He is so
 praisd that
 he feels
 ashamed.

Henceforth
 they march
 in safety.

The King of
 Sicily,

and all his
 Court, and
 the Princess
 Iolante, long
 to see Prince
 Philip.

- thought verily that such honour might not be yn a man of smale
 birth / and also she wist wele that without grete nurture, & beyng
 in high places, he might not knowe the weelis and honoures that
 4 he coude / and in hir mynde she wissshed that he had ben of such
 corage that he wold haue entreprised alle his armes for hir sake /
 hou-be-it she had neuir, daies of hir lif, ben amorous / not as moche
 as she enioied the company more of one than of an othir, but as
 8 honoure & maner requyred / thus euery man thorough the towne, as
 wel as in þ^e courte, spake of the worthynesse of Le Despurueu. And
 in this meane season fferaunt & his company came vnto the Towne ;
 & at the comyng, the stretes were so fult of folkes that vnnethe he
 12 might passe, for eueri man desired to se hym that had so honorably
 aquytte hym twies sith he retourned fro Spayne / also euery man
 desired to se his frendes that had be at this last iournay / In like
 wise desired they to se kyng ffrabrace / and the tothir prisoners /
 16 so did thei Le Despurueu, of whom they had herde so moche wele
 reported / thus the houses were alle fornyssht with folkes. And yet
 ther was an othir cause / for a grete while they had not sene no
 good auenture for the kyng of Sizile, but alle of losis & damages,
 20 wherefore this was ¹to them the grettir ioie / thus fferaunt passid [1 leaf 26]
 thorough the prees with grete peyne, and came to his loggyng / where
 as kyng ffrabrace alight, and alle his folkes / and yn alle hast
 aredied hym to go to the kyng his maister / and to delyuere hym
 24 his prisoner. so wente he forth vnto the kyng, that abode hym in
 the grete halle of his paleis / that was so fult of people that euery
 wyndowe and borde was charged / and so were alle the stretes of the
 Towne / so that he was a large half houre or he coude passe the
 28 prees to come yn to the halle where the kyng was / and at the
 laste he came vnto the kyng / and put the kyng his prisoner afore
 hym / whom he shewed to the kyng of Sizile / and whan he per-
 ceuyed Kyng ffrabrace, albe-it he was his prisoner / yit did he him
 32 such honour that he went toward hym a grete way barcheded, and
 toke hym by the hande / kyng ffrabrace seeng him self prisoner,
 & at the wille of the kyng of Sizile, did hym grete reuerence, for
 at that tyme was he as his sugget / than wente they two hand yn
 36 hand vudir the clothe of estate / & than talked the two kynges to-
 gedre, and callid fferaunt vnto them / but ouir alle thing / the kyng
 of Sizile desired to se Le Despurueu, & behelde ouir alle to knowe
 him / but this yong gentilman, that of his condicoun was shamefast
 40 & humble, had drawn him in-to the prees behynde moche people /

Ferant and
 Prince Philip
 have a grand
 reception
 from the
 townsfolk.

Ferant takes
 his prisoner
 King Fera-
 bras to the
 King of
 Sicily,

who does
 him honour,

but asks
 for Prince
 Philip.

King Fera-
bras praises
Prince Philip,

who captured
him twice.

[1 ff. 26, bk.]

The King
of Sicily is
much struck
with Prince
Philip,

whose beauty
and prowess
are praised by
all.

the kynge that yn no wise coude espie hym, seide to fferauut,
 “where is *your newe seruant* / why put ye him to no more honour /
 be that y haue herde sey / he hath deserved as moche honour as
 any *withyn* this halle, noon othir excepte / forsothe y desire gretely 4
 to se him” / kynge fferabrace, þat herd the kynge of Sizile thus
 speke, coude him in his mynde right goode thanke / and saide, “he
 my feith, he is worthy to haue moche honour / & wold god that y
 had suche a seruaunt, that helde the lawe y holde, and y wolde 8
 take hym for my felaw, daies of my lyf / and partener yn alle that
 y am worth / & shold be as grete maister of my Reaume as my self,
 seeng that y haue sene him do / whiche is not credible / y am his
 prisoner by .ij. tymes / and notwithstanding, all the daunger that y 12
 am yn, cometh by hym / yet is he the leuyng man that y moost
 loue / and moost desire the compayny of.” The kynge of Sizile
 commaundid fferauut to calle him / and so he did / and when he
 herde him called for / he came forth fro behinde moche of the 16
 people / his visage aH rede for shame that so ¹many folkes called
 him / He came bfore the kynge, & kneld douñ, and salewed him
 as he coude fult wele for aH honour was yn hym / the kynge toke
 hym by the hande / & made him to rise vp / and bihelde him right 20
 ententifly / & the more he behelde him, the more was he ameruailed
 of hym that excedid alle othir in euery thinge to be preised / then
 talked the kynge *with* him / and so did kynge fferabrace also. and
 yn alle his wordes they founde him suche, & so wele assured / that 24
 they were ameruailed. The kyng of Sizile, & alle they that sawe
 him, thought / there were moo laudable thinges yn hym than any
 might reporte / he was gretely lokid on of alle them that were
 there / and euery man praiede for him that god of his grace sholde 28
 longe contynue hym yn honour. *withyn* litle while, kynge fferabrace
 departed from the kynge of Sizile to his loggyng, to his dyner.
 The kynge of Sizile commaundid fferauut to “brynge ageyn kynge
 fferabrace aftir dyner, & le Despurueu also. and then shaH they se the 32
 quene, the ladies & gentilwoman.” & thus departed they to their
 loggyng / AH that day in euery place was moche speche of the beaute,
 persone & manere of Le Despurueu. But they that had sene hym in
 armes seide, that his beaute was not to compare with his worthy- 36
 nesse / and some answerde that than passed he aH the world. The
 kynge, aftir his grete assemble was departed, went to his dyner /
 and *with* hym dynyd the Quene and his doughter. and ye may wele
 thynke that this dyner tyme, through aH the halle they hadde grete 40

speche of Le Despurueu. The quene, & faire and good Iolante hir
doughtir, & alle the ladies & gentilwomen, desired so moche to se
hym, that they thought the dyner right longe, and seide amonge
4 them / "fuH eurous is fferaunt the SeneshaH, to whom god hath sent
this man / by hym is he at this day moche honoured / & the moost
renomed knyght yn this Reaume / If y were kynge, y sholde haue
Le Despurueu of myn house, for he hath noon suche" / On the
8 tothre part, fferaunt dred right sore leste the kynge wold desire his
newe sernaunt from hym, whiche was the thing that moost sholde
sorowe hym / and therfore aftir dyner / er he wente to the courte, he
toke Le Despurueu alone yn-to his chambre / and seide vnto hym,
12 "my dere frende & my childe, the kynge hath doñ you to-day grete
honour, wherof y am right glad / for he may not do you to moche,
neuirtheles y drede that by som enuy that reigneth l'ouir alle, the
kynge sholde be exorted to take you from me yn-to his hous; and
16 if ye were yn wiH now to leue me / it sholde be þ^e grettist displeasir
and sorowe that myght befall me / but y knowe wele it happeneth
alday that men leue company for a higher seruice; hou be it / seeng
that y haue sene in you / y can not Iuge þat ye wiH so do / for ther
20 is so grete bounte in you. I knewe weel þat ye haue not ben
acompayned here as bilongeth vnto you, and therfore y graunt you
fro this day forth to haue v. or vj. men waityng on you / & to take
part of my goodes as longe as it pleasith you to be with me, as my
24 owne sone sholde, if y had any / and if god send me neur noon, y
shaH make you myn heir, yeldyng thanke to god to haue suche a
successour." Le Despurueu fult humbly thankid his maister, &
promysed hym trouthe & seruice to his power, without hauyng
28 thought or wille to seche any othir maister, as longe as he wold
serue / and that his maister shold lyue / and of this, at the request
of fferaunt, promysed him his feith / wherof he was more sure than
of any obligacion in the worlde / sone aftir departed fferaunt from
32 his loggyng toward the kynge / & had Le Despurueu with him, that
about alle thinges desired to se the kynges doughter, whom of beaute,
bounte, & alle good manere was renomed thorough the worlde. Wher-
fore he apoynted hym, as goodly as he coude, to go with his maister /
36 & they came enen as the kyng was arisen. and yit were alle the
ladies & gentilwomen there / the prees was not so grete as it was in
the mornyng / and therfore men might more easily se fferaunt & his
company / Le Despurueu, for his grete humbles, was noon of the
40 first, wherwith his maister was no thinge pleased / for to his power

Ferant fears
that the King
of Sicily will
take Prince
Philip from
him;

[1 leaf 27]

so he gives
Philip five or
six waiting-
men, and a
share of his
goods.

Prince Philip
promises
Ferant his
faith.

Ferant intro-
duces Prince
Philip to the
Queen,

[1 lf. 27, bk.]

who says he's
to amuse
himself with
her daughter
and the
Court-ladies.

Philip is
taken to the
fair Princess
Iolante,

who christens
him *Le Sur-
nomme*.

he wolde fayn haue anaunced hym. The kynge resceyued fferaunt
fult gladly / and aftir that he had salewed the kyng he toke forth Le
Despurueu by the hande / and brought hym to se the quene, seyng
vnto hir, "Madame, here is a gentilman of ffraunce that y brynge 4
you / if his beaute be not resonable, his worthines recompenseth,
for by hym and his dedis hath the kyng, the Soudans brother, yn
his prisoun / for to me ought not the honour to turne therof, but
to god & to this gentilman / and therefore, madame, y brynge hym to 8
you / that it might please your grace to haue knowlache of hym" /
The quene answerd to fferaunt / "for sothe, Seneshalt, a grete
while sawe not y so faire a presente / & y wilt be aqueynted with
hym with right goode ¹wilt / and he is right welcome to me, & y 12
shalt se hym & welcome him more at leiser / if it please god / and
y pray you, brynge hym or sende hym often to disporte hym with
my doughter & the yonge ladies and gentilwomen of the courte /
for it behoueth that we assay him in alle poyntes, if he be suche 16
amonge ladies & gentilwomen as he is amonge you men / And if
he can not wele the manere / y beleue he shalt sone haue lerned / for
it is a comon seying / that men of warre be not good companyers
with ladies & gentilwomen" / Le Despurueu Aunswerd / "Madame, 20
y thanke your grace right humbly / and verily sheweth the same /
that of the warres y can no thyng / but that my lord, my maister,
hath taught me / for neuir yn my lyue was y yn warre but in his
company, wheryn men may lerne bothe wele and honour / for y 24
haue herde hym ymagyne & sey yn the euenyng, that hath befall
yn the morow" / fferaunt answerd & saide / "by my feith, sir, if
ye be as light to lerne your contenance amonges ladies & gentil-
women as ye haue ben to lerne the crafte of armes, ye shalt yn 28
shorte tyme be a bettir mayster / than they that shalt lerne you ;
for so farith it by you & me in the warres" / the quene lough, &
seide, "y beleue / from hensforth, yn like wise he shalbe bettir wel-
come than ye" / Aftir thies wordes, fferaunt made him to rise vp / 32
& brought him to faire Iolante, that Le Despurueu desired so moche
to se / he went not with a nay / but with a right good wille / and
whan he sawe the grete beaute that was yn hir, he thought that alt
that euir he herde speke of hir was no-thing in comparison to that 36
he sawe yn hir / he salewed hir fult humbly, & the faire lady toke
hym by the hande & seide, "my right dere frende, ye ar right
welcome, & by that / that y se / your name is 'Le surnome' ; for ye
ar not Le Despurueu of beaute, ne of alle othir condiciouns as y here 40

sey. Wherefore me thinketh your name is gyuen you with wronge /
 and also me semeth that my lord my fadirs warres be a grete dele
 bettir puruaide sith your comyng, than bifore / I trowe that god of
 4 his grace hath sent you hider" / this yonge gentilman was so
 ashamed & so supprised with the beaute of this faire lady, that he
 wist not what to Aunswere, saue that he seide, "Madame, god
 yelde your grace / but trewly y am wers puruaide than my name
 8 can shewe / but what name that pleasith you, y am content to
 bere" / the quene & fferaunt lough wele at the wordes ¹of hir
 doughtir / & fro that day forth was he named Le Surnome ; whiche
 euery day multiplied, for the more men asaide him at alle pointes,
 12 the more they were assured of hym, & founde him puruaide of alle
 thinge / that to a noble man belonged.

Prince Philip
is abasht at
Iolante's
beauty.

[1 leaf 28]

This meane tyme, abidyng the comyng of the kyng of Scottes
 sone / fferaunt & his felawe abode stille with the kynge, yn
 16 grete ioie, for the tidinges of socours that they abode / and
 yn this ceason of fferauntes abidyng, Le Desparuen, that now is
 named Surnome, by the kynges doughter / euery day wold go se
 the ladies, & in especiaH the Quene & hir doughter, on whom all
 20 his mynde restid / and ther was he right ioifully resceyued / and
 euery day was preuyd in dauncyng / in songes that the ladies coude
 thinke were couenable for a noble man to conne ; but in euery
 thinge he passed alle them that were there / The kynge, for to assaie
 24 him, made Iustis & turneis / & noman did so wele as he yn
 rennyng, pleyying at the pame ; in shotyng, & castyng of the barre
 ne founde he not his maister ne his felawe / for yn euery thinge he
 passid all othir. Thus past forth the tyme / but it annoyed gretly
 28 Surnome, that ther were no warres ne dedes of armes / for the cause
 of his departyng from his fadir was only to do god seruice yn the
 warres ayenst the hethen men : thus had he litle ioie, saue only of
 the faire and good Iolante, to whom his hert was bounden for euer
 32 without departyng. ¶ Now leue we of a litle, to speke of the
 kynge of Sizile and alle his courte, & we shalle speke of the armee
 of Scottes, hou they did aftir the departyng of þe messangere of
 Sizile.

He visits her
daily,

and dances
with her.

He jousts and
tourneys,
plays at
tennis, &c.,
and beats
everybody,

but loses his
heart to Iolante.

36 **T**He conclusioun thus taken, as ye haue herde, with the kynge
 of Scottes, that knewe thies tidynges, sent to the kynges of
 ffrance and of England, how, vpon trust of them / & that
 they had aunswerde the knyght of Sizile / that he had concluded
 40 to sende, yn the service of god, to the socour of Sizile, Dauid his

The King of
Scotland

38 *The Scotch, English, and French prepare for the Sicilian Expedition.*

asks England
and France
what help
they'll give
to Sicily.

[1 lf. 28, bk.]

The Scotch
youth are
eager to fol-
low Prince
David,

and a large
Expedition is
prepared.

The King of
France pro-
mises 10,000
men.

eldest sone / albe-it they knewe full wele it was not yn his power to
fynde ther-to a suffisaunt nombre of folkes / wherefore he praide
eche of theym to assertayne hym what aide & socours they wold do
to god / to the kynge of Sizile / & to his seide sone / bicause that 4
vpon this he might take auise / & shewed theym vttyrly that
without their aide he helde his conclusion noon / ¶ Notable
knyghtes & ¹messangers went to the two kynges. ¶ Now was this
Viage of Dauid spradde & pubblisshed thorough all Scotland / 8
wherof Dauid & alle the yonge lordes & knyghtes of the land were
gladder than euer they were yn their lyue / seying amonges them
that they were moche bounden to god / that in the floure of their
youthle had yeuen them this auenture. Dauid was a goodly yonge 12
man, of like age to Surnome, wele condicioned, as to a kynges sone
bilonged / and wele shewed it / as hereaftir ye may here / there
was no thyng so noious vnto him as his long abidyng / and to the
kynge his fader was no thyng so sorowfull as his sones goyng / for 16
it was the day of the worlde þat he drad moost / and so he had
cause, for it was full longe or he sawe hym ageyn / In this ceason
of abidyng worde fro the kynges of ffraunce & Englund / he made
alle his prouisions & ordenaunces for his sone / so wele and so honou- 20
rably / that ther was neuer non suche seyn bifore in Scotland / In
like wise alle the princes & Barons abielde them, & made to abile
their sones, to go in this armee / whiche they desired to do sone /
seying the conclusion taken / many aunycyente knyghtes there were 24
also, affermed & concluded to auenture their lyues in this Viage, &
thought them wele eurous to make their last viage in so high a
seruice bothe for body & soule. ¶ The messangers spedde them so
that euery man came there his charge was / he that came to the 28
kynge of ffraunce, did his message right wele, & foryate no thyng
what Aunswere he had yeuen to the knyght of Sizile / In trust
wherof his maister was determyned to sende his sone, and ellis not /
The kynge of ffraunce, remembryng for trouthe what wordes he 32
had to the knyght of Sizile, wolde yn no wise for his honour
contrary them; and therefore, by good deliberacion of counsell, or-
deyned to sende his Constable *with* the nombre of .x. M¹ men,
certifyng him that at such day as the kynge of Scottes had taken / 36
ther shold be yn his parte no faile / Thus departed the messenger
of Scotland, that was honorably resceyued, & had grete yiftes.
And now returne we to hym that went yn-to England / that
semblably in substaunce declared his charge, as the tothir had done 40

- in ffrance. the kynge of Englonde, heryng the wordes of the
 messenger, sawe wele that, and he sente not socours as he promysed,
 vpon him sholde reste the charge, and so concluded to sende his
 4 Admyrall of Englonde / and with him the nombre of ^{1vj.} Mⁱ men / The King of
England
guarantees
6000.
[1 leaf 29]
 promysyng on his feith / that such day as þe kyng of Scottes had
 taken, shold not be failed by hym / thus delyuerd he the messenger,
 and honorably rewarded hym. and thus .ij. Messangers sped them
 8 so wele, yn shorte tyme they came ageyn vnto the kynge their
 maister, to whom they shewed hou they had spedde / Whan he
 herd thies tidinges, he perceyued wele ther was no lettyng for his
 eldist sone / than ordeyned he with all diligence his apparail, & so
 12 did euery man yn his parte / & so wele quitte them that at the day
 they had set / there was noon vuredy / and eche of the kynges
 kepte his promys. Then was it a meruailous thinge to se, & a The three
Hosts are
under Prince
David of
Scotland,
 faire / the .iiij. companyes to-gedir / that for the honour of the
 16 kynge of Scottes helde them only vndir the obeisaunce of his sone
 Dauid. ¶ Wele knewe Le Surnome, that the kynge his flader sent
 som folkes to thies socours; wherfore he was in grete sorowe lest
 any of them shold knowe him, for be his wille he wolde not be
 20 knowen. ¶ Now cometh the day of assemble of the puissaunce of
 thies .iiij. kynges / and alle were at the porte Deon, yn Scotland. and embark
from Port
Deon in Scot-
land.
 the kynge of Scottes conueied his sone thider / and aftir that euery
 mannes harneis was shipped / they toke their leue of the kynge,
 24 whiche vnnethe might speke to them, and in especia^H to his sone /
 but whan he toke his leue, felle yn a swone / so that men were fayn
 to bere hym yn-to a chambre, so araied / that he semed rather ded
 than alyue. Alle they that abode & sawe their frendes go, had
 28 suche sorowe that they coude not comfort the kynge / for they were
 alle comfortles / they that wente made litle sorowe, but only to se
 the hevynesse that their frendes toke for theym. The kynge hath
 committed his sone to the aduise of therle douglas & of the Erle
 32 Busshaunt, that were wise knyghtes, & connyng yn the warres, &
 had seide to them bfore their departyng / “my frendes and consyns,
 y put yn your handes the thinge in the worlde y loue moost / &
 commaunde him to the kepyng of almyghti god, & sende hym forth
 36 with you” / and more might he not sey vnto theym. whan euery
 man was to shippe / and the Sailes & ankers wounde vp, they had
 good wynde / that brought hem sone from the port / and alle the
 people that were a lond commaundid them to the kepyng of oure
 40 lord / and there was euery day a seuenyght aftir their departir

generall processione thorough all the Reaume. Alas! this grete & notable armee did litle profit to cristendome / wherof was grete pite and damage / but it is to thinke that god doth all for the best / for perauenture they ¹that went yn his seruice went not as they ought; 4 but I remitte all that to the knowlage of god. *[Illumin.: siege by ships.]*

The Sultan
hears of the
Christian
navy

Off the departyng of this grete & high armee was the Soudan playnly enfourmed / & yn like wise the kynge of Sizile / but of all the reaume of Sizile was not one *with* the armee. The 8 Soudan, in eueri parte of the land that was yn his handes, had folkes to here tidynges / and helde him and his power on the feldes nygh the portes, where as he thought they might aryue; so *withyn* litle while came certayne worde to hym, that men sy the cristen 12 navce comyng to take lond at the port of Gayette / the Soudan, heryng thies tidynges, drewe thider *with* alle his puissaunce, & brought his ordenaunce *with* hym, & ranged hym & his people vpon the ryuage, and leide his gones & his coluerynes to diffende 16 & distourbe the cristen mennys landyng / vpon the tothirside, David of Scotlond, *with* all his company, approched the port, & perceyued the enmys redy to deffende their landyng; and yn as moche as it was late, & that they knewe not the port, they toke 20 counsell to ly at ancre til on the morowe, that they might se bettir what they had to do: So did they as ye haue herde / and at that tyme was the wedir faire and ²calme, & thorough alle the cristen 24 navee they made to blowe trompettes, claryons & taberynes, & alle 24 maner of mynstraHeie, so that it semed wele a place of ioie / their baners & penouns set out fleyng *with* the wynde, so that they that were on land might se them by the bright sonne / & thought it was a riche & a wele ffournysst navee. Oure good cristen men 28 thought longe, that they might not set vpon the Sarasynes that night. In the hoste of the Turkes souned they all night grete taberynes / that it semid bettir Helle than any othir thinge. After all this done, Dauid of Scotland sent for the Constable of fraunce 32 & the AdmyraH of Englund / & the moost part of notable knyghtes & Squyers, prayng them to take aduise & counceH what were best to be done / aftir many wordes & demaundes, the conclusion of the counsell was this / that men shold take .xx^{ti} or xxx^{ti} Galiettes, of 36 the lightest that were in the Navee, & that they shold be wele & strongly garnysst *with* artrye & serpentynes, and alle other abilementes that were behoffull / & that they shold go costyng the lond / to se where were best londyng; and in this wise might they se 40

nearing Ga-
eta,

and prepares
to oppose
their landing.

[² leaf 30]

The Christian
fleet looks a
joyful scene:

the Turkish
host like
Hell,

somwhat the maner of their enemyes / And also that in euery
galiette sholde be some notable knyghtes and squyers wele accom-
payned, suche as were connyng & expert yn armes / this counceit
4 was admytted / and euery captayne that had yn charge to ordeyne
his folkes, did it with aH diligence / So euery man was redy at the
houre that he was apointed / & the Galiettes wele puruaide for / &
full of folkes / But ye may wele thinke that euery man went not
8 that wold, for euery man had desire to auenture him in that high
seruice / whan they were assembled, they departed & sprad in many
placis / approchyng the aryual. The Soudan, seyng this company, reconnoitre,
drew towardes them, wenyng veryly that they had come to take
12 londe / wherfore he ranged his folkes vpone the aryual as ny the
water as they myght, for to defende the cristen mennys londyng;
where he did foly, for the Galiettes approched them so nye / that
they drewe aH at ones withyn the shotte of their ordenaunce, &
16 were withyn ij. stones caste to theym / for the Galiettes & bargettes
drew but litle depnesse / & at this first encountre were many
turkes slayn, & many grete lordes of theym; for the moost noble
alwey desired to be formest / that day bare the turkes grete damage /
20 & with litle losse the cristen folkes retourned ageyn to their grete
vessels, that lay at ancre without the port / ¹whiche had seyne aH [¹ If. 50. bk.]
that they had done on lond / and whan they came, they had grete
laude and thanke, for they had so honorably aquitte them þat day.
24 Dauid of Scotland / the Constable of ffrance, the Amyrall of
Englond, sende for their folkes to come to the shippe that David
was yn / for to telle what they had seyne oñ lond, and hou they
did for the grete shotte that came among hem, and hou they sup-
28 posed that they alle might londe / and thus they answerd alle
generally, that yif the grete vesselles might haue come as nere as
the litle / it sholde haue be a light thinge to take lond / but they
sawe wele it was not possible for theym to come so nere / wherfore
32 it was nedefult to take good aduise, ffor the company of the thre
kynges that ther was / was not lightly to be auentured, for the
losse of them might turne to ouir grete hurte to aH cristendome /
David and alle the tothir lordes, heryng this reporte, concluded that
36 euery man shold take aduise of this matier / & on the morowe, in
the point of the day, that euery man shold here masse / and forwith
astir meete ther ageyn / & sey ther advise, such as they shalt haue
remembred that night / this was done, & euery man wente to supper
40 and to reste. ¶ Nowe shall we retourne to þe Soudan & his

The galliettes
of the Chris-
tians

and shoot
many Turks.

They report
to Prince
David and
his Council,

who resolve
on a consulta-
tion next day.

The Sultan
calls his
Captains to
Council.

Baltasar

advises the
Sultan

[1 leaf 31]

to have pits
dug on the
shore,

and great
trenches,
all fled with
Turks,
and then re-
tire his army
behind them.

folkes, that gretely mervailed of the maner of oure cristen folkes /
for moche people had they lost by them / and aftir the departyng of
the Gallettes, the Soudan sent for alle his Capteynes, to take auisse
what was best to do / either to lete the cristen men to take lond / 4
or to resiste theym / they sawe clerely that yif the cristen men
contynued yn that they had done the day before / he might no
thyng wyne, but alwey lose / so he praied eche of them trewly to
counseile him, & say what was to be done / and aftir thies wordes 8
he asked auisse at one that him thought most sad to counseile in
suche cas / & this knyght was named Baltasar / whiche alt his
tyme had vsed his lif in warres / as wele on cristen as on hethen /
the whiche Baltasar, aftir many excuses made, leyng the charge on 12
them þat were wiser than he / seyng that it was full vnsittyng for
hym to speke before suche as there were / & whan he sawe he
might not be excused, he seid in this manere / "sir, sauynge your
pleasir and correccion, ye haue a feble choyse of me / but sith it 16
pleasith you that y shalt speke, & may not be excused, y shalt sey
vn^dir correccion as me thinketh / ye haue sene the maner of the
cristen to-day / what Damage they haue done to you & youre folkes /
whiche is more than folkes put you yn knowlage of / ye se wele 20
that alt their desir is to take lond ther as we be ; wherof y mervaille,
for it were more profitable ellis where for them / and therfore y
suppose that they haue non of Sizile with them / and so they wote
not where to seche their port but here / wherfore me thinketh it 24
were good this night to make pittes ther as they sholde londe,
whiche sholde be wele garnyssed with ordenaunce, and that they
shold be made yn suche wise that eche of them might defende
othir / And also that ther might be made grete trenches, that ther 28
might be grete nombre of people hid theryn / and that your grete
armee drewe them a-bakke the draught of an arowblast, and there
shewed them. I suppose verily whan the cristen shall se that / they
wold come in many placis to take lond / peraenture alle the puis- 32
saunce of them / and if they come ones *withyn* gonne shotte, y
suppose that fewe of their vessels, or noon, shal escape vndrowned /
and for this that y haue seide of my opinion, alwey *with* correccion,
me thinketh ther shold be appointed moche people, wele puruaide of 36
vitaile til to-morowe yn the mornynge, to go yn hande al night
with this werke / and yif eueri man do his deuoir, y trow it wol
not dure half the night ; and as for my part, y wol begyn, if ye be
plesed. and if myn advise be simple, y besече your grace / & alle 40

- that here be, of pardon, for if y coude bettir / bettir y wold sey, and
 offre me to the best counse^H / Aftir thies wordes / the Soudan
 asketh forth alle othir folowyng / hou they thought. and he that
 4 spake nexte, seide / "sir, ye haue herde thaduisse of Baltasar / that
 all his tyme hath haunted the warres / and for the spede of this
 matier, to myn aduise ye may no bettir be adressed / wherfore,
 without holdyng of longe speche fro pointe to pointe, y can no
 8 bettir say / than y haue herd him say; wherfore y offre my self &
 all my folkes with all diligence toward the perfourmyng ther-of /
 if it so please you." whan thies two had endid their reasons /
 the Soudan asked fether / and euery man was of thopinion of
 12 Balthasar / offryng them self and alle their folkes to all that
 pleased the Soudan to commaunde / this counse^H was sone
 taken & concluded / and they that shold do the dili^gence [1 lf. 31, bk.]
 were ordeyned, and to euery man deliuerd their charge, whiche The pits and
trenches are
dug and
mand.
 16 was done bifore day / and so wele accomplished that no man
 coude amende it / for it was not so wele deuised / but it was
 performed.

- 20 **Y**E haue herde wele hou the cristen men had apoynted the
 moost noble men to be yn Dauyd shipe yn the mornyng
 be tymes / to take aduise what was to be done. at the houre At Prince
David's
Council,
 apointed they came, & went to a counsell / and than spake Erle
 Douglas for his maister / seyng, "faire lordes, ye knowe at oure
 24 departyng yister euen, howe euery man sholde take remembraunce
 of this grete matier. Wherfore, my lorde that here is, wolde fult
 fayne knowe your anises / what is to be done, for he knoweth wele
 amonges you alle, prynces & Barons, ye haue this night fult ofte
 28 awaked to stodie aduise yn this high werke, where-yn we be / In
 whiche we may wynne the glory of heuen / the honour and renome
 of the worlde / and aquyte vs of the charge þat is youen vnto vs.
 So praieth you, my lorde that here is / that it plese you to counseile
 32 hym / and he is redy to execute it to his power. The kynge his
 fadir hath ordeyned hym ther-to / and for that cause sent him
 hider" / aftir tho wordes, Dauyd hym self praide them the same /
 and than he bisought the Constable of ffrance to speke first / for
 36 he was moost noble man of the company, and not werst puruaide of
 good aduise / it was no meruaile, for he was one of the chief of the the Constable
of France
advises
 Reaume of ffrance. Then spake he, & seide / "y meruaile moche,
 my lorde, of so wise a kynge as is the kynge your fadir, that he
 40 hath sent you hider yn this grete & noble company, without

hauyng one only man of that same reaume that ye shold aryue yn.
 vndir correccion / me semeth it a grete defaute / for as longe as
 oure enemyes wille / we shalle take no londe here / seyng the Soudan
 & alle his puissaunce bifore vs, and we not knowyng the londyng, ¹
 whereby we haue neither Wisdam nor poliece to helpe vs / also the
 kyng of Sizile is not aduertised of oure comyng / wherfore y wote
 not what to counseile you / but best, me thinketh, it were to sende
 vnto the kyng of Sizile, and byde stille here til theire comyng ⁸
 ageyn / But ther is o sore point / they that shalle go, knowe not the
 way / ne where they shalle fynde hym / but y make no doute, if
 they may haue grace to come to hym / the kyng shall purvay for
 them to be conduyted surely y-nough / I can se noon other wey but ¹²
 this / for the more y thinke on it / the more straunge me semys
 the matier / wherfore y can not wele geue you counseil, ¹but
 biseche youre Lordship to axe fether of them that haue sene more
 than I. flor often tyme they that haue grettist charges be not moost ¹⁶
 wise / & so farith it by me / but as for my parte, y am redy to
 obeie you / and do you seruise as is commaundid me / and to
 bileue the counseile of wise & noble men, bettir knowing suche
 matiers than y, wherof many may lightly be founde in this notable ²⁰
 company." Dauid vndirstode wele that the Constable was yn dis-
 pleasir, by cause they had noon ther of the Reaume of Sizile that
 might conduyte them / and so he askid forth the Amiralt of Ing-
 londes aulse, whiche in alle poyntes folowed the Constable of ²⁴
 ffrance / & shewed more sad matier to be troubled than did the
 Constable / and spake as he that was not pleased, leyyng grete
 charge to them that had the conduyte of the armee² / and Dauid of
 Scotland askid fether, but he fonde noon that coude take a ferme ²⁸
 purpose. Thus as they were yn argumentes, without any conclu-
 sione takyng, they that were in the somer Castells & toppis of the
 shippis / that might easely se alle them that were a londe, per-
 ceuyed verrily that the Soudan and alle his armee was withdrawen ³²
 more than the draught of an arowe; & anon they tolde thies
 tidynges to dauid / & to alle theym that were with hime, whiche
 forthwith went vp on the shippes / an sawe it was trewe that they
 had seide / Som of them seid the Soudan did this for to haue ³⁶
 bataile, & to haue the cristen men at lesse defence / & som seide
 that he withdrewe him for the grete losse he had ysterday with the
 gones & shotte of cristen men / whiche he wolde no more abide.

that, as they
don't know
where to
land,

they shall
wait for the
King of
Sicily.

[1 leaf 32]

The Admiral
of England
agrees.

The look-out
men report
that the
Sultan has
withdrawn
his army
from the
shore.

- alle they that were there, seide that they withdrewē them for they might not wele feight so ny the water, seying the smalle vessells so wele furnyssht / Than they concluded to go thider ageyn / and it
4 was ordeyned that they shold go, that went the day a-fore, with many moo yn their company / so than was the houre apointed / & to euery man deliuerd the charge of such feliship as shold go at their conduyte / whan the houre came, alle men went to their ves-
8 sells / and in especialt, grete nombre of yong knyghtes & Squyers, moo than had done the day a-fore / & whan they were assembled / they spredde their vessells as they had done the day bifore. Of the tothir parte / grete nombre of Turkes came out of their paulyions
12 toward them, making semblaunt to defende the londe; they that were withyn the barges & Galiettes, in all haste nyhed the ¹Londe, [¹ If. 32, bk.] & then feyned the turkes to withdraw them, for the grete shote of
oure cristen men / this seying, they of the Galiettes approched so
16 nye that they might a lepte to þe londe if they had wolde; & so they had done, if it had not be defendid fro them / the turkes that were yn the trenches & in the pittes, that were so wel made that their shot was alt a longe the see side fro place to place, & was so
20 wele garnyssht that no thinge failed; and whan they sawe the barges & Galiettes so ny, that they might no nerre without londyng, then lepe they out of their trenches / with so horrible a
noise & cry, as though it had ben alle the ennemys of helle; & alt
24 at ones shotte with gones, serpentynes & culuerynes, arblastes, crosbowes; & alle suche ordenaunce as they had / they lete go at ones; and whan the turke herde this noise, he made to caste vp a cry & a noise amonge his folkes, & drewe thiderward in suche
28 maner that alle our folkes were a-ferde; & not without cause / for many of their barges were a londe, & had fewe gones or serpentynes to defende them self with / and they were araied in suche wise / that they were almost destroyed / for the moost part of them
32 withyn / were so hurte that they might not helpe them self / the remenaunt durst not shewe them, for the grete shot that came on them / moreouir, ther were at this first encontryng .iiij. or .iiij. ^{Three or four Christian gallyes and barges are sunk, and many men kild.}
galiettes & barges drowned / wheryn many a notable knight &
36 squier endid their lyues / It is not to questionne / þat our folkes þat were in þe grete Nauce, & might se þis grete infortune / but they had asmoche sorowe as þey might bere / for yn þis litle Nauce was þe flour & þe choise of alle þeir yong chiuallry / full
40 feyne wold þey at þat tyme a bene a londe to a uentured their lyues

The Christians man their small vessels, and advance.

The Turks make a feigned retreat;

their men in the trenches leap out and fire.

The Christians retreat,
having lost
eight boats,

and many
men kild and
wounded.

[1 leaf 33]

I drop this,
because it
annoys me.

Prince David
holds a second
Council.

It decides
to send two
Scotch
knights to
land by night,

and capture a
Turk to show
them the way
to Sicily.

yn the helpe and rescuse of their frendes / but for alle their discomfort / it might now be noon other. The turkes did their deuoir to destroie the cristen / and the cristen put payne to saue them self / without makyng any othir warres, the moost part of them 4 came ageyn to the grete Navee, Wherof were hurt without nombre / & many of them dyde that were hurt with the gonnes & serpentynges / whan all this was endid / they tolde of their losse / how viij. of their smallest vessells were drowned, wherof neuer a man 8 escape, beside all the remenaunt that were hurte / this day hath done asmoche harme to þe cristen men as sholde a done a grete bataile, for suche as were of hy & grete corage, that wolde auenture them / the moost part was dede. ¹There was the sorowe & com- 12 plaint that eueri man made for his frende / aswele for the hurte as for the dede / whiche were to longe to reherce. ¶ I shall leue of this sorowe, for the writyng therof annoieth me / and I retourne to the Soudan & his company / that make grete ioie this night / thinkyng 16 that for a bigynnyng this was a faire auenture / and knewe wele by them self of the night a-fore / ynne what discomfort the cristen men were / and gretely honoure they The knyght that hadde yeuen them this conseille. that nyght concludid they to tary there stille, 20 til the cristen Navee was withdrawn, for the grete losse & sorow that they had / this nyght was yn the cristen Navee no counseill nor conclusion taken, for eueri man had y-nough to do, to visite his frende / there is no sorow nor mysfortune but it most passe. 24 So on the morowe Dauid assembled his counseill; and aftir that he had made the compleyntes & lamentyng of them he had loste, to their nyest frendes / he praied them euerichon to take this auenture yn pacience, & to shewe their best counseill in this matier / & for 28 to reherce the opinions of eueri man, it shold be to longe, I shall go to the conclusion, that was this / they apointed two notable yonge knyghtes, hardy and wise of their age, and wele aduised, & ordeyned them to take that night a Galee / and more than ij. leegis 32 from the Soudans puissaunce thei sholde londe / & put them in deuoir to take som maner of persone walkyng yn the felde, whiche sholde teche them the wey to the kynge of Sizile. whan this was apointed / they leide the charge of the message on thies two 36 knyghtes, whiche were bothe of Scotland, whiche charge was no thinge elles but that they shold telle by mouthe, what auenture was befall to the cristen Navee / and all for lakke that they had no man of that cowntre that coude conduyte them / and that they wolde 40

abide ther / the messangers / xiiij. daies / and if thei retourne not
 withyn that time / they wolde departe / for they had no lenger
 vitaille. Thus departed the two knyghtes / and euery man praide
 4 them to do wele their deuoir; so they went to their vessells, &
 slepte there til it was night / than toke they their course toward a The two
Scotch
knights land,
 grete wode / that semed a two leegis from the Soudans hoste / then
 they toke vnto them vitaille for ij. or iij. dayes, & armed hem
 8 lightly, & toke theire sheldes and their swerdes / and eche sware to
 abide by other yn alle auen'tures; & wele might eche of them trust [1 If. 33, bk.]
 othir, for they were cosyng *germyns*, comen of the best lynage yn
 Scotland, as of Barons / and of their age of them self moost renomd.
 12 So moche did they that, vnperceyued or knowen of any persone,
 they came to the forseide wode. this forest was ful longe, and but
 litle wey fro thens was the place fro whens kynge ffrabrace de-
 partid whan he was taken / and that forest endured to the playne of
 16 Tapyr / that Olyuer, fferauntes brother, had yn gouernaunce. Now
 ar thies ij. knyghtes londid, and made their praiers to almyghti god
 to be their guyde, and conduyte hem from alle them that wold hurte
 them / then they wilke forth thorough the forest til it was day / &
 20 when it was day, they perceyued a grete hy wey, that was moche
 vsyd & betyn with horsis / it was a wey that went to a Toure of
 kyng ffrabrace / & assone as they might / they leste² this hy wey /
 and toke a more wilde wey in-to the foreste / alwey costeyng by
 24 the same wey, to the entent to mete with some laborer that might
 auertise them where they were / so long they went til they came
 out of the forest / and were almost at the Towne of ffounde / where They come
near Fondé,
 a grete garison was of the Turkes / and they dred to come yn any
 28 tounne til they knewe more / and withdrewe them ayen in-to the
 forest / they had gone but a while, but they mette an olde woman / and meet an
old woman,
 that bare a fagot on hir hede of stikkess, that she hadde gedird yn
 the wode / and whan she perceyued thies knyghtes, she knewe
 32 anon be their abilment that they were not of the turkes, & she
 dred hir moche, & seide vnto them in such langage as they might
 wele vnderstonde / "my lordes, preised be ihesu criste / that y
 haue founde you here, for y se wele ye be cristen / & forsothe so am who pretends
to be a Chris-
tian.
 36 I / and for that y wote not that ye knowe this contre / y wol aduise
 you to be ware / for on that honde is a grete garison of the Turkeys
 folkes." and this seide she, for she thought they had sene the
 place, by cause they sholde haue the more alliaunce yn hir / when

² ? for *left*.

The old woman tells the spies that a Sicilian town is but 4 miles off.

[1 leaf 34]

As soon as they leave her, she runs to the garrison,

and tells the Turkish Captain about the Scotch spies.

He sends two parties of his men to catch them.

The Scotch spies get farther into the wood.

the knyghtes herde her speke / they wende wele she seide trouthe,
and came the more out of the wode to speke more to hir / and
askid whiche was the nexte place that hilde of the kynge of Sizile /
she seide it was but .iiij. myle thens / and that a knyght had it in 4
gonernaunce, that was called Olyuer, whiche was Brother vnto the
Seneshall of Sizile; & she seide that but a litil while syne / the
Soudans brothir, kynge ffrabrace, was taken prisoner before the
same place / the ij. knyghtes were ioifult of thies ¹tidynges, & 8
praiede the woman that she wold bringe hem thider / she made
semblaunt of haltyng, as she might not wele go / for there was no
thinge she drede more than to come yn to that place / for she was
knownen ther for the worste & the moost vntrewe that yn hir tyme 12
lyued / then asked they hir, what wey they myght holde / and she
tolde hem the trouthe, & shewed hem whiche wey they sholde
take / and that shold not faile them til they came withyn a bow-
shot of the place / than bitoke they hir vnto god / and helde forth 16
that wey aswele as they might. & whan they were out of hir
sight / she leide doune hir fagot / and ranne yn suche wise toward
the garison of the turkes, that she semed not lame / for vnnethe an
horse might ouirtake hir; so fast she ranne / that by than she 20
came to the place, she might vnnethe speke / and whan she was
brethed, she called the Captayne & tolde him all that she had
founde, & hou she thought they were not of the Reaume of Sizile;
& hou she had counseiled them / for she dempte they were of the 24
cristen armee / that is now come, "and if ye wille, they may not
escape you, for y shall brynge you where y lefte hem" / whan the
Captayne herde this olde woman / he callid his folkes, & made hir
to reherce the tale ayen before them; & so she did, & seide verily 28
they had no horses, but wente a fote, & drewe toward Olyuers
place / wherto they might not come but by ij. passages / thenne
apointed he xx^{ti} of the garisone to go forth in ij. partes to the two
passages that they thought thies ij. knyghtes sholde passe by / and 32
sent forth othir .x. with this olde woman, to wite if they might
fynde them nere ther she lefte them / Thies ij. cristen knyghtes,
that sawe this olde woman renne thus whan she was departed fro
them / and that she was not lame as she had seide / knewe fult wele 36
what hir entent was / & wherfore she ranne so fast toward the
Sarasyns / wherfore, as wise knyghtes of warre, they drewe them
ferther yn-to the wode / yn-to the thlikkest therof / costeyng alwey as
the woman had taught them / so that they came neither yn hy wey 40

nor path / but costeyde forth as streight as they coude, towardes the
 place / And for the turkes, that y haue tolde you rode to the ij.
 passagis / they toke no grete hede to the reporte of this olde
 4 woman / but seide amonges them, ¹“oure Captayne is wele occupied [1 ff. 34, bk.]
 to geue any credence to the seying of this olde woman / that is wors
 than the blak deuelt of helle; it may as wele be that she doth this
 for the harme of vs, as for the hurte of othir / it is not good to
 8 trust to moche yn hir sorowe / haue he that hastith hym our faste
 for her wordes / it is goode we auise vs wele a-fore / for Olyuers
 folkes be men of grete vertu and worthynesse / and if we approche
 their place, y suppose we shall not retourne without debate” / with
 12 suche wordes rode they forth al easely, so longe til one of the x.
 that were to-gedir, perceyued the ij. knyghtes comyng out of the
 wode, & toke the wey to Olyuers place / whiche was not fer fro
 them. & when the turkes perceyued hem, they spored aftir them
 16 in aH that they myght / the two knyghtes vndirstode wele that they
 were enemys, & fled toward the ffortresse / but they were so nere
 them / that they ouirtoke them withyn lesse than a bow-shotte to the
 tounne & ffortresse / & whan they sawe they might no farther, they
 20 put on their helmys / and aredied hem to their defence, & made a
 syne to them of the place for helpe, & set them self ayenst a tre,
 & defendid them ayenst aH .x. The wacche of the place, that sawe
 wele aH this, sende worde to Olyuer herof in aH haste, whiche
 24 came vp anone on the wallis, & sawe wele alle the feeldes aboute /
 that there was no moo but they, & that they were so nere his place /
 wherfore he had no drede to make his folkes issu out on them / &
 anone they came to the socours of thies ij. knyghtes, that wele and
 28 manfully faught / & be than had slayne ij. or iij. turkes / & made
 suche way aboute them / that their enemyes durst not wele approche
 them. the turkes perceyued þe comyng-out of þem of the place,
 and durst not abide them / but anon fled streight toward the wode,
 32 but ther was noon that folowed hem / for assone as Olyuers folkes
 came to the ij. knyghtes, they taryed stille with them / and brought
 them yn-to the tounne to their maister, that resceyued them with
 grete ioie whan he knewe what folkes they were / and askid
 36 them of their tidynge / whan the knyghtes sawe Olyuere, they
 thankid god of his grace / that had brought them yn-to his handes;
 and than they tolde him aH the pitous & sorowfull auenture that
 was falle vnto the cristen the day before their departyng / the dis-
 40 comfort of Dauid, the kynge of Scottes sone / & of alle the Prynces

The old
woman's
report is
pooh-poohd.

The 2 Scotch
Knights are
attackt by
Turks.

Oliver sends
his men to
succour the
2 Scotch
Knights,

who are then
brought safe
to the fort-
ress.

[1 leaf 35] of ffrauce, Englonde and Scotland, that were there / & ¹hou they wist not where they were / nor herde no worde fro the kyng of Sizile, wherof they thought grete meruaile / seying that he was assertayned of their comyng / of tyme & houre of their departyng / 4 and neuir had sente one only man vnto them / wherfore they toke grete displeasir / and were gretly annoied towardes him, & had sente them / vpon their retourne *withyn* xv. Dayes / or ellis to go their wey / and tary no lenger / Olyuer excused the kyng as moche 8 as he might / for he sawe wele it was nede / & that the cristen had cause of displeasir / So made he the knyghtes *all* the chere that he coude, & promysed to conduyte them to the kyng of Sizile, that was but ij. dayes iournay thens, of whiche kyng we wol speke 12 now, for we haue lefte of hym a grete while.

The Scotch, &c., are angry at the King of Sicily's not sending to them.

The King of Sicily

The kyng of Sizile, knowyng verily the Armee made by the iij. kynges, assembled the thre estates of his lond, and helde a grete counseilt, to take aduise hou he might conduyte & gouerne him, the ceason he abode the comyng of the cristen armee / eueri man counseiled hym to reise alle the power of his lond, a litle bifore suche tyme as the cristen armee shold arryue / accordyng to this auisse he did / and sent for alle maner abile men 20 of warre / & anon without any delay they came vnto him / arraied and accompanied as wele as they might / thenne shewed he vnto them / the hope & comfort that he had, to haue socour of the cristen men / and the kyng was then wele accompanied aftir the 24 pouerte of his Reaume / and the grete losse that had fallyn thereto / & for they of the reaume had moche leuer dye / than to contynue yn suche case as they had bene a grete while / for this cause came alle maner of folkes / eueri man for his parte aswele abiled and 28

and the King of Hungary and his,

accompanied as they might / In like wise the kyng of Hungry, that ioyned to the reaume of Sizile, hadde arriedied him & alle his power, to mete with the cristen men at their londyng / accompanied with the kyng of Sizile, trustyng at that day to se the warres 32 endid / Thus the kyng of Hungry, wele acompained, abode eueri day to here tidynges of the cristen / but noon he herd / whiche was a grete defeaute yn alle partyes / For lakke of sendyng eche of them to othir, grete harme befille, wherof was grete pite. The kyng of 36 Sizile, abidyng tidynges, was asserteyned by his Capteynes that the Soudan had assembled alle his people, ²as they vndirstode by suche of his folkes as were taken prisoners / and that he purposed to encountre the cristen armee, whiche was ny the costes, as he vndir- 40

assemble to meet the Expedition from Scotland, &c.

[2 lf. 35, 1b.]

stode. The kyng, knowyng for certayn thies tidynges from many
 places, toke the felde with alle his folkes, a thre leegis from the
 Soudan on that on side of hym / but his puissaunce was not to
 4 dele with the Soudan and his hoste / & than toke he counseill
 what was to be done yn this matier; and they auised him to ley
 seege to a place that was named fosses, whiche was but iiij. myle
 fro the porte where-as the turke lay. This sholde be but for a
 8 maner to holde his peple to-gedir til the londyng of the cristen
 armee / & to thentent to cause the Soudan drawe thiderwarde til
 the cristen might londe / for he entendid to hoolde no seege ther / for
 and the Soudan came / he wolde withdrawe him / for he was not
 12 able to dele with him / thus was the conclusion taken / and as yn
 maner of a seege, loggid him and his folkes bfore the place, where
 he was the same tyme that the ij. knyghtes came to Olyuer, whan
 he promysed them to conduyte hem to the kyng in ij. dayes.
 16 ¶ On the morowe full erly, whan the ij. knyghtes were wele restid
 at their ease, Olyuere puruaide for them .ij. good horsis / & conueid
 them so wele that he brought them to the kyng / and with the
 lesse payne he might do so, for alle the hethen men were with the
 20 Soudan / saue only they of the garisons, whiche were not right wele
 furnyssht with folke, as it shewed wele by the place that the kyng
 of Sizile lay bfore / thus as the ij. knyghtes and their gnydes
 rode / they questioned of the kyng of Sizile & his puissaunce / and
 24 Olyuers folkes tolde hem the grete paynes, hardnesse, mysery, &
 pouerte, this pore Reaume had endured / and than they tolde hem /
 hou, bi-fore the comyng of the cristen armee / a man like an Aungel
 yn beaute, to seynt George in worthynesse, was come vnto them, &
 28 sith hys comyng, they had neuir but good auenture / and alle their
 dedes & emprises were come to good conclusion / and tolde them
 of the ij. first good auentures that felt sodeynly at his first comyng,
 and tolde alt the maner hou they fell / and that sith his comyng,
 32 one Sizilion was worth vj. turkes, and byfore, vj. of them were not
 worthe one turke / and that now the turkes might not endure
 ayenst them / of thies tidynges were the ij. knyghtes wele com-
 forted / and desired no more of god, ¹but that their company were
 36 ones assembled with the kyng of Sizile / And for to knowe more
 of this yong man that was newe come in-to Sizile / they asked his
 name / “for sothe,” seide their guyde, “whan he came hider, his
 name was Le Desperneu; but for that eneri man hath sene yn him
 40 so moche wele & noblesse / the ladies of the courte haue named him

While wait-
 ing, the
 Sicilians and
 Hungarians
 besiege
 Fosses.

Oliver brings
 the 2 Scotch
 Knights to
 the King of
 Sicily,

and they are
 told of the
 wonderfull
 acts of Prince
 Philip.

[1 leaf 36]

The 2 Scotch
Knights

join in the
assault on
Fosses.

They see
Prince Philip
fighting alone
in a tower,

[¹ If. 36, bk.]

and go to his
help.

Le Surnome ; for they sawe him yn no thinge dispurueid that longid
to honour / thus now his name is Surnome. And if ye wilt knowe
him, it nedith not to desire any man to shewe him you, but
beholde the moost faire and amyable, and the moost likly of the 4
kynges armee / and that is he, and by this ye may lightly knowe
hym" / The ij. knyghtes of Scotland rode forth aH ioiffully, hering
thies tidynges, & had grete meruaile that yn the persone of one
man might be so grete cause of preise, desiryng moche to se him / 8
so longe they rode, that they approched the kynge of Siziles hoste /
and at their welcomyng, there was right a grete assaute at the place /
and they alight as folke of right high corage, and went streight to
the saute / & fonde ther many pavis throwen to the erthe / and eche 12
of them toke one, & went to the wallis, beholdyng who did best /
& they sawe, by force of defense, that the saute began to waxe lesse /
& many folkes to withdrawe them / for there were many of the
cristen woundid & sore hurte / but at the laste, they sawe at o toure 16
one of the kynge of Siziles parte that valiauntly fought, and for no
thing wolde descende, but rather was maister of that toure / but he
had noon erthly helpe / wherfore he made a syue to his company
that they sholde retourne / hou-be-it ther were fult fewe pat drewe 20
thiderward / for euery man helde hym vtirly destroyed with-oute
remedy. men might se wele a-fer that he was sore assailed / but
meruailously he defendid him / so that noon durst abide a stroke
of his hande. he was so hy a-lofte that nedid to drede, neither gonne 24
shot, ne stone cast / nor no hurt they might do him, saue only with
strokes / and the turkes dred his strokes so moche, that they durst
not abide him ; thus, as half taken, was he vpon this toure, & sy hym
self at a mischief / wherfore he made synes to the people, geuyng 28
them corage to come ageyn / thies ij. forsaide knyghtes of Scotland
had be their but a while, when they herd cry, " Le Surnome is lost /
but if he haue socour / whiche sholde be the grettist hurt that euir
befelt to the reaume of Sizile ;" & anon they knewe ¹wele that it 32
was the same valiaunt squyer of whom they haue herde speke,
whiche stode yn auenture for lakke of socour. than toke they ij. a
laddir, and drew them toward the toure / anon aftir them came
many moo folkes, but they were the first, be a good while, that went 36
vpon the laddir / the saute began on alle parties more huger and
more sore than it had ben bifore / thies ij. knyghtes of Scotland
did aH their payne to come vp / & to make them to be knownen of
Surnome, as wele as of them of the hoste. wherto they did aH the 40

diligence that any noble men might do / & many tymes were put
doun of the ladders / & many tymes remounted ayen. Surnome, Prince Philip
seyng the good wille of them, thought, with the helpe of god, to
4 make them better wey / & so betoke him-self to god & blessid him /
& auanced hym-self amonge the turkes that were on the walles
a-boute the toure, delyng them suche lyuerey, that many he slewe /
and the remenaunt fled bifore hym / and so made he the two and the two
Scotch
Knights
drive the
Turks from
the walls;
8 knyghtes of Scotland, and many othir, to come vp on the walles /
the turkes drewe them to the market place, sore discomfit. the
kyng & his folkes entred yn-to the toune by the gates that were
opynd vnto them by them that had wonne the wallis. the defence
12 that the turkes made yn the market place ayenst the kynges folkes
auailed not; for, with the helpe of Le Surnome, alle were slayne / and Fosses
is won.
thus was the towne wonne without any grete losse or damage to the
cristen men / and it was bothe faire & stronge. Thies tidinges came
16 anon to knowlage of the Soudan / wherof he was right sorowfuH,
& knewe wele ther was to hym a right grete losse / & impossible to
him to recouer so many good men as he had slayn there. And
thies ij. knyghtes of Scotland were gretly ameruailed of The 2 Scotch
Knights
wonder at
Prince
Philip's
prowess. *pat* they
20 had sene that day, yn the persone of Surnome, more than they had
herd sey / then desired they moche to accomplissh theire charge
that they had to the kyng / and also to se Le Surnome vnarmed,
and that *pey* might be aqueynted with hym / assone as they myght,
24 they founde vp them that had conduyte them, whiche they sente
to the kyng / to certifie him that ij. of the *seruauntes* of Dauyd of
Scotland were come to him / fro the saide Dauyd, desiryng moche to
speke with the kyng / seyng that hir message was hasty. The
28 kyng, hou-be-it that his folkes were yet alle out of aray, & that he
wist not where noon of his coun'seill were logged, yn asmoche as [1 leaf 37]
the towne was newly woune / wherfore euery man was loggid with-
out an herbeieur, he sent them worde that withyn ij. houres he wold
32 sende for them / and commaunded them that had conduyte them, to
holde hem company vnto that tyme / and that they shold put them
yn deuoir to do them all the chere and ease they coude / The
kyng of Sizile, aftir that he was wele loggid, & his folkes, and
36 made gret slaughter, & wanne grete good, he made to seeke where
they of his counseill were logged, & sent for them to come to hym;
and than sent he for the knyghtes of Scotland / that, as ye may wele
thinke, had not chaungid their abilementes / for their somers were
40 not ther / they came to the kyng, their visages grete and swolne of

They are
sent for by
the King of
Sicily.

The 2 Scotch
Knights tell
the King of
Sicily

that the Ex-
pedition of
his Allies
have waited
at Gaeta,

and not had
one message
from him,

so that the
flower of
their army
has perisht.
[1 ff. 37, bk.]

He must
therefore
send to them
soon.

the strokes that they had resceyued, & salued him right honorably,
as knyghtes of honour that had be right wele acostomed to do suche
thinges / yeldyng thanks to god of the grete and good fortune / that
he had that day / geuyng hym a grete commendacion and preise / 4
seyng that the place that he had wonne at this tyme, was not con-
querable without the grete grace of god, and worthinesse of his
persone & of his noble chyualrie / aftir this, fro Dauid of Scotland,
the prynces & lordes of the cristen Armee þat at that tyme were 8
yn the see bfore the port of Gaiette / made they semblable recom-
mendacion, seyng to the kynge / that for to do seruyse to Ihesu
criste / to hym, & also to his Reaume, this grete and mighti armee
was sent fro the iij. kynges, of ffraunce, of Englund & Scotlande, of 12
the whiche Armee, Dauid, the kynge of Scottes eldest sone, is chief /
and he and alle the prynces and Barons of his company meruaile,
yn-asmoche as ye were assertayned of the Armee by their propre
messangers / and of the day of their departyng / and yit haue they 16
not one only messenger fro you / nor your auertisement hou they
shold be demeaned, nor haue not yn their company one man of
this Reaume ; whiche thinge gretly abasshith them / that so mighti
a kynge, so porely hath condite so grete an acte / wherethorugh hath 20
folowed moche harme & shame to the cristen men / And there they
tolde of the grete ynfortune that felle to the Armee the day bfore
their departyng / and enformed the kynge that the flour of chiuale
of the cristen armee was fult ny lost that day, ¹and so many of them 24
were slayne / that it was grete pite to reherce : this sore annoied
them, and so ought it to the kynge yn whos seruice they came /
seyng ferther, that if they had not right sone tidynges from the
kyng, that it was not possible for them to abide there / for this 28
infortunat day caused grete displeasir amonges them / so þat
Dauid had right grete payne to kepe them stille / for whiche cause
they fult humbly requyred the kynge to be hastily spedde, for such
was their charge. The kyng of Sizile, heryng thies wordes & 32
tidynges that the ij. knyghtes had tolde him, hou-be-it this day had
be right ioifult to hym of the takyng of this stronge towne / yit
was he sore troubled yn his corage, & seide / “ they shold be answerd
& delyuerd the nexte morowe,” for he desired moche to se this hy 36
and noble company / to the whiche he was as moche beholden as he
might be / “ and y beleue verily that ther is the flour & choice of
chinalrie / for yn you, faire lordes, hath be shewed this day grete
noblesse / and if alle your company be such / it may be called the 40

- flour of chiularie of the worlde / for ye haue made you more to be
 knowen this day in this company, bothe of the worthy men and of
 cowardes / than they that haue ben moche lenger here / y leue full
 4 wele your visages be vnknowen to cowardes, but the abilementes of
 your bakkes might wele y-nough be knowen of alle them that were
 behinde you. *with* them y was / & therfore y knowe your abilement
 wele / y leue / he that was yn the toure knowe your visages bettir
 8 than y do / for ye shewed them vnto him / that at that tyme had
 ful grete nede of socours." The knyghtes thanked the kyng fult
 humbly, that for so litle deserte yaued them so grete honour, &
 seide / "that he allone that was yn the toure, to their conceite was
 12 cause of the good auenture that day; & it semed them / that he
 allone suffised y-nough for half them that were *with-yn*, for ther
 was noon that durste abide his strokes." As they were yn this
 talkyng, fieraunt the Scenshall, & Surnome his seruauant came yn
 16 to þe kyng / & assone as þe ij. Scottyshe knyghtes sawe Le Sur-
 nome come yn / by the report þat they had of them þat had con-
 duyte them / þey wist for trouthe it was þe same / for, so goodly a
 man ne saw þey neuir. & þan thought þey þat it was he þat
 20 was on þe toure, & for the vois that þey had herde amonges the
 people that cried "helpe Surnome þat is on þe toure" / þey
 thought certeynly þat the name that the ¹Ladies had geuyn hym, [1 leaf 38]
 was more propre for hym than the first name / for god and nature
 24 had highly prouaiede for him. Assone as the kyng sawe hym yn
 the Chamibre, he came to hym / & embraced hym / & seide to the
 knyghtes of Scotland, "knowe ye this man?" / that one answered
 anone & seide / "for sothe, *sir*, yea; and y sey for trouthe that he
 28 is Le nonmpareil that euir y sawe or herde speke of. and god of his
 grace long contynue hym, for by the name that remneth on hym
 now he is vnarmed, we knowe hym; and by his dedes and prowesse
 whan he was armed to-day, we iuged it shold be he also / and I wote
 32 wele, whan our maister, David of Scotland, shalt here that we haue
 sene yn hym, he shall put hym yn grete payne to haue his
 acqueyntaunce / for we knowe certaynly that the gretest desire that
 he hath, is / to haue acqueyntaunce *with* Valiaunt folkes / and knowe
 36 wele that his body, his power, and his goodes shalbe as redy this
 gentilmannys, as his oune." Le Surnome thanked them alle shame-
 fastly of the honour that they gaue hym / prayng god that the
 hundreth part of this that they seide, might be yn hym / for he
 40 knewe full wele that this preise came of their goodnesse / for an ill

The King of
Sicily praises
the 2 Scotch
Knights.

They praise
Prince Philip.

who is intro-
duced to
them by the
King.
They call
him the
Nonpareil.

He thanks
them.

Prince Philip
lauds the 2
Scotch
Knights.

hert deyneth not to preye anothir. "I sey this, for that this day, ye that were vnknowen, haue made to be knowyn yn eche of you, yn one houre / more than this is yn any of this company; and for sothe y haue to day knowen you more be sight than any man yn 4 this hoste / and the kynge that here is / ought to thanke god & you of his good auenture." Yf y shold reherce the wordes of honoure that were bitwene Le Surnome & them, y sholde haue to moche to do / but e[ue]richon to his power honoured his party. ¶ Aftir this 8 talkyng, the kynge made to conduyte the scottissh knyghtes to their loggyng, & commaundid them to be honourably *serued*, and wente him self to his counseilt to wite hou he shold do to the cristen Armee / & there were they longe debatyng this matier / And at last 12 they were of acorde to sende notable folkes to Dauyd of Scotland, to the prynces & Barons of his company / desiryng them that they shold departe fro thens, & drawe to a-nothir porte, that was, Le 16 toure de gretuz / and there esily & *without* any perile they might londe. albe-it that the port was som what more daungerous, yit were it not so grete auenture for them the londyng ther / and they

The King of
Sicily's
Council ad-
vise their
Allies to land
at *Le toure
de Gretuz*.

[1 lf. 38, bk.]

thought, if the cristen Armee were 1 onys Londid, sone aftir the turkes sholde haue more than y-nough to do. The knyghtes that 20 sholde do this message, were ordeyned that night, whiche on the morowe by tymes entreprised the viage *with* right good wilt. The Scottissh knyghtes were sent for / and the kynge of Sizile seide vnto theym yn this wise / "my frendes, and right wise Valiaunt 24 knyghtes! y haue herde the credence that by you was sent me fro my good cosyn, Dauyd of Scotland / and my good frendes, alle othir princes and lordes ther / yn the whiche ye haue right notably declared the mysery that they haue suffred for the honour of oure 28 blissed creatore / and for the socours of this pore and desolat Reaume / whiche is to me right soroufult to here rehersid. and for to make myn excuse, y knewe verily by my folkes that y had sent to the iij. kynges, ther answeire / and what tyme the Armee shold 32 departe / but neuir sith, by them nor noon of them, had y neuir tidynges, by letteres nor othirwise / and for that ye knowe vele / the thynges chaunge often yn so hy matiers / y wist not what to thinke, for y supposed verily to be assertayned fro them of their comyng / 36 which, and y had knowen it, had not be conduyte as it is now / but tho thinges that god wolt haue suffred, may not now be amendid / therfore remytte we alle thinge to the wilt of god / And to go to the conclusion of the surplus of this matier, to puruey the best that 40

The King
explains to
the 2 Scotch
Knights

that their
Generals
never told
him that
their Expe-
dition had
started.

- may be don, y haue ordeyned iiij. knyghtes of my folkes, that knowe best the conduyte of thies marches / and they shal put them in deuoir to brynge you ayen to your maister / & declare vnto hym
- 4 suche conclusions as y haue taken with my counsell / whiche to their power they shal helpe to execute / and shall not departe fro hym til he and y be to-gedre ; & so ye may puruay to departe whan it pleasith you / and they shaft be redy to accompanye you " / whan
- 8 the scottish knyghtes had herd the kynge, they were right wele content of his Answere, and toke their leue of the kynge / whiche gaue eche of them a courser, and othir grete giftes ; and thus they departed / and iiij. knyghtes of Sizile with them, whiche conduyte
- 12 them so wele, that they brought them to their maister ij. dayes to the Allies. bifore the terme that he had set to his seruantes. and at their comyng, it is no question if ther were ioie thorough all the company, for they wende neuir to haue sene the houre of their retourne. And
- 16 after their comyng was knowen, ¹and that they had brought iiij. knyghtes of Sizile with theym, the prees was grete a-boute theym / as wele of the frendes of thies ij. knyghtes, as othir that helde them half lost / & were right ioifull that they had accomplisshed their
- 20 charge, to their grete honour. & eueri man desired to knowe of their tidynges ; but, as good & right wise knyghtes, they tolde nothings til they had spoken with their maister / and assone as they might, they went vnto hym, & lefte the knyghtes of Sizile accompanied
- 24 with many a noble man / til tyme they knewe the pleasir of their maister / what tyme they shold bring the knyghtes of Sizile vnto hym.

4 Sicilian
Knights
guide the 2
Scotch ones
back

[1 leaf 39]

They are
joyfully
welcomed,

- And aftir their comyng vnto hym / there had they a lawde,
- 28 honour & thanke that they so valiauntly had accomplisshd the charge he had geuyn them. than tolde they hym hou they had spedde, and that iiij. knyghtes of Sizile were come with them to enforme hym of all the kynges entent / and to abide stille with hym til their
- 32 londyng. Of thies tidynges was Dauid right glad, and alle they in his company / and anoon sende forth ayen thies .ij. knyghtes, with many othir notable men in their company, to seeche them of Sizile. And anoon they came ayen / and brought thies iiij. knyghtes with
- 36 them, whiche full humbly salued Dauid & alle the lordes of his company / yn recommendyng the kynge, their maister, to them, & to alle the noble chynalrie & company that was yn this armee / they were reseeyued right ioifully of Dauid, and of all the lordes that
- 40 were present / they performed their charge, so as ye haue herde

The Sicilian
Knights
are intro-
duced to
Prince David.

before, that the kynge gaue them at their departyng / & offred them self to the accomplishment therof / and to helpe to conduyte them without departyng fro them / til the kynge & they were mette with the grace of god / Aftir their credence herd / they were ledde to an othir faire vesseſſe, wele accompanied with knyghtes & squiers. and the counsell abode stille to-gedir, to take aduise vpon this message, what was to be done / and so they concludde. In-asmoche as the kynge of Sizile had sente thies knyghtes to conduyte them / that on the morowe alle the maisters shold be warnyde to aredye them forward, and on the next day be-tymes to put them yn the garde & conduyte of thies knyghtes of Sizile that the kynge had sente them / Alas, fortune! whan a man weneth to be moost sure, than is he nere his daungere; for sone aftir this apointment and this grete ioie, there befelle suche infortune that it was grete Damage to aſſ cristendome, as ye shall anoon here / this counsell, takyn, the knyghtes of Sizile were sent for / and tolde them the conclusion that was taken amonge the lordes / wherof they were wele content, and thought the conclusion good. than euery man departed, and brought the knyghtes of Sizile to their loggyng, and did them aſſ the honour and chere that men myght do yn suche cas. Dauid made his knyghtes that he had sente yn-to Sizile, to suppe with hym that nyght, to telle hym and the Constable of ffrance, & the Admyraſſ of Englonde of their tidynge, bothe of their departyng & of their demeanyng, and of aſſ the manere of the contre / than the two knyghtes tolde hem suche tidynge as they knewe, and of the olde woman / yn what wise she wolde a betraide theym / and hou they escope, and were reskowed by ffrayntes brother / and hou he made them to be conduyte then in alle haste to the kynge of Sizile, whom they founde assautyng right a faire towne / & wanne it. than they tolde the noblesse of Surnome, and aſſ the honour they hadde herde of hym, and aſſ that they had sene hym do / & what honour he put them to bifore the kynge / and hou he was the moost anyable persone that euir they sawe, daies of their lif / and they wende that nature coude not, nor neuir sholde, make no suche / And so moche they seide of hym, that alle the lordes that were there / and alle othir, had grete mernaile; and if the knyghtes that tolde it had not ben of their age the moost renommed of sadnesse & trouthle yn the cristen Armee / they coude not hane bileued them / for suche worthynes, bounte, & beaute, semyd them ympossible to be yn one persone. Also the knyghtes seide of the kynge of Sizile moche

The Allies
resolve to
get ready
next day,

[1 lf. 39, bk.]

and start for
Sicily the
day after.

The 2 Scotch
Knights tell
the French
Constable
and English
Admiral
all their
adventures
in Sicily,

and the
noblesse
of Prince
Philip.

- honour / and tolde yn what maner he excused hym, wherof alle the lordes that were there thought them self culpable, seyyng, "verily that they did ille, *but* they had not sente one to hym before the
- 4 departyng of the armee fro Scotland, for to haue had som of his folkes to be conduyte by. Nowe was alle thinge yn suche cas that it was past remedy" / wherfore they praied god that the remenaunt of their viage might be ¹bettir conduyte, and more to their honour
- 8 and profite / Than tolde they hem that, "by the noblesse of Le Surnome / the hardynesse of alle them of Sizile was redoubled / for where .vj. of the Turkes haue put to discomfiture .xx^{ti}. Sezillions & moo / at this day it is the contrarie; for it faileth not, but vj.
- 12 Sizillions are worth xx^{ti} turkes / and they thynke verily / that, and they myght ones ioyne with the turkes, they sholde lightly wyne the our hand of them." The iiij. knyghtes of Sizile suppid yn a nother vesseH, rehersyng ther aH the wyunnyng of the towne, and
- 16 the manere of the ij. knyghtes / and howe they were knowen for their prowes; & reported grete honour of them / and seide vnto hem that accompanied them / "if alle ye be such as they .ij. are / I wote wele the turkes shalle not longe abide you." Of this tidynges were
- 20 alle they ioifulle that herde hem, and conde the ij. knyghtes right grete thanke, that so wele aquytte them / and so did they to the knyghtes of Sizile / that so honorably reported them. Aftir soper, eueri man drew hym to his loggyng / for to be vp on the morow
- 24 betymes, for to redye hem to departe the next day / thus eueri man went to his vesseH. Nowe I pray god conduyte them / for this nyght toward the point of day befelt them a meruailous harde fortune, as ye shalle here folowyng.
- 28 **B**etwene midnyght and the point of the day, grete wynde & tempest aros vpone the see, yn such wise that the shippes tomblod as they shold alle to-breke; and at the point of the day the tempest was grettir than bifore / and the waves came with such
- 32 violence, that eueri wawe came in-to the shippes, and our them an C. galons of water at ones / oure goode cristen men, seyng this huge tempest, feH on their knees with their handes ioyned toward the heuen / bisechyng god of mercy, reheryng vnto hym /
- 36 that they were departed out of their contre & possessions to do hym ²seruice, & had also forsaken fadir & modir, wif & childe, only for his seruice, bisechyng hym to geue hem that grace / that they might wele retourne ayen yn-to their contrees. At that tyme
- 40 was the noise so grete a-monge the Nauce, that the Soudan & alle his

The Allies confess that they ought to have ward the King of Sicily of their coming.

[¹ leaf 10]

The 4 Siellian Knights praise the 2 Scotch Knights.

A tremendous tempest rises.

The Allied fleet pray God for mercy.

[² ff. 40, bk.]

The hideous
tempest
makes the
Allied Fleet
cut their
cables.

Some ships
dash to-
gether.

Earl Douglas
laments the
danger.

The Prince's
ship runs
ashore, and
breaks up.

[2 leaf 41]

Prince David
gets to land,
and is attackt
by Turks.

company were full ioifult / for they might wele here them / and a
nyle beyonde that he was. It is to thiuke, that of this grete and
hidious tempest they were gretely reioised / trustyng it sholde do
grete hurt to the cristen armee / and so it did / for this tempest 4
contynued til the sonne risyng / and brought them to suche necessite
that they cutte their cables & drew vp their sailes, and put them
alle in the auenture of god / many shippes were dryuen forth with
the wynde / some caste hider and thider with the wa[w]es / that had 8
neither saile ne maste / nor noman so hardy that durst conduyte
the steerne; som of the shippes russet to-gedir, that they alle to-
brake; & some drawe forth, waityng but dethe. The Erle douglas,
that was in Dauid vesselt, made the moost pitous compleyntes that 12
any man might make; for he sawe wele by the shippes that
perished & drowned afore hym / and also by othir that he sawe
dryue forth with the wynde, som without either saile or maste /
that all was yn auenture to be drowned / than seide he thus / that 16
alle might here that were aboute hym / "A! ffortune male-curus / I
thought me highly honoured to haue in my conduyte the eldest
sone of my souerayn lorde, yn so grete a seruice as the seruice of
god / nowe se I wele, that to god pleasith neither his seruice nor 20
myn / but rather we must dye / and ende oure lyues wrecchidly /
and of þat dethe þat yn this world y moost dredde. A! my
creatour! I pray the resceyue the sowles of my maister and of vs
alle yn this company, yn-to thy glorie / and knowe wele, that for the¹ 24
we are in this cas, and for doying vnto the, seruice / we are come to
oure dethe" / Such wordes and compleintes made the Erle Douglas,
that was a full wise and a worthy knyght / and yit was that vessel
stille at ancre, and so was noon of the company but they / they 28
thought with euery wawe the vesselt shold alt to-breke / "& than,"
seide the maryners, "it behoueth to put vs in the auenture of god."
the yonge Dauyd, seying this dolorous fortune, was agreable to cutte
the cables / and anone as they were cutte, the vesselt smote a londe 32
streight before the Soudan / and brake all on peces / and so ther
escape noon, but alle were drowned saue Dauyd and Erle douglas,
and vj. othir persones, that with helpe of boordes droof ²to Loude,
whiche was ther ny / then had the Turke of his cruelte com- 36
maundid, that if any of fortune came a-lyue to londe / that they
sholde sle them without raunsome / and whane his people sawe this
yonge Dauyd, they came to sle hym / and that, sawe the Erle

¹ the = thi

- Douglas, and sterte bfore hym / to diffende hym / but his helpe
auailed not / for anon he was slayne at his maisters fete / and so
were alle they that came with hym / saue hym self / and he, seyng
4 hym in this daunger, withdrew hym, and set his bakke ayenst a
litle rokke was ther / trustyng to diffende his lif / and that it shold
be dere boughte to som of them that wolde sle hym / & than he
thought his dethe sholde be the more easy / and that eueri noble
8 man of honour wolde haue the more pyte of his dethe / so put he
hym vttyrly yn the handes of god / and leyde so aboute hym that
noman durst approche hym / for he slewe of them many. The
Soudan, that saw the armes that he did / yn his hert had grete
12 despitte / and spake a-lowde / "what! shaft o. cristen man discom-
fort this armee / if there were any noble man amounges you, he shold
endure but litle while" / he had a sone of the age of xxⁱⁱ or .xxiiiijⁱⁱ
yere, that behelde all this, & had grete pite of this yonge lorde of
16 Scotland, that so manly diffendid hym / and meued with suche
pite / ayenst the wylt of his fadir, he went to hym, brekyng the
prees / & made eueri man to withdrawe fro hym / and sithe seide
vnto hym / "my frende, thou seest clerely that thy strength may
20 not auaille the / & that thou stryuest and feightist without reason /
but yelde the to me with thy fre wille / and I shaft brynge the to
the Soudan, and pray hym for the." whan pore David herd thies
wordes, he was not of a grete while so glad as aftir the auenture
24 that god had sent hym / for he knewe wele that he had spake to
hym / was a lorde of grete estate / bothe by his aray / and by the
obeisance that alle men did vnto hym / and thus he answerd hym,
"My Lorde, ye se yn what eas y am / if I feight in diffendyng my
28 lif, noman blame me, for I haue sene your folkes take litle pite on
any of vs / alas! what may vj. pore persones do ayenst alle your
company, whiche were fallen yn your mercy / & humbly asked
your grace & mercy / and, sauf I. allone, they are alle slayne / many
32 folkes shalle calle this rather rigour & tyranny than any honour /
but of the offere that ye haue made me, right humbly, my lorde, I
thanke you / and I. yelde me to you / here is my swerde" / whiche
he delyuered hym / & seide, "In you is my lif and dethe, whiche,
36 I had not be the trust of youre assuraunce, y wolde a done my
peyne a litle lenger to diffende / so demeane ye me as it pleasith
you." And this yonge sone of the Soudone, named Orcays, assured
hym on his feith. and aftir that, was noon so hardy that durst
40 approche hym / thus was yonge Dauid takyn / & brought by

Prince David
defends him-
self,

and kills
many Turks.

The Sultan's
son, Prince
Orcays, pities
Prince David,

who gives up
his sword to
him.

[1 ff. 41, bk.]

The Sultan
wants to
kill Prince
David;

but his son
Orcays tells
his Father

that he will
die with
David,

who yet says
he is ready to
die joyfully.

He prays God
to receive his
soul.

[1 leaf 42]

The Sultan
orders Prince
David to be
kept prisoner.

Orcays bifore his fader / whiche made hym take of his helme / and sawe hym, of visage and body, of right excellent beaute / and saide to his sone, “ye wol nedely take this man prisoner / but it is bettir lete hym dye than lyue, without he wol bileue as we do / for he is 4 meruailously shapen to do armes, as ye haue sene hym proued by experience / and if ye be so content / me thinketh best / that men delyuer the worlde of hym lightly” / this yonge Orcays, heryng his fadir, was yn grete sorow and displeasir / & thought yn him self 8 that he shold sle hym also with his prisoner / and seide vnto his fader. “My Lord, the first prisoner that euer was taken with my handes y haue brought bifore you; the payne that y had yn takyng hym was not grete / without any stroke he put his trust yn me / 12 where nomañ durst come ny hym / & leue not / that yn one man be the power to destroe this company / wherfore ye nede not to haue no drede of hym / but ye may do with hym & me your pleasir / for y thinke not he shañ die without me / seyng the feith that I haue 16 promysed hym; and if any othir than ye lay hand on hym, he may be sure to repente it, for y shañ diffende hym to my power while y haue any lif” / and thies wordes seide Orcays so vigorously, that his visage wex al rede. All this vndirstode wele, this yonge Dauid, 20 with visage assured / as he that abode the dethe / without hauyng any regarde to his lif, seide to the Soudan yn this wise / “Sir, y holde me wele ewred of the wordes I haue herde you sey of me / & be ye assured, yf y die, y shañ die with ioie to thynke for whos sake 24 it is / for of my lif y rekke fuñ litle / if it please my creatour, y haue lyued y-nough / sith this day y haue sene so many a notable man die befor me / and y haue no wiñ to leue their company / for y am wele assertayned that be this houre their dethe is to them right 28 ioifult / I am yolden to this lorde bifore you vpone his feith / y wote not who he is / but forthwith y aquyte hym therof, & pardone hym and you also my dethe / prayng to our lorde, at my dethe to resceyue my soule.” The Soudan, heryng his sone speke, seyng 32 hym vtterly wroth, had pite of him / and añ-be-it he was 1right hard / yn corage ayenst alle cristen / yet had he pite also of Dauid / that so hardyly spake, & with so stable manere, abidyng dethe with suche corage / that to beholde, he was añ recomforted / and so he 36 answerd his sone, not geuyng hym no surete of his prisoners lif / bade him lede his prisoner where he wolde, so he were kepte sure / “and y shañ take aduise here-on / and shañ speke with you / and y doute not, aftir ye haue herde me, ye shañ be content of that / that 40

I wol do" / Thus this Orcays sent forth his prisoner ; but for drede
 that men sholde do hym any hurte, he kepte hym all that nyght yn
 his chambre, without departyng fro hym, for he knewe the cruelte
 4 of his fadir such that, & he might gete him at large / he wolde
 make hym to be slayne / and thenne wolde he laugh ther-ate / as
 though a had made kyl a dog / or som othir vnthrifty beste / and
 for thies doutes kepte he contynuelly his prisoner with hym / and
 8 as a bridle is assottid on hir make / so was Orcays of Dauyd.
 ¶ Afir this grete tempest was thus befallen vnto the cristen
 Navee / ye may thinke welle / that the vessells helde not all one
 way / for som arryued by infortune amonges the sarasynes / wherof
 12 som were kepte as prisoners / and some were put to pore occupa-
 cions, as to kepe shepe & bestes / for they solde the cristene men as
 they wolde selle catelle / and they that had bought theym, bete
 theym euery day like dogges, and they did not wele that / that they
 16 had yn charge / the tothir vesselles to whiche god wold extende his
 grace / aryued / som yn ffrance, som yn Englund / som in Scot-
 land / many aryued yn othir cristen reaumes / wherby the sorow-
 fulle tidynges were sone spredde thorough-out alle cristendome / and
 20 sone came to the knowlage of the kynges of ffrance, of Englund
 and of Scottes / that were hugely sorowfulle of that ynfortune / and
 eche of theym made grete enquerre afir their frendes & sernautes /
 but noon ther was that conde assertayne theym what folkes were
 24 saued or loste / eueri man trusted his frende were sauf, their hertes
 desired it so moche. The kynge of ffrance vndirstode verily that
 the moost parte of his folkes shold retourne / so did the kynge of
 Englund and the kynge of Scottes / that euery day herkened for
 28 tidynges of his sone, þat he loued asmoche as any fadir might do
 his childe / and trusted moche yn the wisdam and conduyte of the
 goode Erle Douglas / that had the gouernaunce aboute hym / A
 grete while thought he that he herde no tidynges of them .ij., for
 32 ¹there were come many othir / & of the reaume of Scotland were
 not loste past .vj. shippes / the Erle Bussaunt was sauf, & many
 othir notable men of Scotland / the grete losse was in Dauyd
 vessell, for it is to thinke that yn his vessell was many a notable
 36 man. Of Englund came ageyn many / bothe the Admyraut / and
 the moost parte of the noble men that went forth, but som were
 loste. Of the reaume of ffrance came ageyn many / but the goode
 Constable abode / men wist not whedir he was drowned or takyne.
 40 ffor final conclusioun, eueri man of this thre reaumes trusted wele

The Turkish
 Prince
 Orcays is
 captivated
 with Prince
 David the
 Christian.

Some Chris-
 tians are
 sold like
 chattels and
 treated like
 dogs by the
 Turks.

The Kings
 of France,
 Englund, and
 Scotland
 grieve over
 the losses of
 their Expe-
 dition.

[¹ ff. 42, bk.]

that their frendes were sauf. Aftir the retourne of hem that were come ageyne, y can thinke the iiijth parte of this arme was myssed, of such as were takyn, & suche as were drowned / tho that the kyng of Sizile had sent to Dauyd were saued / as for the two 4 knyghtes that had been *with* the kyng in message / y wote ner whethir they were saued or not / for y fynde no more of theym.

The King of Sicily reproaches himself as partly the cause of his Allies' loss.

YE shalle retourne to the kyng of Sizile, that fulle sone was assertayned of this ynfortune, wherof he was so sorowfull 8 that noman might recomfort hym / and iuged him self yn party the cause of this auenture; &, as a man enraged *with* sorowe, cursed the houre of his birthe / & wissed hym ded / sith thorough his defaute & negligence, so many notable prynces & lordes were 12 perissshed and dede of so lamentable a dethe / and seide / "y wote wele / and y had aquytte me to them as y shold / they had bene a londe / & noon of all this ynfortune had happed; but wele y wote, the turkes shold sone a be destroyed / and this londe set yn a perfit 16 reste / But nowe sheweth wele god / that y am not to hym agreeable / and that I haue done some synne that displeasith hym" / ye may thinke that yif the kyng of Sizile had such wordes / that eche of the iij. kynges, [of] fraunce, Englund, & of Scotland were of 20 semblable condicioun, thynkyng yn hem self / that the seruise that they did to god was not to him agreeable / for by their owne corage they knewe wele they had done this seruise more for veynglory, and to haue a renome, than for the loue of god / and therfore they 24 thought the iugement of god, and his stroke, resonable / thus their owne conscience inged. The kyng of Scottes compleyned hym / "Alas! y haue sent my sone, for that the kynges of fraunce & of Englund put it on me / & for myn honoure y durst not refuse it / 28 and yf y had not dred shame, he had ben yit stille *with* ¹me / at his departyng y had suche sorowe that noman might comforte me / and for thies thinges, y wote wele y haue displeasid god / and haue not done as did Abraham by Isaac his sone / y offred not seruise to 32 god of my childe / but y offred to the worlde, & for drede to haue had shame / god that is iuste / and that knoweth the condicions of man and their thought, hath refused this seruise, as he did the sacrifice that Caym did / and he hath good right / but myn owne 36 sone, that with my trespas might no thyng do / wente *with* so grete corage & desire, that me semeth / god ought to haue pite on hym. As for my self, I crye god mercy / & besече hym to haue pite on my childe / where-som-euir he be" / and thus yn secrete 40

The Three Kings think this

Judgment of God deservd.

[¹ leaf 43]

The King of Scots says that God has refused the service of the Allies.

place the pore kynge of Scottes made his compleinte, wepyng alwey
 & prayng to oure lord for his sone / The kyng of Englund, on his
 party, remembred also / how longe he had taried to sende socour to
 4 the kynge of Sizile / and yit had noon sende hym, if he might by
 any meanes a left of / and so he sende more for drede of shame
 than for the loue of god / and yit he felte himself ferther culpable,
 for asmoche as he had leide the charge to the kynge of Scottes to
 8 sende forth his sone / whiche was so goodly a yong man / and now
 is lost thorough his counsell / and yit he did it to thentent but to
 cause the armee to breke / and for this / he thought wele god was
 displeased with hym / and of right hath refused his seruise. The
 12 kynge of fraunce had sent his armee yn the company of Dauyd / and the King
 alle to a nothir entente than the .ij. kynges did / for he dred, if he of France
 sent hem not forth, that god wolde be displeased with hym / for at reproach
 such tymes as his sone had often meued hym with the same, & he themselves
 as to the
 16 wold not encline to his request, god suffrid him to lese his sone / Sicilian Ex-
 whereof he toke suche sorowe that he neuir recouered to that he pedition.
 was a-fore / and therefore lest god wolde take vengeance on hym,
 & aftir his dethe vpon his reame, that was full like to be lefte
 20 withoute heire / he did to god his seruise / wherfore he knewe wele
 yn hym self / that he had done this seruise to god, more fore drede
 than for loue / and therefore he thought that god was not pleased.
 Thus thies .iiij. kynges that ye haue herde of, eche of theym leide
 24 grete charge to them self of the sorowfuH auenture. But ouir alle
 othir, the kynge of Scottes made grete sorowe, and alle his reame,
 for yonge Dauyd; and so did alle the .iiij. reames / for the grete
 28 to importable a losse. Thies ¹thre reames aforeseide / were yn
 compleyntes & wepyng, & in especiaH for their frendes, that were
 not retourned ayen yn-to their contrees / neuirtheles, eueri man
 trusted that they were aryued in some othir lande / or takyn
 32 prisoners / and that they shold here tidynges of them / and many
 contynued yn this hope duryng their lyues, & in especiaH women,
 suche as myssed their husbondes, that neuir sawe theym aftir / and
 some ther were / that in litle while were recomforted with the
 36 retourne of their frendes / the fortune of this world is not like to
 euery body / But nowe y shaft leue of this sorowe, that was made
 thorough all thies reames / & retourne to the kyng of Sizile, that,
 40 mesure / neuirles, he perceyued, as a wise Prynce, that no discomfort
 the King of
 But the King
 of France
 grieues most
 for the loss
 of his son.
 of Scotland
 grieues most
 for the loss
 of his son.
 of Sicily

tells his
Council

that his
father, the
King of
Spain, won't
help them;

but they must
take heart.

He will give
his all for his
folk.

[¹ leaf 44]

They say the
Sultan will
attack them
at once.

might remedy hym / wherupone he shewed his wisdom, and put aH
his trust yn god / and assembled his grete counsell, seyng vnto
them in this wise. ¶ “My frendes, eche of you is assertyned
of this pitous auenture that is befallen vnto oure socours / yn the 4
which were so many princes and Lordes, that came to vs from iij.
reaumes / þat most might helpe vs / and it is to suppose that of
them we gete no more helpe / and y holde this company, or the
most part therof, loste, whiche kan not be without grete hurte, 8
losse, & sorowe to the iij. kynges and reaumes / and therefore it
behoueth vs to take hede to oure self / I haue often sent vnto my
fadir, the kynge of Spayne, and we can haue no socour; thens this
reaume is yn grete auenture, but god of his grete mercy helpe / and 12
sith it is so / we hane the more nede diligently to beholde what is
to do / than euir we had / for oure hope of othir nowe is failed vs /
lete vs do oure self what we may / for othir comfort may we not
abide / My frendes, I pray eche of you to take good corage / & be 16
content to obeie and abide the wille of oure lorde / & to take suche
part yn pacience, as he wol sende / and y sey for me, that hane
more to lese than any of you / y shalt comfort me yn god, and yn
the helpe of you, my trewe frendes / and yn your good counsell, 20
whiche y wol vse, and be redy to auenture my body, my lif, & my
good amonges you, requiryng you alle, & eche of you, to yeue me
counsell, comfort and helpe / & to auise shortly what y haue to do.”
Thus the kynge of Sizile spake to his folkes, with teres trikelýng 24
downe oñ his visage, whiche caused alle them that herde hym to
haue grete ¹pite and wille to helpe to diffende his reaume. And
they Aunswerde hym: “sir, to holde longe counsell is not profit-
able, for it behoueth you shortly to conclude; for ye may thinke 28
wele that the Soudan is enhaunced yn suche pride by the destruc-
cion of thies cristene folkes, that hym thinketh the sonne and
the sterres shold honoure hym / and that no thinge sholde holde
party ayenst hym / wherfore it is to suppose that he wol come yn 32
aH haste vpone you / ye be not of might to abide hym, seyng their
corage is redoubled / & your folkes be amated and alle yn discomfort
for this pitous auenture / wherfore y kan not thinke be no meanes
how ye may abide hym / but me semeth it is best to take auise of 36
suche as pleaseth you / & that the matier be shortly concluded, for
the cas requireth it.” The kynge perceyued that the knightes seide
trouthe, & asked ferther this knyght was the first that spake, &
answerd without taryng, for him semed that it was tyme, and 40

seide yn this manere / " sir, the cause y presume to speke, is, for the
 matier requireth such haste ; neuirtheles, lete eueri man sey, in
 dischargyng of his honour & trouthe / the best auisse that he can /
 4 but me semeth / if the thurke knowe you here / he wol come to
 besege you ; and withoute any faile, if he haue good counsell, he
 wol do so / & if he so do / & ye abide him, ye haue no vitaille for
 your armee, wherfore ye may not longe holde party ayenst hym /
 8 & as for feightyng / y haue seide myn aduise / seying his folkes so
 moche yn comfort, & youres yn dispeire / But me thinketh that yn
 this towne, that is right stronge & wele furnyssshed with orden-
 aunce, ye may leue a ij. M^t of good men / and a good Captayne, or
 12 ij. of the moost notable of your armee / And your self, to-night or to
 morowe at the point of the day, to departe to Napolis, where-as the
 quene is, with alle the remenaunt of your company / whiche hath at
 this houre, y dare sey, right grete sorowe yn hir herte ; and if the
 16 turke came bfore hir, she is yit right feblly acompayned. and yf
 ye go thider, ye may so wele paruay you, & so wele furnysssh the
 towne with men, ordenaunce & vitaille, that if the turke come
 bfore you he shaH more lose than wyne / for the lenger he lith
 20 ther / the more shal he spende of his good and lese of his men, &
 shaH haue asmoch of youres at his goyng / as he had the first day
 he came. And nowe lete vs nomore trust on rescue / but put oure
 only truste yn god / and y trust he shaH helpe ¹ vs bettir than we [1 ff. 44, bk.]
 24 can thinke / a[n]d therfore lete not oure hertis faile vs for noon
 y[n]-fortune that is fallen yit / for he may socour vs whan it pleasit
 hym " / The knyght that spake thies wordes, was fferaunt the
 SenesshaH, that gladly was herkenyd of alle folkes / & gaue grete
 28 corage to eche of theym / Aftir thies wordes, the kynge askid alle the
 remenaunt of lordes, knyghtes and squyers, of their aduise ; and yn
 conclusioun they were of the opinion of fferaunt / & preised gretly
 his wit & counsell / seying that it was tyme nowe to leue of alle
 32 sorowe & lamentacion for any fortune that was befallle / & to put
 alle thyng yn foryetyng / sauf only to pray god for the soules of
 suche as haue lost their lyues yn thies viage, and eueri man to calle
 vnto hym a desirous corage & good wille to auisse to the defence &
 36 kepyng of the reaume. And they in alle poyntes concluded &
 folowed the opinion of fferaunt / The kynge, heryng thies wordes,
 was right gretely recomforted & reioised of the corage that his
 owne suggesttes yaue hym / and ordeyned fferaunt to abide yn this
 40 place accompaneyd with ij. M^t men, suche as he wolde chese / and

Ferant ad-
 vises the
 King to leave
 2000 men in
 Sicily, and go
 himself to
 Naples.

The rest of
 the Council
 agree.

So Ferant
is made Cap-
tain,

chooses 2000
men (with
Prince Phi-
lip),

and places his
artillery.

The King
starts for
Naples.

[1 leaf 45]

The Sultan
is fild with
pride,

and boasts of
the favour of
his Gods.

made hym Capteyn of them alle. fferaunt refused not, but rathir /
with good herte & noble corage, right gladly toke on hym the
abidyng & garde of that place / and right lightly chase oute the
nombre of ij. M^t; and eche of them bode with hym with right 4
good wilt / for the grete wisdom & noble pat was yn hym / whan
Le Surnome knewe that his maister abode, ther was no thinge
coude make hym so glad / for he thought wele to se this towne
biseged / whiche he had neuir sene to-fore, trustyng euery day to 8
do armes, whiche was the thyng he moost desired / and thought
hym self wele fortunied to be yn seruyse with suche a maister as
fferaunt was. thus aH the nyght fferaunt leide & establisshed his
ordenaunce yn the moost propre places / wher-of he was right wele 12
puruaided / And at the pointe of day came to the kyng, that than
was at masse, and redy to departe / & so he toke his leue of hym
and of alle his company, certifiyng hym that he shold kepe that
place to his power / and not departe therfro but acordyng to his 16
trouthe & his pore honour / Aftir masse, the kyng toke his leue to
departe, of fferaunt and alle his company, prayng them fuH hertly
that eche of them wold peyne hym to do wele, and to obeie fferaunt
their Capteyne / whiche he had lefte ther as his ¹lieutenaunt, pro- 20
mysyng hem alle that, in obeyng fferaunt, he wolde con hem
asmoche thanke, or more, than if it were to his owne persone. Thus
departed he fro them / takyng the² wey streight to the place where
as the quene was, & his doughter / and aH this while he was in 24
grete thought & drede; neuirtheles he comforted hym in aHmighiti
god, in whom was aH his truste. fferaunt abode stille in the place /
and be than the sonne was vp, he had delyuered euery man his
charge, suche as he thought them moost meete vnto / ¶ Now shalle 28
we retourne to the turke, that was on the see side, in suche pride
that almoost noman durst approche hym, & wende wele to be
kyng of aH the worlde / and that his renome sholde sprede ferthir
than euir did Alisaundres. The night aftir the perdicion of the 32
cristen Navee, he made him to be serued more rially than euir he
was bifore / and aH that day abode yn his loggyng, for the fortune
endured tiH it was nere noone / so aftir soper he sent for his folkes,
to take a conclusion of his departyng, & seide vnto them: "Sires, 36
ye se wele the grace and myracle that oure goddes haue shewed for
vs this day / ye haue sene that, in turnyng of an hande / the grete
pride of the cristen is ourithrown / and ye may wele thinke that

² MS. they.

- the kynge of Sizile and alle his folkes shalle now lese corage, know-
yng the myrales of oure goddes; and their hardynesse shalt falle &
mynyssh / and contrary therto, I trust oures shalt encrease / for we
4 may clerely se that oure goddes wolle helpe vs / & we may be called
of slak corage, & vnhappy / if we wyne not yn short tyme the
remaunant of this reame, that is full ny aH oures. And it be-
houeth vs to put payne to the rescuse of my brother, the kynge of
8 Peerce / that y suppose haue grete sorowe yn his herte, that he was
not here this day / to se the miracle that oure goddes haue shewed
for vs / wherfore lete vs put our deuoir to accomplissh the reme-
naunt that oure goddes haue so wele begonne" / and eueri man
12 concludid that it was tyme now to put hem in deuoir, and alle
accorded yn one, that the Turke, with aH his grete might, shold
ley sege to the towne of Siz / that was wonne but late by his
enemys / and he sholde wyne it as lightly ayen / & they thought
16 wele that there was noon that durst abide the auenture ther,
without the kynge were there him self; and if he were there, they
wold trust sone to haue hym / to this conclusion helde they,
1 trustyng that yn that place, nor yn noon othir, shold they fynde [1 ff. 45, bk.]
20 noon that might endure ayenst hem / for they thought alle their
enemyes were discouraged / and they auised the turke to abide ther
ij. or iij. daies, to thentent that he & alle his folkes might departe
at their ease and leiser / whiche turned hem rather to hurte than
24 auantage / for their abidyng was to fieraunt & his folkes gretly
available / for yn that tyme thei fortified their towne bigger than
euir it was / for there was neither knyght ne squier but labored
right diligently ther-yn / who had sene the labour that Surnome
28 toke / and knowyng what he was, wold a merueled / for like as he
past them alle yn armes / paste he them alle in labour / and that he
did it with so good wille that alle men had ioie to beholde hym /
Thus in litle while they were so wele fortified & assured, that they
32 thought right longe of the Turkes comyng. [Illumin.: knights, poor men.]
- N**OW came the day that the turke had apointed to departe.
ye knowe wele that it is a grete daies iourney to departe
with suche a company / he went that day but a leege and a
36 half fro thens as he lay / and sent some of his fore-riders to her-
kene tidynges of the kynge of Sizile & his company / and they toke
some of the pore folkes fulle ny the garison of fieraunt / by whom
they knewe for certayne that the kynge of Sizile was departed, and
40 had lefte a grete garisone yn the place that he had wonne; & they

The Sultan
says they
must rescue
his brother,
the King of
Persia,

and besiege
Siz.

The Turks
dawdle for 2
or 3 days,

while Feraunt
strengthens
Siz.

The Turks
hear that the
King of Sicily
has gone,

and that the
Sicilians are
confident.

[leaf 46]

Prince Orcays asks
Prince David
who he is,
and wants
him to turn
Mahomedan.

David re-
fuses;

and says
he's a poor
gentleman
named Athys.

purposed to kepe it, & defende it ayenst the Turke & his power /
and they tolde hem also / that as for the mysfortune of the cristen
men þat were drowned yn the see / the hardynes & wille of the
Sizilions was no thyng mynysshed, but rather encreased, for they 4
sawe wele they had noon othir comfort but god, and with his
helpe they purposed to defende them self and their goodes to their
power / his knyghtes retourned ayen þat night yn-to the turkes
hoste, where they reported as they had herde & founde, & brought 8
the pore folkes that they had takyn, by-fore the turke / that herde
hem speke, and fonde yn them the same that his foreriders tolde
hym; wherfore he purposed on the morowe to be loggid but a litle
leege from the place that he purposed to ley sege to. That night 12
Orcays felle in questionyng with his prisoner, & askid him his name,
& of what blode he was descendid / and what he purposed to do /
shewyng hym that by reason he ought to turne to their feithe,
seyng the gre[te] miracles that their goddes had shewed / with many 16
moo wordes / whiche were to longe to rehierce / but in conelusion he
seide vnto hym / that pouerte shold not lette hym to be of their
creaunce / for if it were his pleasir to be so / he shold be most yn
fauour aboute hym of alle othir. Dauid answerd hym / and of his 20
grete bounte right humbly thanked hym / and if his wille were to
turne to othir creaunce than his predecessours had alwey holden,
the grete loue & honour of hym that hath saned his lif / shold
rather make hym to enelyne ther-to, than any othir thinge / but he 24
was determynd yn his feithe to dye / for to suffre as grete martir-
dome as was possible any man to endure / wherfore he bisought
him to speke no more ther-of, for it sholde be in veyn / but humbly
beseching him from thensforth to helpe hym / for yn his contre he 28
was a gentilman / but at this houre he trowed there lyued not a
porer nor a more redeles / and as for his name, it was Athys / and
trustid that his fadir & moder were lyuyng, which were of full litle
power to helpe hym, or to brynge hym oute of thies daungers. whan 32
Orcays herd hym thus sey, he had grete pite of hym / & askid him
if he had any maister / or whedir his maister were dede / Athys
answerd hym / "the same to whom y obeied, was slayne euyn at
my fete there as y landid / wherof grete sorowe befelle me, & me 36
thought it grete cruelte / for he wold a yelde him to the Soudone /
that, aftir his takyng, might a done with him what he wolde / as ye
may do with me whan it pleasith you / that of your grete bounte
haue saued me vnto this tyme." Orcays was right sorowfull that 40

he might not turne his prisonere to his beleue / and sawe wele that
 their company might not longe contynue, whiche greued hym right
 sore / for moche he loued hym, for that he ¹sawe hym bothe amy- [¹ lf. 46, bk.]
 4 able, wise, and worthi / and bithought hym self hou he might saue
 hym / for he knewe wele / that with them might he not abide
 without hollyng their lawe / or ellis dye / and he knewe wele that
 his fader desired gretely his dethe / & so he remembred hym of a
 8 good costom that was amon^{ges} them, whiche was alwey kepte Prince Or-
cays recol-
lects the
custom that,
 amon^{ges} notable princes, and by that he was verily assertayned to
 saue his prisoners lif / The costom was this / than whan the sone when a prince
takes his first
prisoner,
 12 of a kynge or of a grete prynee had taken a prisoner, and the first
 that cuir he toke yn his lif, what-som-euir he were worth / if he
 were not the chiefteyne of the warres / he shold horse hym &
 harneyse hym honorably, and geue hym a C. scutes / and make he may equip
him and set
him free.
 him to be surely conduyte vnto his parties / & thus thought he to
 16 do by his prisoner / for he knewe wele his fadir might not lette hym
 ther-of / for, and he did it, shold be to hym an our grete reproche /
 In this thought went he to his fadir, and seide vnto hym / "My
 20 lorde, ye knowe wel that by the pite y had of a cristen gentilman
 the tothir day, at the fortune that befelle them, y toke hym with
 my handes prisoner / and saued his lif / wherof ye wolde a done me
 grete wronge / yf ye had put him to dethe, contrary to my promys &
 assuraunce / whiche had be to grete a shame, if my first feith that
 24 cuir y yaue yn armes, sholde a be so shamefulli broke / wherfore if
 y² were soroufuH & somewhat greued yn my mynde, ye ought to
 take no displeasir / for y knowe wele what the costom ys of alle
 reaum^{es} here a-boute / & also of your self and of your predecessours /
 28 that whan they haue ben in suche cas, they haue delyuered hir first
 prisoners / & y am remembred for certayne that ye haue done the
 same yn your tyme / and y trust verrily that ye wilt in no thing
 amenysshe me / & that ye haue noon othir entent / but that y may
 32 & shalt do / as they of the lyne fro whens y came haue done bfore
 me / that is, to geue leue to my prisoner / and to araie hym as y to let him
free his
prisoner,
Prince Da-
vid.
 ought / with this / to make hym to be surely conduyte vnto the
 cristen folkes; and hereof humbly y beseche you /" The Turke,
 36 herynge his sone speke yn suche wise, coude hym yn his herte fult
 grete thanke / & knewe wele that, by reason & honour, his request
 might not be denyed / albe-it that of this delyuerance his hert yaue
 hym right ille, for-asmoche as he had sene hym do so moche yn

The Sultan
agrees.
[¹ leaf 47]

Prince Or-
cays tells
Prince Da-
vid, and asks
him where
he'll go.

David says,
to Sise,

and its com-
mander,
Ferant.

So Prince Or-
cays equips
David,

[² ff. 47, bk.]

and tells the
Sultan all
about it.

armes. Neuir¹theles he agreed to the request of his sone / and
bade hym yet assay to conuerte the cristen man vnto their lawe.
His sone saide / þat so he had done / but in no wise he wolde be
agreeable therto. Thus departed he from his fadir / & wente to his 4
prisoner, and tolde him alle howe he had downe *with* his fadir / and
that a conclusion was takyn that he shold departe on the morowe,
wherfore he wolde wite whider he wolde go / either to the kynge of
Sizile or elliswhere / for whider that euir he wolde / he wolde 8
puruay him to be surely conduyte / and tolde hym that on the
morowe they alle sholde departe to ley sege to a cristen place, that
but litle bfore was conquered on his fadir / and tolde him hou it
was not stronge, wherfore it might no while be kepte ayenst hem. 12
when Athis herde thies tidynges, that ther was a cristen place so
nygh, that sone sholde be biseged / yif he were glad, it is no de-
maunde / and aftir the thankynges that he made vn-to Orcays his
maister / as right wise & wele aduised, & as he that coude aH 16
honour / he saide vnto hym / that for no thyng wolde he go
ferthir than to the next place, not shewyng no semblaunt that it
was of any desire to be yn the warres, but for drede to be ferre con-
duyte / and for periles that might ensue therof / and he enquerid 20
of Orcays who was *with* yn that place / he answerd, "that it was
one fferaunt, the SeneshaH of Sizile, that was there" / Assone as
Athis herde hym named / he knewe wele that it was the same *with*
whom the Valiaunt man dwelled, that he had herde so moche speke 24
of / and if his wille were bfore to go vnto that place / it was more
now by a C. part / Orcays his maister, of good wille counseiled hym
to the contrary, seyng / "my frende, this place may not endure
ayenst oure power / and if ye taken wit-yn it / y know, my lord, 28
my fadir is such a man that all the worlde may not saue you /
wherfore y counseile you to drawe to som other parte / and drede
not, but y shall se you to be surely conduyte." But for no thyng
that Orcays coude sey / coude he meue Athis from his opinion, 32
wherof he was right sory. Then he yaue hym the best hors that
he had, and the harneys that he was armyd yn hym-self / whiche
was at that tyme as good & as faire as any might be / and yaue
him an C. floreyngs / & concluded that on the morow, when they 36
came to their loggynges, ²he wolde sende hym surely conduyte to
the towne. Than tolde he his fadir thentent of his prisoner / by
the whiche purpose he ymagyned more & more, that yn this man
shold be right grete honour and corageous wille / nertheles, sith he 40

had promysed his sone, he wolde not breke his promes, but was
 agreable to that his sone had ordeyned / and on the morowe they
 departed, and came withyn litle while to the towne / and than
 4 Orcais called his prisoner, and saide vnto hym / "Athis, my
 frende, the tyme is come now of oure departyng / but, & my com-
 pany were asmoche desired of you / as youre is of me / it sholde
 be harde to make the departyng / nertheles, y had leuer we sholde
 8 departe, than my fadir shold put you to dethe / se yondir the cristene
 towne that my fadir entendith to ley sege to / but y pray you, go
 not thider / & y vndirtake ye shall be sauflly brought whidir euir
 ye wilt ellis / but y know wele, and ye go thider, ye may neuir
 12 departe thens *withoute* dethe." Athis answerd then, & seide, "my
 lorde, y betake me vnto the garde of hym that hath brought me
 here; and sith that it pleasith you to do me this grace, to yeue me
 leue, I beseche you that y may be conduyte to yondir place" /
 16 Orcays toke him forth with him, & brought him to his fadir / to
 take his leue of him, aH armed as he was. The turke was at that
 tyme out of his tente, acompanyed *with* many prynces / he sawe
 his sone bryngyng his prisoner, & seide to theym / "se, my sone,
 20 how grete desire he hath to delyuer this man / and he hath right /
 but aH-wey my herte yeueth me illt ther-of" / and some of theym
 seide / "my lord, what may o man do by his delyueraunce / litle
 harme may growe ther-of" / and at this wordes approched Orcays /
 24 and seide vnto his fadir, aH smylyng / "my lorde, y haue brought
 you this cristen to take his leue / thus abiled as ye se / & yif I
 might haue bettir apoynted hym, y wolde withi aH my herte." The
 prisoner alight, & toke his leue at the Turke & alle the company
 28 that was ther / & humbly thanked Orcays his maister / prayng god
 to yeue him grace to do some seruise to his pleisir, sauynge his
 feith / and thus departed he, acompayned *with* many herowdes of
 armes *purceuauntes*, that brought hym to the barres where fieraunt
 32 was, & desired to speke with him / & saide vnto hym in this wise,
 "My lorde! Orcais, sone to the Turke, oure souerayn lord, at this
 last auenture that befelle vpone the cristen by a vesseH that brake,
 1 some of theym came to Londe, amonge whiche this was one / &
 36 taken by the handes of the said Orcais; & mo was ther not saued /
 And yn asmoche as this is his first prise, that by reason & for his
 honour he wolt not withholde / he hath sende hym you hider yn
 suche cas as ye se hym / certifying yon, that from hensforth he hath
 40 done his deuoir / if any mo ful yn his handes." fieraunt, heryng

Prince Or-
cays is loth
to part with
Prince David.

The Sultan's
heart mis-
gives him.

But David
is taken to
Size, where
Ferant is.

[1 leaf 48]

the heraudes speke, knewe wele that yn suche cas euery prynce or grete estate doth the same, and seide vnto the heraudes / "Orcais, your maister, hath done his deuoir / & hath right wele, and honorably aquyte hym. and now may ye withidrawe you whan it pleast 4 you"; and commaundid wyne, & made them drynke, and did them all the chere that he coude / and askid them whedir pey shold sone be biseged / the heraudes answerd / "ye may se grete liklihodes." & more seide they not / for at that tyme they were *seruauntes com-* 8 mitted, aswele for on part as for othir, saue for their feith / Aftir the departyng of the heraudes, Athis entird yn-to the towne / ther was none acostomed so moche to honour and chere to straungers as Le Surnome; and he made him to be brought to his loggyng / & 12 made him to be vnarmed & wele loggid / & wente to se him / and whan he saw him vnarmed / he saw him so goodly a man & so personable, and yn alle his wordes so wele assured, that he had grete ioie of hym / thus eueri thinge sekith his semblable / for he that was 16 a kynges sone had grete fauour & loue to the kyng of Scottes sone / and suche loue felt bitwene them, that alwey aftir endured / and he loggid him *with* himself / and parted *with* him such goode as he had / and neur varied they yn wille or opinion / neurtheles Athys 20 alwey put hym to grete honour, & concludid verily yn his herte, that neur to no man wolde he discouere what he was, but tolde euery man that he was a pore gentilmannes sone of Scotlande. that night he was brought to fferaunt / whiche questioned him of the 24 manere of takyng of hym / and the fortune that was befallen them yn the see / & he tolde him all the trouthe / and he askid hym specialy of the knyghtes of Sizile that the kyng had sente / & he seide he knewe not what was befall of them / than were they 28 sore bemoned of fferaunt and all his company / for they were fult notable men / than praide they hym to telle them the trouthe of his takyng / and so he did / sauynge of his owne noblesse, he ¹spake not / but seide / "had not be the grace of god that he was taken by the 32 turkes sone, he had be put to dethe as alle othir were, for there was none that escape a lyue but he" / eueri man that herde him reherce his auenture, thought he had grete fortune / and thought he might not faile to be a man of right grete honour. fferaunt was right 36 ioifult of hym / and also that Surnome hadde takyne hym yn-to his company / wherof he coude him right goode thanke. the night came / and euery man drewe hym to reste aftir the Vacche was set / and yn the morowe betymes, euery man aroos, and herde masse / 40

Prince David
enters Size,

and is wel-
comed by
Prince Phi-
lip:

like to like,
they become
fast friends.

[¹ lf. 48, bk.]

Prince David
tells of his
capture, and
his fellows'
death.

and armed hem / for they knewe wele / that day the sege sholde
 come / wherfore they were alle redy to abide suche fortune as sholde
 befall them / for they knewe wele that the Turke had sworne to
 4 take that place with assaute / and to do by them as the kynge of
 Siziles folkes did by his / but god of his grace had othirwise
 puruaide / for a grete parte of his pride was abated bifore that
 place. ¶ Now came the day, and the hoste of the turkes, with
 8 grete sowne & noise of taberynes & beaumes / they departed at
 sonne risyng in iij. bataills right wel ordeyned / and diuided theym
 selfe yn thre parties, and delyuered the charge of the tone partie to
 Orcais his sone / and the tothir to his Constable / and the iij^{de}. to
 12 him self / and thus alle raungid & set, euery to the place that he
 sholde abide yn for that day / for they durst not come ny for
 gunnes / but they thought, whan the night was derke, to come nere /
 & to establiss their sege / fferant, seyng the conduyte of his
 16 enemyes, had the yates shut, without suffryng any man to go oute,
 & made no semblaunt of warre, for this cause / that the turke & his
 hoste sholde haue more hardynes to come nere; and so did they /
 euery man came to his place apointed, & did their deuoir to dresse
 20 vp their loggynges, whiche were a good wey a-sundir / for eche of
 the iij. bataills were loggid by them self. The Turke, seyng no
 semblaunce of warre of them yn the towne / toke suche a company
 as pleasid hym, and went to his sone / to se the maner of his
 24 loggyng & of his gouernaunce. fferant, espiyng hym ther /
 whiche was a man of meruailous witte & prowesse, seide to his
 folkes / "Me semeth / seyng the besynesse that oure enemyes haue to
 logge them / and that we be loggid at auantage, we ought to visite
 28 them, and to go se them a litle ner / for it semeth than that here is
 nobody / but they shalle haue knowlage that there is" / euery ¹man
 that herde this seyng was anon horsed. And fferant ordeyned /
 that ther shold go yn his company but .v. C. ; & an othir feliship
 32 sholde be redy to releue them, if nede were / and at that yate they
 roode oute, he ordeyned an othir feliship with grete ordenaunce of
 smale gownes / that if cas be / that they were dryuen to the yates
 ayen / as it might fuH wele happen them / with the grete company /
 36 that their enemyes had, that then they shold leuelle & shote alle at
 ones / lest their enemyes shold come to ny / And longe bifore was
 no towne bettir garnysshed than that was. This ordenaunce thus
 made / the yates were opende / and they wente out at that yate
 40 that was bifore Orcays / and the first that went oute was Surnome,

The Turke
advance in
3 battalions.

Ferant keeps
his men in
reserve.

The Sultan
goes to see
his son's en-
campment.

[1 leaf 49]

Ferant leaves
500 men at
the gate, with
cannon,

and sallies
out, with
Prince Philip

and Prince
David.

They kill
many Turks.

More Turkish
troops come
up, and drive
the Chris-
tians back.

Prince David
takes Prince
Orcays pri-
soner.

[1 lf. 49, bk.]

The Turks
press on to
the gates of
Sizé,

and are
thrown into
disorder by
the Christian
fire, which
destroys
many of
them.

& Athys, that grete desire had to folowe hym, & to se the meruailes
yn Armes þat he hade herde speke of hym. so rode they forth as
fast as their horses might renne / tilt they came to their enemys /
at their first comyng, they slewe many / and mightly set vpon the 4
Turke, that was come thider to se his sone / but he and the moost
part of his company withdrewe them aswele as they might / whiche,
as ye knowe wele, might not be done without grete losse & damage
to the Turke & his company / for there were moo slayn of them by 8
double / than they were that assailed them / the crie aroos on alle
parties, and euery man assembled and drewe to the Turke & his
sone / & than were they so bigge, that by force they made oure
folkes to withdrawe to the remenaunt of their company that helde 12
them to-gedir / Orcays, that was yonge & corageous, came byfore
alle othir / and knewe anoon his prisoner that was with Surnome,
whiche ij. were the laste that withdrewe them / he ranne so ny
that they ioyned to-gedir. Surnome, seyng his felawe in daunger, 16
cam for to socoure hym / but there were so many folowyng Orcays /
that, had not their good maister fferaunt a bene, they had neuir
retourned yn-to the towne / but he, seyng his ij. seruantes in suche
daunger amonges so grete a nombre of the turkes, with alle his feli- 20
ship, at ones encountird them so vigorously, that he made them to
withdrawe more than the draught of an arowe. In this recountre
was takyn Orcays by the handes of Athys / and many moo prisoners
were ther takyne without nombre. The Turke sawe & knewe for 24
trouthe his sone to be takyn / with the handes of hym that the
night afore he had delynered / the crie & the noise was so grete yn
the turkes hoste, that he might not haue herde a thondre, & they
resorted ayen ¹so fast / that by force they made the cristen to with- 28
drawe ayen yn-to the towne / that were folowed vnto the yatis,
which were sone closed / and anoon alle the ordenaunce & Arthery
were shotte at ones amonges their enemyes / whiche were so thikke
assembled, þer might not faile to be hurte & slayne many of them / 32
whiche brought them alle out of aray / for there were so many slayne
& hurte, that it was meruaile / for they stynted not, but leide on
them with ordenaunce so sore / that the turkes wist not what to
do / fferaunt seyng them alle out of aray, made the yates to be 36
opened ayen, & made a newe scarmysh on theym a foote / at whiche
tyne he did grete hurte to the turke and his folkes / that neuir
sith were they so hardy to come so ny the towne. The cristen did
so moche that they retourned pesibly ayen to the towne, & there 40

- were that day so many prisoners taken, *bat* men might not knowe
one fro an othir / But Athis knewe full wele his prisoner / and
what he had done for hym / and knewe wele also that it shold not
4 ly yn his power to delyuer hym / and he were ones knowen. wher-
fore, of fre and honorable corage, he brought hym oute of the towne
by an othir yate / and seide vnto hym, "Orcais! ye haue saued my Prince David
lif / and it is reason therfore that I deliuere you now, & soone, or
8 elles shaH it neuir lye in my power. I can no bettir arme you than
ye be / nor bettir horse you / wherfore y geue your hors & your
harneys, that is myn be right. I pray god to conduyte you oute of
alle daungers / and now, saue your self, for it is tyme." Thus lete
12 he his prisoner go so couertly, that noman perceyued it / and came
ageyn yn-to the towne, where he founde his felawe Surnome, that
was full sory that he wist not where he was / and whan he sawe
hym come, he made him grete chere / and askid hym where his
16 prisoner was / and he seide, that at the last encountryng / he was and lies to
slayn. Surnome bileued hym wele y-nough / for there were many Prince Philip
slayn, aswele prisoners as othir. ¶ Now retourne y to the Turke,
that, aftir this auenture that was full damageous vnto hym, he
20 lefte good gardes yn his sones hoste, and wente ayen hym self vnto
his tentes, where he was serued with many knyghtes & squyers /
that aH that while had kepte stille his loggyng / and at his comyng,
askid hym tidynges; & he tolde them the dolorous fortune that this
24 day was befallen hym / as to haue lost his sone, & grete part of his
people / and of the best / wherof he named grete nombre of hy and [1 leaf 50]
noble estates and valiaunt knyghtes / after this he seide to theym,
"ye sawe wele that my herte coude not assente to the delyueraunce
28 of my sones prisoner / and it was not without a resone, for y sawe
hym this day take my sone prisoner; and aftir he had ones con-
quered hym, he wold not leue hym nor fauour hym, for y sawe
hym lede hym towarde the towne / and yit y know not whedir at
32 the last encountre my sone were slayne or not / or if he be yn the
towne / nor how it is with hym." & amonge, thies wordes he seide
to them / that "there was neuir houre sith y sawe this cristen man
first / but that my herte tolde me that by hym I sholde haue grete
36 damage; and so tolde y my sone alwey / and now hath he founde it."
- A**s they were in this talkyng, euery man makyng doule, came
a mañ vnto the pauyllion, and seide vnto the Turke / "sir, but then
my lorde your sone, ys sauñ / for as me thought y sawe him hears tidings
40 come alone from the towne" / The turke went out / and by then of his safety.

his sone was almoost at him / whiche a-light assone as he sawe
 hym / & came to hym, & comforted hym aswele as he coude, aftir
 his grete daungere / the Turke seide, "my sone, this auenture that
 ye haue had to day, & y had ben bileued, had not befallen you / 4
 for yn this partie ye are cause of oure losse / for whan ye were
 takyne, to haue rescowed you, this grete hurte is befall me" /
 "truly, sir," quoth Orcays, "that y haue done, y holde for no grete
 dede / for the sone of a mighti kynge hath delyuerd a felaw that 8
 he knew not / which hath not ben scars, nor of so pore corage / but
 that he hath wele to his knowlage delyuerd the sone of the grettist
 kynge that leuyth" / Than tolde he his fadir the maner of Athis /
 and the wordes that he had seide / and how he had delyuerd hym 12
 frely / & had put him self in iuarde of his lif, if it were knowen ;
 "thus haue y do no thyng for hym, yn regarde to that he hath done
 for me" / the Turke, heryng his sone reherse the grete bounte of
 Athis, more & more in corage dredde hym, and seide / "yn a man of 16
 pore condicion ne might be so grete vertu ; and alwey more & more
 me thinketh he shold do vs harme. Nertheles, what-som-euir be-
 falle, he is a man of hy & noble corage" / than comforted he him
 aswele as he might / aftir this sharpe fortune & annoy, seying the 20
 recouerir of his sone, he made to fortifie his sege, and made stronge
 wacche / for he sawe wele ¹that he had to do with valiaunt folkes.
 Nowe shal we leue to speke of the sege / and of alle the warres of
 Sizile, & retourne to speke of the kynges sone of England, that 24
 conduyte thus, as ye sha^{ll} here.

Prince Or-
cays tells the
Sultan

how Prince
David set
him free.

The Sultan
fears Prince
David,

and strength-
ens his own
force.
[¹ ll. 50, bk.]

Prince Hum-
phrey of
England

laments the
Allies' losses
in Sicily ;

but the King,
his father,
will not let
him go there.

IT is trouthe, that, as ye haue herde, the kynge of Englon^d had
 a sone named Humfray, faire, wise, and right wele condicioned /
 for as y haue seide you here-to-fore / the kynges made their 28
 children yn youthe to be norished by notable folkes & wele con-
 dicioned / This yonge Humfray, aftir the discomfiture and harde
 auenture that the cristen had vpon the see yn Sizile / helde the
 reaume as lost, wherof he had as grete sorowe yn parte, as alle his 32
 frendes had ben destroyed / and thought wele that the cristen put
 hem not yn suche deuoir as they shold / and many tymes he seide
 to his fadir / that "it was grete pite to se thus cristendome
 destroyed" / The kynge anon vndirstode wele for what entente he 36
 seide it / but for no thinge wolde he sende him forth / he toke
 ensauple of the kynge of Scottes, that was yn suche sorowe for
 his sone, of whom he coude here no worde, that noman might
 recomforte hym ; and therfore the pore Humfray lost his tyme to 40

- speke therof / and whan he sy he might haue non othir comfourt of
his fadir / he remembred hou the kyng of ffraunce had loste his
sone / & thought he wolde secretly breke with the feliship that
4 were aboute him / as the sones of grete prynces and othir grete
lordes / that in their youthe had be norissched with hym / and if he
might fynde any of his accorde / he wold departe from his fadir, & Prince Hum-
phrey re-
solves to start
for Sicily, if
he can find
friends to go
with him.
drawe to Sizile; for he thought wele / and he were ones there / and
8 his fadir knewe ther-of, that for no thyng he wold leue hym yn
daunger / but rather sende thider folkes to acompany him / whiche
might be grete socour and helpe to the kyng of Sizile / and in this
thought was he longe tyme or he durst discouer it pleynly to any of
12 his seruantes. So fortunyd, vpon a day he stode at a wyndowe,
passyng trist & pensif / and the Erle of warwikes eldest sone was
there / that long tyme of youthe had be brought vp with hym / so
he came to him and seide, "my lorde! sauynge your displeasir, me
16 thinketh that now of late y haue sene you more pensif & malyn-
colious than euir ye were before / and as me ought yn this wise, y
shewe you the trouthe, that many folkes wit/drawe them out of
this courte / and be right sorowfull to se you in this cas; ¹for by
20 youre Lustynes, & Liberalite & frendly manere, eueri man desired to
yeue you attendaunce, and to be acompanyed aboute your persone /
and now they se you of right mate & heuy chere / and if they
come aboute you, ye make vnto them full litle countenaunce, or
24 noon, whiche they haue not ben acostomed to; Wherefore they haue
the grettir meruaile / and thus departe they all abassed and sorow-
fulle, to remembre how ye ar turned so ferre from that they left
you / and there is noon that moost desire to do you seruise, but
28 that they are annoyed to se you so / ye knowe wele, my lorde, y say
trouthe / for here were many noble men that were right glad to do
you seruyse at their owne coste & charge that now be departed.
And this courte is sore amenysed of noble men / and alle by you / I
32 biseche you, my lorde, pardone me of thies thynges y haue shewed
you / for y can yn no wise hide fro you / that haue brought me vp /
any thinge that y se or here, that shold be to your charge, or
amenysing of your grete loos & renome / that of your age hath
36 largely be spred thourgh the worlde" / Thus yong Humfray / hering
thies wordes of this yong sone of warwik / knewe wele that of good
herte, & feithfull loue & seruise, he seide thies vnto hym / and
thought wele he seide trouthe; and forthwith the teres felle from
40 his yen / wherby this yonge gentilman perceyued wele that his which has
driven young
nobles from
Court.
This makes
Humphrey
weep.

Lord War-
wick's son
says he'll risk
his life to
help Prince
Humphrey.

Humphrey
then tells him

[11. 51, bk.]

that the peril
of the King of
Sicily

and his lovely
daughter,

which danger
his Allies
have not
reliev'd him
from,

maister might not wele speke / the sorow strayned so sore his
herte / than seide he / "my lorde! y se wele that there is som
thinge yn your herte that sore annoieth you / or displeasith you /
and .I. wote not whethir ye haue or wilt discouer it to any aboute 4
you / but y sey for me, if y knewe any thyng that were to your
annoy or displeasir / and it were possible my seruise to remedy it /
y shal auenture my body and lif to accomplishe it / neuirtheles y
desire to knowe of youre secretes no ferthir than pleasith you y 8
sholde knowe / but whan my seruyse may please you ye shall fynde
it redy, without any Demaunde reseruyng / aȝ-only the kyng, & my
pore lorde, my fadir." whan Humfray had herde his seruaunt &
kynnesman thus sey vnto hym / and offrid his body and goodes for 12
him / thought wele yn him self that he might trust hym, & seide
vnto him, "ye haue be norissht vp with me / and y trust certainly
that my wele, myn honour, and preferment, ye wolde as moche as
any man that longith to my fadir or me; and for this y am con- 16
cluded yn my thought to ¹discouer vnto you myn entent / and
notwithstandynge ye haue be brought vp with me of childehode /
and that y haue alwey loued you wele, yit wolt y haue an othe of
you / and what othe y shall sey you / if that y shall disclose vnto 20
you, please you not / nor that ye wiȝ assente and agree ther-to /
that neuir, daies of your lif, it shaȝ be opend or disclosed by you /
and this shall ye promyse me" / and he answerd him / "my lorde,
y wolt wele / for y had leuir dy than euir y shold discouer thinge 24
that ye commaunde me to kepe" / and here on yaued his trouthe /
and then he shewid his sorowe in this wise / ¶ "It is so that ye
haue, dyuerse tymes & many, herde speke of the right grete pite &
destruccïon / that euery day befallerh to the kyng of Sizile / that 28
is a kyng of full grete honour, whiche is a grete amenysshment to
all cristendome, & shame to alle cristen kynges that haue their
reaumes in pees / and he hath a daughter, of whom the renome of
al honour is spred through aȝ the worlde / and the kyng, hir 32
fadir, might haue pees / if he wolde mary hir among the mys-
creauntes / but he had leuer dy / and þe destruccïon of hym & of
his doughtir bothe / than euir, daies of his lif, he wold consent
ther-to / ye may wele se that this cometh of a stable herte / grete 36
drede & loue of god / ye knowe the socours that by the kyng of
ffraunce / my lorde,² my fadir / and the kyng of Scottes, hath be
done to him / whiche no thing hath profite him / but to him a grete

² MS. my lorde my lorde.

hurte / for his folkes are gretly discouraged ther-by / for, as y vnder-
stonde, bfore this comyng, one of them was worth .vj. turkes / and
nowe y se noman that dressith to any socours of the seide kynge /
4 but they thinke they haue done y-nough. I haue many tymes <sup>I've talkt to
my Father,</sup>
moued my lorde my fadir, heryn, that litle hede takith to my
wordes, but rathir thinkith my speche ys chyldissh & folie / <sup>and he thinks
me silly.</sup>
thus for certayn y holde this good kynge / his fair doughtir and his
8 reame, lost / and for that me thinkith that euery noble man sholde
be sorowfuH of so grete a losse / y can in no wise make good chere /
and this is the principaH cause of my sorowe / And y thynke werrily
if y might gete thider / the noble suggettes & seruantes of this
12 reame shold can me no maugre / and wolde god that euery man
wold employ hym therto / and that the kynge were agreable to
sende me yn this viage / but that wol he not, for no thyng, y knowe
for cer'tayne / notwithstandyng aH my speche vnto hym / & also ^[1 leaf 52]
16 the grete losse that but late is fallen to them that were sent to the
socours / But y shaH telle you more playnly myn entente, suche ^{But I mean}
promyse as ye haue made me / for ye be one of them that y haue
most affiaunce yn / and also y knowe you wele assured, and wise y-
20 nough to conduyte an² hy matier, if it please you / wherfore y pray
with aH my herte in especiaH, that ye wiH assente to my desire
with-oute breking it / and helpe me to execute it / and here nowe
what y haue thought / I knowe wele, as y haue seide, that for
24 no thinge, my lorde, nor alle they of his reame, fro the grettist
estate to the porest degre, ne wol not consente that y shold departe
so ferre fro them / but aH that shaH not restrayne me / if y may
haue the power, & any that will helpe to conduyte me in this
28 werke, y shaH departe oute of this reame right honestly accom- <sup>to go to
Sicily.</sup>
payned, not as a kynge, but as a knyght / and for this y haue goode
y-nough, & garnyssht wele y-nough / And y wold that "yn the name
of som othir than of me, at som port in this reame, fer fro this <sup>I want some
one to engage</sup>
32 towne, a good ship were ordeyned, wele tak-lee & vitailed, whiche ^{a Ship,}
sholde alwey be redy to departe / without houre or tyme apoynted /
and abide there oure comyng; and yn the meane tyme, to ij. or iij.
of my speciaHle seruantes & kynnesmen, & othir that haue be
36 norisshed vp with me / vpon an othe y shaH discouer myn entente /
& y trust that at leste y shaH be accompayned with xvj. or a xx^{ti}. <sup>and then 1,
with 16 or 20
noblemen,</sup>
noble men / and euery man, one seruaunt with him / and at suche
tyme as all shall be redy / y shall depart at euen out of this towne,

² MS. and

will some day
go aboard and
sail to Sicily,

that by the mornynge, if y be myssed / y shalbe to fer to be ouirtaken
 or we come to the port / and then wolt y streight to shipe / and
 go vnto the Reaume of Sizile / and whan y am onys ther / y shalt
 lete my lorde, my fadir, haue knowlage therof / and what causes haue 4
 meued me / and y am sure whan thoos tidynges come to his know-
 lage / he, and alle they of his reame, wol be right wele content to
 sende suche company vnto me as may be for his honour / whiche
 shalbe a grete recomforte to the reaume of Sizile / and pis be cause 8
 of my goyng ; & by pis may I trust to wynne the loue of god, and
 honour / without hauyng shame ; but this can y, nor may, do with-
 out helpe / wherfore, myn owne cousyn & frende, I pray you tell
 [1 lf. 52, bk.] me, heryn as ye thinke" / This yong sone of ¹warwik heryng his 12
 maister thus speke, was not so yong / but that he thought yn his
 corage, that this mocion came of grete honour and gentilnes of herte.
 and thus he answerd hym / "my lorde, this matier that ye meue,
 procedith of an hy & noble corage / a[n]d also the mater is right grete / 16
 and y alone, & but yonge / & notwithstanding, your wordes gretly
 reioise me / yit dare y geue you noon other counseil than this that
 y shalt sey / ye haue of yong men, thankid be god, that of their
 age be right wise & discrete, & that wil be trewe vnto you as longe 20
 as god wol geue them lif / ye may calle vn-to you iij. or iiij. of
 them that ye thinke be moost propre to guyde this mater / and if
 it please you, y wolbe with them / and what-so-euer shalt then be
 concluded / and ye commaunde me to execute it, y shalt do my 24
 deuoir to the vtterist of my power / and thinke neuir, sir / that,
 daies of my lif, this that it hath pleased you to seye to me, sha be
 opende by me to no lyuyng creature / for y knowe wele the grete
 affectione, trust, and fauour, that ye shewede me, discoueryng this 28
 matier that is most secrete in your herte / wherof, right humbly y
 thanke your good grace / and as for my body, & alle the goodes that
 y haue, if my pore company may plese you, aftir ye haue takyn a
 ferme conclusion, [1] shall be redy to do you seruise as long as my 32
 lif may endure" / his maister thankid him right hertily / & thought
 his auise good / and on the morow full erly was steryng, sent for
 suche as he wold haue / to whom he had grettist affiaunce / and
 without long taryng, to abregge the matier / yn like wise as he had 36
 broken to the erle of warrewikes sone, of his entente / so did he to
 them that he had sent for / whiche, anoon as they herde his pleasir,
 thought the matier right straunge / and seide vnto him / "that yf
 they shold acompany hym yn this matier, they knewe for certayne 40

which I hope
to aid, and
also win
honour.

Will you
help?

Lord War-
wick's son
advises
Prince Hum-
phrey

to get 3 or 4
friends to
manage the
matter,

and he will
help.

The Prince's
friends

object at first,

that they durst neuir retourne to this reaume ayen / for the kynge
his fadir / and that their owne fadirs wolde be the first that sholde
destroie them" / and also they seide, "my lorde, whan ye come to
4 the age of more knowlage, & haue childreñ, as my lorde your fadir
hath / ye wolde neuir haue loue ne fauour vnto vs / but thinke
that we shold be as agreable to beguyle you of your children, as we
sholde be nowe agreable to beguyle my lord your fadir, of you,
8 where-thorough ye shold haue vs alwey yn hate / & mystrust" /
But no[t]withstandyng alle thies wordes, he seide to them / "my
frendes, doute not but, in conclusion, this matier shalbe reputed to
12 your frendes / for whan they here where we shalt be, there shalt be
fewe yn this londe, *pat* haue any sone of age to bere armes / but
that they shaft wille they were *with* vs / and as for me, y shold be
the moost wrecche yn erthe / if ye that haue fadirs & modirs, kynne
16 & frendes / and grete possessions yn this reaume / which ye shold
leue for the loue of me, if y sholde hate you / god neuir be pleased
to geue me lif so longe / but shortly to ende it / ffor if god geue vs
grace to acheue & brynge our *entir*prise to good conclusion / y
20 shold be fult vntrewe & right vnkynde / if euer y failed any of you,
daies of my lif" / many wordes were amonges them / but at last alle
to-gedir concludid to do & accomplissh the pleasir of their maister /
not yn so grete nombre as they wolde haue had, for fere it sholde
24 be knowen and discouerd / But now euery man toke his charge,
some to ordeyne a ship & the vitailyng / some to puruay good
horsis / and to brynge them to suche secrete places where as they
might be dayly coursed & renne ; som puruaide for gold & siluer &
28 for *harneys*, and som for aray / so that ther lakked no thyng to
noon of them / but that they were alle puruaide of euery thyng
longing vnto them for a grete while / Aftir this, was eueri thing
puruaide and so wele guyded / that by the day they apoynted / alle
32 thyng was redy ther, *without* knowyng of any persone saue of
them that delt ther-with. ¶ Now fro this day forth was Humfray
of bettir chere then he had ben longe before, wherof eueri man had
grete ioie, for they had ben yn sore discomfort for his sadnes / but
36 no man durst make no questione. The tyme approached of his
departyng ; he made iustis & turneys, and assembled his ladies and
gentilwomen / & did so moche, that alle folkes than had more ioie of
him than euir they had / thus beloned of the kynge & of alle the
40 iij. estates of the reaume, departid this yonge gentilman out of his

[1 leaf 53]
but he
answers their
arguments,

and at last
all agree to
do as he
wishes.

Some get the
ship, others
procure
money,

and by the
day appointed
all is ready.

One mid-
night Prince
Humphrey
leaves his
Father's
house, and
goes to his
ship.
[1f. 53, bk.]

fadirs house aboute midnight / so secretly that he was vnperceyued /
and rode so that night, that it was not possible to ouirtake him /
thus, withoute makyng lenger tale, he came to the port ther as the
ship abode him / and they that had the charge therof / and assone 4
as he came ther / he & his fe^lLiship in alle Haste possible entrid
ther-yn, which, whan they were there, were yn nombre xviiij.
They set sail. persones / of gentilmen and other. then made they to pulle vp the
saile, & were withyn litle while withoute sight of the londe. 8
¶ Now goth Humfray and his company / god by his grace con-
duyte them / for they be fult ferre from their entent. The kynge
The King of
England is
of Englond, on the morowe that his sone was departed, herde thorough
his court grete noise & murmour, & askid what it might be; but 12
noon ther was that wold or durst telle it hym / neurtheles at laste
he most knowe it / and so came his counseil to enfourme hym ther-
of, and seide vnto him / "sir, it behoueth that ye knowe wherfore
we are come to you / to-day be comen vnto vs many of the seruantes 16
of my lordes youre sone / that for certayn knowe not where he is /
for they haue ben at his chambre, & founde it open / and he not
ther-yn / his chambrelayn yn like wise, & suche as were moost a-
boute hym / nor wote not where they are / for the seruantes of 20
diuerse of them be come to vs & sey that they haue lost their
maistres / thus for drede that it shold falle vnto you as it did to
the kynge of ffrance, we be come to enforme you ther-of / assone as
we mysse hym / for we wote not yif ye knowe where he is or no." 24
The kynge of Englond, heryng this, knewe anon for certayne that
his sone was goon / and thought wele that he had takyn the wey
to Sizile / consideryng the wordes that he at diuerse tymes had
seide vnto him / and then he made diligently to seche thorough all 28
his reame / and whan he sawe that he might haue no tidynges of
hym / he determyned to sende notable folkes yn-to Sizile / for to
knowe and enquire if any tidynges might be had ther of hym / It
is to thinke / that the kynge was yn grete sorowe / & not without 32
cause / for he had no moo sonys; and if he had sorowe, ye may wele
thinke þat þe quene & hir ij. doughters were not withoute / for they
had suche sorow that alle folke had grete pite of them / this sorowe
was not alone yn the kynges court / but the fadirs & moders, kynne 36
& frendes of the yonge lordes that were gone with hym had their
parte yn like wise / & so had the surpluis of alle the reame, & had
grete drede lest the losse were withoute recouerir / as that of ffrance
had ben. ¶ Now sha^{ll} we leue of this grete sorowe that they made, 40

told that the
Prince's
room is
empty:

so he knows
his son has
gone to
Sicily.

The King
grieves
greatly.

- & not *withoute* cause / for moche trouble had they that thus¹ were [¹ leaf 54]
departid / and ye shall here the manere Howe. ¶ Whan Humfray
and his folkes were in the see *withoute* the sight of any Londe of
4 the reaume of Englonde, they toke their wey towarde Sizile / and Prince Hum-
phrey sails
towards
Sicily.
had connyng marners to conduyte them, & faire wedir at wille /
so that *withyn* litle while they might haue aryued in Sizile, ne had
ben the fortune & tempest of the see, that neuir is sure / ffor on a A tempest
rise;
8 day bifelle grete tempest in the see / so that the vessell that they
were yn was many tymes yn daunger to be perissied / yn-so-moche
that the marners coude no remedy, but all only yn the handes of
god, & lete the vessell dryue *with* the wawes and the wynde, the ship
drives;
12 whedir as god wold conduyte it. Humfray and alle his company
were in orisons and praier *with* grete deuocion, hauyng no hope but
of dethe / and yn the meane while one of the marners perceyued
londe that they were ny vnto / but he knewe not the contre, for he
16 had neuir be ther / so he wente to Humfray / and to the maister
marnyer / and tolde it theym / whiche made grete ioie / for when
they were so ny the londe, the tempest was not so rageous as it had
ben in the playne see / sone aftir they aryued at londe *without* any
20 hurte / and it was nye a grete towne that helde of the turke that
was in Sizile / and they went oute yn vessells & botes, & came to
this shipe / and founde it garnysht *with* cristen men / and when
they sawe thies yonge folkes, and the good that was *with* them, they
24 were right ioiefult, and brought their prise to the towne, and departed
their botee / and for it thought them a cas of nouelte / they sente and given
away as
prisoners.
presentes to their neighbors of the cristen prisoners, so that they
lefte *with* them but ij., wherof that one was Humfray / and thus
28 was thys company disseuerd / Humfray was put yn a derke prisone,
and his felawe *with* hym / whiche sone aftir died / and he abode
ther all alone, where he endured moche payne & trouble / alle othir
than he wende to fynde whan he departed oute of Englonde / and
32 pitously he complayned him to god / besechyng hym humbly that
this payne & prison that he was yn / might stande for part of his
purgatory / for he wende neuir to escaped thens / but oure lorde,
that knewe the cause of his departing / and that he was abandoned
36 for his seruise, put him not yn foryetyng / but sone aftir holpe to
his delyuerance / ²as ye shall here / but nowe he was stille kepte [² ff. 54, bk.]
there, to thentent to presente the turke with, at his retourne. The
kynge, his fadir, had sente yn-to Sizile vij. or viij. of his folkes
40 aftir his departing / & whan they were returned / and tolde that

The King of
England's
envoys can
hear no
tidings of
Humphrey
in Sicily.

The King of
England
mourns the
loss of his
Son.

thorough alle the reaume of Sizile they had enquired & sought / but
for certayne, yn that region had not be seyne no ship / sith the losse
of the cristen arnee, that was sent for their socours. & they certified
for trouthe, that ther Humfray nor his company was not / The 4
kyng of Englonde, heryng thies tidynges, helde his sone as loste /
and than his sorow redoubled, but it might not be amendid / and
aH his lif he contynued wepyng & teeres / and seide to suche as
were a-boute hym / "Alas! ye may se iij. reaumes full desolate! 8
the kyng of ffrance & y haue loste oure ij. sones / and wote not
how the kyng of Scottes hath lost his also / but he hath more
recomforte than we two / for his sone died knyghtly yn the
seruise of god / and yet hath his fadir ij. sones alyue, which is a 12
grete recouerir to his reaume / & noon of vs two haue noon heire
male / and y here sey the kyng of ffrance lith seke in his bedde,
without any remedy of his lif / whiche is comen to hym of sorow / of
which is grete pite, and withoute faile he seide trouthe / for aftir 16
the departyng of his sone, hadde he neur ioie."

The King of
France, be-
fore dyng of
grief for the
loss of his
son, Prince
Philip,

As the kyng of Englonde seide / and as ye haue rehersed here
tofore, The kyng of ffrance, sith the departyng of his
seide sone, enioied neur day of helthe / in so moche that 20
withyn ij. yere aftir, he departed oute of this worlde / and bifore
his dethe, made to come bifore him his wif and his brother, the
Duc of Burgoigne / and seide vnto them in this wise / "My wif
and my brother / y perceyue wele y most dye / whiche is the 24
thyng y haue moche desired / and as ye knowe wele y had a sone
a ij. yere syne, and wote not yet / whethir he be a-lyue or not / to
whom ye, my wif, be moder / and ye, my brother, be vncler / y
haue loued you naturally as my brother / and ye haue done me 28
grete seruyse and honour, wherof y thonke you, and pray you to
contynue your kinde and naturaH loue vnto me aftir my dethe /
and to my sone, if he be a-lyue / and if he be not / y may haue no
grettir ioie than to wite you kyng aftir my dethe / for to you 32
sholde the reaume falle as rightfult enheritoure / wherfore y wolde
that ye shold be regent and gouernour of this reaume by the space
of vij. yere / and yn caas be that my sone come not / and that terme
passed / I wol that ye be crowned and sacred kyng / for the abidyng 36
is long y-nough of ix yere / and y trust that ye wiH thus do / and
so y pray you promyse me / for the goodes of the reaume be as wele
yours, as Regent / as if ye were crowned kyng; and so shaH ye
leese nomore for the tyme, but only the name of the kyng." The 40

appoints his
brother,
[? leaf 5v]
the Duke of
Burgundy,
Regent of
France, and
King after 9
years.

Duc of Burgoigne, that was fult wyse, worthy, and a passing good man, was knelyng afore the kynge his brother, heryng him thus speke, of right feruent loue, and of right stronge and soroufult
4 herte, wepte so sore / that he might vnnethe speke a worde / but as he might speke, he promysed him trewly to perfourme his desire & commaundement / Aftir alle this, and that the goode kynge of ffrance had serchid his conscience wisely and deuoutly, he yelde
8 his soule to god, and was entered as to a kynge perteyneth, and his ordynaunce doone & accomplisshed, as he had diuised. And his Brothir, the Duc of Bourgoigne, was made Regent of ffrance / and helde entierly, and accomplissid, alle that he had promysed his
12 brother, withoute contraryng of any thinge / and had noon othir wille ne desire, but that his Nevewe sholde come ayen / for he hadde neither wif ne childe, and he was noon of the moost yonge, wherefore he was determyned yn himself neur to marye. He helde the
16 reaume, as long as he had the gouernaunce, yn good Iustice, pees & tranquillite. ¶ It is tyme to be stille a litle of this matier, and retourne to the sege that the Turke had set bfore fferaunt and his company.

20 **L**onge tyme endured they bfore the Towne without any wyunyng / & euery day there was som sawte or scarmysssh, and alwey profitable for them withyn / and so moche yn
armes did Le Surnome and Athis / that of alle othir they bare the
24 name / for their dedes were, as who seith, yncredible; and so wele did Athis / that sawe Le Surnome, ther was noon to compare with hym / wherof le Surnome was as glad as he might be / and loued his honour asmoche as his owne / and he shewed wele he was not
28 enuyous / for whan they were withdrawen from any scarmysssh, he wolde so ioifully reherce of Athis, his felawe / that alle men ^[1 lf. 55, bk.] Had grete pleasir to here him / whiche alway passed hym, & was werry mirrour and ensample to alle othir / Thes sege dured fulle longe / and
32 many tymes sent fferaunt to the kynge of Sizile, that he sholde haue no drede for them / nor put himself yn noon auenture / for it neded not / for they had gret plente of vitaille for more than a yere / and whan they most nedes lene the place / they wolde departe to
36 the a nother of their enemyes, maugre them alle / and thus the kynge of Sizile, in trust of fferant, abode the auenture that god wolde sende / and often made his folkes to ride to the Turkys hoste / to distourbe their vitaille / whiche aquytte them right wele / and
40 did grete damage to the Turkes, and made them right wery /

The King of France dies,

and the Duke of Burgundy becomes Regent.

Ferant and the Christians make daily sallies against the Turks,

[1 lf. 55, bk.]

and tell the King of Sicily that they are all right.

A letter of
Ferant's,

and his mes-
senger, are
taken to the
Sultan,

who is told
that they
don't at all
fear him.

The Sultan
calls a Coun-
cil to discuss
the slow pro-
gress of the
siege,

and the
damage that
Prince Philip
and Prince
David do
the Turks,

ffynally they loste moo of their folkes before that place then they
had done of all the while that they were yn Sizile / and yit were
they neuir the nere of the place / On a day befelle that fferaunt had
sent a letter to the kynge his maister / yn suche wise as ye haue 4
herde before / the messanger was not so wise as othir had be, nor
coude not þe weies so wele / so was he taken with the Turkes
meyne / & brought bifore him yn-to his Tente. the Turke toke
him aparte, & suche of his counseñ as pleased him / and made to 8
woide the remenaunt / for that he wold not the messangere shold
be openly herde / lest he shold sey any thing / that shold discourage
them / & whan all folkes were wided, the Turke asked hym cer-
tainly of his tydynges / And he tolde hym suche as he knewe, with- 12
out hidyng of any thyng / yn embandonyng his lif, if it were founde
othir wise / he seide that they withyn dred not the Turke and alle
his power / but were rathir glad than sory of his beyng ther / for
they wist for trouthe, that it was grete charge to hym / and that he 16
shold alwey lese more than wynne / and yn the meane tyme the
kynge of Sizile shold fortifie his Reaume, and be daily releued with
newe folkes / so that his puissaunce shalle alwey encesse. The
Turke asked the messanger if he had any letters / and he seide 20
“ye” / as he that durst not deny it / and forthwith toke theym
hym / the Turke opend them, and founde them aftir suche forme
as ye haue herde before this. whan the messangere had be wele
enquered / and answerde and seide like as he knewe / whiche was 24
alwey to the honoure ¹of the cristen : then was He delyuerd to one
that shold kepe him wele and surely / the Turke abode stille with
his counseñ / and they diuised many thinges to-gedre of thies
matier / & they thought wele they loste tyme / and therfore toke 28
they this conclusion / that on the morowe the Turke sholde
assemble alle his counselle / and the Capteynes / and seid to them
that were there with hym / that they shold auise them wele that
night of this grete matier, & on the morow to shewe him their best 32
aduisse & counselle / Thus departed they, and euery man to his
loggyng / til on the morow the Turke sende for them / many tymes
and often were they awakid by them withyn / whiche had noon
othir delite nor pleasir but to trauaile them, to the annoie of the 36
turkes / and that shewde wele Le Surnome, and Athis his felowe,
þat, alle the while he was withyn the place, chaungid not his harneys
that Orcais had yeuen him / wherby he was wele knowen ; and
also he shewde it fult ny them many tymes, to their grete damage / 40

for the Turke wolde often tyme sey / "se there my sones prisonere!
 here may ye se the profit of his delyneraunce / my herte gaf me
 neuir othir wise / he is the flour & choise of alle them *withyn* / one
 4 reserued / that dothe vs meruailous grete hurt / by them ij. is alle
 the losse we haue." Now this night passid / on the morowe came
 the Turkes counselle to hym, and alle the Capteynes he had sent for,
 and the Turke declared the matier him self / yn this wise, seyng
 8 vnto them / "faire lordes, it is nigh the space of a yere sith we
 leide the sege bfore this place / wheryn it semeth me to be as ferre
 from hawying it as the first day we came here / the damages that we
 haue had, aswele of them *without* the place, as of them *withyn* / be
 12 *without* nonbre / for we haue lost here, of the best of oure
 company / & yit if it appered that we might haue it be length of
 tyme, y sholde holde my peyne wele employed; but we cannot, as
 fer as y se / this night passed, was taken by my folkes one of their
 16 messangers, beryng letters to their kynge / whiche, yn the *presence*
 of diuerse suche as be here *present*, y haue examyned, & founde
 him trewe, seyng aftir the content of his letters / whiche letters, se
 here yn my hande / & y wolle they be redde yn *presence* of you
 20 ¹alle, because ye may auise what is to do / and that ye may counselle
 me to my honour / and so y pray you do" / thies letters, were
 opende and redde by a Secretary of the Turkes / and were of such
 matier as ye haue herd to-fore / and aftir they were redde, he seide
 24 ayen vnto them / "ye se the termys, and how the matier stondes;
 I perceyue that, sethe oure comyng yn-to this reame, oure tyme
 hath not gretly employed / neuirtheles, or y sholde departe with
 shame / y had leuer dye / and if we wolle any moo folkes, we nede
 28 but to sende for them / but me semeth that we be y-nough, bothe
 for theym *withyn* & for them *without*, In-asmoche as we haue ben
 so long vnfoughtē *with* / Also the harde ceason of wynter ap-
 procheth / and it shold be fult ilt for any oure folkes to labor in-to
 32 this cuntre frome so fer, and also it shold be fulle grete charge &
 dispence / and fulle harde for vs to gete vitale / for the kynge of
 Sizile diffendith it vs daily yn alle that he may / Now, alle thies
 thinges considered, I haue assembled you alle, to haue your good
 36 aduise and counselle, whether it be behofuH for vs to sende for moo
 people or not / So I pray you that eche of you counselle me aswele
 as ye can." Aftir that he had seide thies wordes / there were
 many of theym that eche behelde othir / and thought wele yn their
 40 mynde that the Turke was wery that the sege endured so longe /

The Sultan
tells his
Council that
their year's
siege has
been of no
use.

[1 lf. 56, bk.]

He has
Ferant's
letter read
to them,

ays Winter
is coming on,

and asks their
advice.

Some think
the siege
shouldn't
be raised.

[¹ leaf 57]

All are sad.

The Sultan
calls on one
of his most
trusted
Councillors.

wherof they were glad, for it sore annoied them, their beyng there
so longe / In asmoche as they sawe be no meane to be nerre the
wynnyng of the place than thei were the first day they came ther /
and daily sith had they hadde grete losse and damage, aswelt doon 4
by theym *withyn* the place as by theym *without* / they had lost
many of their next frendes and of the moost worthy of their com-
pany / Some other praised moche the Turke their maister / and
thought if he reised the sege / it shold be to his shame / and yet 8
they sawe wele he lost his tyme, and had grete charge aboute
nought / wherof they abasht theym moche / And in especialt, how
the kynge of Sizile but litle a-fore had wonne that towne with
assaute / and hou they had biden there so longe space / & coude 12
not gete it; but moche preyed they them of *withyn*, of wisdom &
worthynesse, thinkyng that they passed alle other that they had
seen in their tyme. Thus every man thought of the be'synesse
that belonged to the Tourke, that sawe this company alle saddle and 16
pensif / knewe wele that there was cause / and thought that he had
our lightly leide sege there / seyng the puissaunce that his enemyes
had / that night & day aboute the Sege, were in suche diligence and
trauaile, that they vnnethe of the host mighte haue any slepe / for 20
they were nightly distourbed of their reste, either by them *withyn*
or by them *without*; so seid he to his folkes: "I pray you remembre
wele thies matiers, for it nedith to take good aduise; for our abidyng
here is fulle noious and dangerous / & oure departyng shold be 24
shamefult / Neurtheles, it semeth me one of thies ij. we most nedes
take; but it behoueth vs to thinke what were the best meane we
coude fynde / yestir even, affir the takyng of fferantes messenger,
some of you were here *with* me / and I pray to bethinke you what 28
were best / I was not aduised than to assemble you alle, as y haue
now done / and for this cause y shall aske first of them that were
than with me / for that y know wele they haue had bettir leiser of
remembraunce than the remenaunt that be here" / Than asked he 32
the aduise of one of his moost preuy counsellours / and that, as he
trusted, toke his matiers moost to herte / And was, as affir his lawe,
a right a notable and a wise knyght / the whiche, by the com-
maundement of his maister, refused not to sey his aduise, whiche 36
was this / "Sir, it is trouthe that yestir euen ye commaundid
diuers of vs to remembre on this matier, & so y suppose we haue,
every man on his party / and as for me, y haue so thought on it
that y slepte no slepe this night / and the more y thinke on it / the 40

more me semeth it is harde and doutefull / Also your self haue
 opened the difficultees any man may sey in this matier, aswele of
 thabidyng as of goyng, and haue seide wele, as me semeth, that in
 4 noon of those ij. is neither honour nor profit / and it behoueth to
 aulse som meane, as ye seide, to kepe your honour, and to eschewe
 the contrary / fforsothe my thought hath ben this night, and is yet /
 Vpon this meane with correccion / biseeching you humbly, if y say
 8 not wele, to pardone me. And this is the meane that moost may
 be with your honour, as me semeth / if any meane may be founde
 to take trews for a yere bitwene your Enemy and you / ¹And than
 by honour may ye reise the seege / And this tyme hangyng, ye may
 12 leue garrisons in this Reaume / and retourne your self this wynter
 in-to your owne Reaume, for it is long sith ye were there / and
 than may ye make a newe reise, bothe of people & tresour, and
 than in the newe ceason, whan the grounde is replenyssed with
 16 corne & gresse, than may ye come with grettir power than euir ye
 did / for it is no doute of / whan your people and sogettes se your
 grete desire and good entent, they will helpe you more than euir
 they did / ye haue sene wele the deuoir that your Enemyes haue
 20 made to haue socoure / and yet haue noon had / ner noon, y beleue,
 shalle haue, for if any they shold haue had, ye may thinke weel,
 seyng the long seege that ye haue holden, they shold haue had it
 by this / wherfore it is to be thought that, if they be weel re-
 24 membred heron, they wol be right glad of this trews / ffor they
 will thinke that, in that meane ceason, they shalle mowe haue some
 helpe of the cristen / and at the last assemble, his estates to take
 aduise of the guiding of his reaume. The maner hou men might
 28 come to this trews, is not yet by me wel aduised / but if it please
 you to conclude to this aduise, men may remembre the maner how /
 and come hider to you ageyn affir dyner / euery man to sey his
 aduise / Sir, suche is myn aduise at this tyme. I knowe no bettir,
 32 albeit that I am redy to be conformed to theym that y shalt here,
 yif bettir counsell which right lightly may be done" / The Turke,
 hering his knight and right trusty Counsellor thus speke, toke his
 wordes right agreeably / for he sawe wele that by, other meanes, with
 36 his honour might he not departe / a[n]d his abidyng was right
 damageable / He asked than of many other their aduise / and, for
 to aberge [so] the matier, euerichon folowed the same that the knyght
 had seide / And saide that he was fulle wise / for the departing of
 40 the Turke was not possible by noon othir meane without dishonour /

This Coun-
 cillor advises
 [1 ff. 57, bk.]
 a Truce for a
 year with the
 Christians;

and then a
 fresh attack
 with more
 men;

the way to
 get the Truce
 should be
 further
 discust.

The rest of
 the Council
 agree.

and dred moche that they might not gete the trews *with* their honour & pleasir. The Turke, that saw this conclusion yn nombre of opinions, & alle one / saide to them / “yet of the maner hou this trews might be / we nor noon of you haue spoken / wherfore y wol⁴ that, at iij. after non, eeche of you be here present / and that the meane while ye remembre eche one his party, how y may entre yn this matier to my honour, *without* shewing of any semblaunt of drede; and if the ¹meane might be founde, that it might be half by 8 their Request.” Thus eueri man departed til after dyner / and at the houre of iij. assembled there agein / and there shewed many resons and opinions / but hard it was, as they thought, to fynde hou this matier shold not come of the Turke, for they coude espie no 12 drede yn their Enemyes. whan the Turke, that moche desired to haue this thinge accomplisht, entred in-to his Tente / where as they alle were, & vnto hym did their dewte; & whan he was set in his chaier, he made them alle to sitte downe / & than he asked of 16 him that most pleased him, thauise of how he was remembered of this matier / that they were departed on / And this was one of his Capteynes, a passing wise man of werre / whiche answerd him in this maner / “Sir, ye shal ful porely be aduertised by me / for that 20 y haue litle knowlage in so high thinges / but sith that it pleasith you that y say in this matier what y haue thought and diuised, whiche is to litle effecte in regarde of that / that thies notable knyghtes herby shalle say / Natherles, y shalt shewe as y haue 24 thought, sith that ye be concluded to the trews, if ye may haue it / & wolde it were by the desire of your Enemyes, or at the lest half by their Request, whiche is an hard thinge to be done / for ye se not yn them no maner liklyhood touching this matier / If we had 28 any prisoners, notable folkes, outhur of them *without* or of them *withyn* / then were it litle maistrie to fynde the meanes by their oune request & labour / but that with not be / for we haue no suche. A nothir wey there is / *withyn* the place there is many noble and 32 wise lordes, knyghtes and squiers of those whiche be prisoners ther / And y can thinke they haue so many prisoners there, that they wold *with* good with be delyuerd of som of them, for spendyng of their vitale. Thus may ye sende vnto them for delyueraunce 36 of som of them, And in suche wise may the prisoners them self entre in langage *with* their maistirs, as it were of their owne mocione, for their delyueraunce / And thus, me thinketh, they may playnly touche of this matier to ffraunt, whiche, if he with, may 40

[1 leaf 58]

After dinner
the Turkish
Council
reassemble,and one of
them

advises that,

in order
to make the
proposal of
the Truce
come from
the Chris-
tians,they be askt
to set free
some of their
Turkish
prisoners,
who can
suggest a
Truce.

- surely breke this matier, and bring it to conclusion with the kynge
 his maister / And y can thinke, seyng the grete reason that they
 haue, & be closed yn this towne, they haue not had ¹their ease in [1 lf. 58, bk.]
- 4 alle thinge; and whan the saide fferaunt shall se a meane of youre
 departyng, to his honour, he wold be right glad to brynge it to that
 conclusion / for his honour shall be wele saued by this meane. An
 other way also, vnder your correccion: It is longe sith that kynge
- 8 fferabrace of Perce, that hath ben prisoner yn the handes of the Or, as King
Ferabras of
Persia is
prisoner in
Sicily, the
 kynge of Sizile, your enemy / and yet hath there ben no speche of
 his raunsome / ffor that ye trusted alway to recouer hym by
 strength, whiche, as me semeth, ye are fulle fer fro / ye may sende,
- 12 if it please you, to the kynge of Sizile, desiryng him to put him to Sultan can
propose to
ransom him,
 finauce / and if he wille entende ther-to / than shalle ye haue a
 good colour to sende of your folkes vnto the kynge your brother,
 whiche may be aduertised by them to breke this matier vnto the
- 16 kynge of Sizile, for a meane of his delyueraunce; and if he wille
 entende therto, ye may make a desire vnto him to haue a sauf-
 condite, for ij. or iij. notable knyghtes of youre house to go speke
 with youre brother for his delyueraunce / And by them may your
- 20 brother be weel aduertised in euery thinge touchyng this matier /
 And thus semeth me, by one of thies two weies ye may not faile /
 but this mocion may be made as though ye knewe no thing therof and let him
broach the
Truce.
 And that for the loue of youre brothir and of othir prisoners / and
- 24 at their grete request, ye shalle be enclynable to this trews, whiche
 is, as ye shalle make semblaunt, right contrary to your pleasir. I can,
 as for my parte, noon othir thing deuise / yf y bettir coude, y
 wolde right gladly shewe it vnto you, and to my lordes that here be /
- 28 yn whom y wote wele ye shalle fynde sadder aduise than yn me / I
 durst not refuse to sey myn opinion, sith that it pleased you so to
 ordeyne and commaunde me." Thus endid he his aduise. And
 the Turke asked forth of the remenaunt of his counselle that were /
- 32 hou it thought them of this matier / so were there many other
 meanes & mocions made amonges them / but, in conclusion, the
 Turke liked best the two first waies that his knight had meued / The Sultan
resolves to
 and saide that he coude not thinke by that / that he knewe yn
- 36 fferaunt, that he wold, be any cause or meane, haue a trews bitwene
 hym and the kynge his maister, without that he might se it more
 the profit & honour of his maister / than for his owne alleageaunce
 and ease / And therfore toke he this conclusion, to sende for a [2 leaf 59]
ask for a
safe-conduct,
- 40 sauffcondite, that his folkes might speke with fferabras his brother /

94 *The Turks' Proposal to ransom King Ferabras is laid before the King.*

and sends a
proposal to
the King of
Sicily,

to ransom
his brother,
the King of
Persia.

The Turkish
messengers
reach Naples.

The King of
Sicily

assembles
his Council,
and shows
them the
Sultan's
letters.

He appoints
one advocate
to argue for
the ransom,
and another
against it.

and by hym this matier to be opende / This conclusion was taken,
and letters sent to the kyng of Sizile by two kynges of armes / In
whiche letters was conteyned the loue that by naturall reason that
he aught to his brother, the kyng of Perce, whiche at that tyme 4
was his prisoner / and had ben a grete while / and right fayn wolde
he haue hym ageyn / if by any fynauce he might haue him / And
for this, if his wille were to put him to fynauce, the Turke his
brother wolde sone purvey for his delyueraunce, In asmoche as he 8
was taken in his quarelle & seruise / And for to procede in this
matier, the Turke requyred to haue sauffcondite for iij. or iiij.
notable knyghtes, of whom he sent the names yn his letters / Thus
were the letters delyuerd forth / and they sped them so weel that 12
in litle while they came to Naples, where as the kyng of Sizile
was / and some were they condited by noble folkes yn-to the place
where the kyng was / and anoone was it tolde the kyngé that
suche folkes were comen vnto hym from the Turke. the kyng 16
made them be brought vnto him, where they founde him wele
accompanied. the kynges of armes presented their letteres / and
the kyng of Sizile resceyued them, and redde theim, and sith
asked thofficers of armes if they had any othir thing in charge / 20
and they tolde their charge / whiche was suche yn substaunce as the
letters specified. & whan he hadde hird alle their message, the
kyng made them to be condite to their loggyng, and ther to be
wele acompanyed with alle the chere that men might make them. 24
on the morow aftir, he assembled his folkes of counselle, and many
of his Capteynes that were there with them, to whom he shewed
the letters that the Turke had sent hym / and the credence of the
letters / wherupone he asked their counself & aduise yn this matier / 28
and wold here it debated and concluded before him self / So there
were ij. notable men bifore him to do this / that one ordeyned to
susteyne the delyueraunce of his prisoner / and the tothir to con-
trary it / He that susteyneth the deliueraunce, shewed to the kyng 32
that this deliueraunce was profitable for hym, and the reasons why /
[¹ lf. 59, bk.] saying that his body was not ofte ¹in daunger / the delyueraunce of
kyng ffrabrace not helpe but to him / for ther was noon othir like
vnto him / also he was surely acompanyed / and of a long tyme 36
had not ben gretly annoied / and of liklyhood his strength sholde
rather encre[se] than empeyre. And the Turkes might was daily
dymnysshed and gretly damaged / wherfore him thought this
deliueraunce was moost profitable to the kyng / for with his 40

- raunsone sholde he be of more power to damage his enemyes / The
tothir knyght, hering what he had purposed, answerd to the con-
trary, shewyng that at that tyme the Turke, whiche was brother to
- 4 kynge ffrabrace, helde seege before the place that the kynge had
conquered vndir him / yn the whiche was enclosed the flour of
knyghthode of that Reaume, and in especialle they to whom he is
prisoner / whoos, of right, the prisoner is, and noon others / and if
- 8 it so fortune that the Towne were taken by strength, whiche god, of
his mercy diffende / if it were so / by the kynge of Perce, alle they
that were withyn shold be rescowed, whiche is more worth than
iiij. suche fynauces as he is able to pay / “And for to answeare to
- 12 this that ye haue seide, that none suffiseth to the deliuerance of
the saide prisoner, but the only body of the kyng; by that meane
that y say, ij. thousand noble men may be saue & brought agein by
hym. And to come to reason / who ought so weel to be bought
- 16 agein by hym, as they that toke hym, whos propre prisoner he is /
forsoothe noon, as me thinketh. Also remembre weel in what
perells and in what fortunes ye haue seen the kyng here present, &
souverayn lord, be in his tyme, whiche, if he were prisoner, shold
- 20 be in auenture euir to be had agein, if this kynge were deliuerd /
Thies thinges considered, if y were as the kyng, for no thing shold
he be delyuered / And whan it shalle please the kyng / vpone the
debates of vs two, that be but of litle effecte to the reasons of my
- 24 lordes that here be, he shalle here there aduise, and to do then
as him thinkith moost to his wele” / The kynge of Sizile, heryng
thise debates that were made, of good wille, and by noon hate, asked
- of him that spake last his aduise, whiche seide vnto him / that
- 28 glaſſy he wolde say it / sith it pleased him so to commaunde him,
whiche was this / that in no wise men ought not, nor might not
entre in-to this matier without thanise and counselle of fferaunt,
- whiche ¹was biseeged withyn the towne and hym, that now men
- 32 lightly might speke with hym, for the kyng might write vnto the
Turke, that without the aduise & counselle of fferaunt & Surnome,
to whom his brother was prisoner, he wold not procede in that
matier / and he thought be thise meanes the Turke shold be weel
- 36 content that the kynges folkes might go speke with fferaunt. And
ij. reasons he shewed / that meued him to gif this counselle / that
one is / that fferaunt is one of the wisist knightes of this Reaume,
whiche appereth weel by his werkes / And by this meane, if the
- 40 kyng sende vnto him of his folkes, he shalle trewly be asserteyned

The advocate
against the
raunsom

urges that
Ferant's man
took K. Fera-
bras,

and that
his release
would en-
danger the
King of
Sizily.

The King
of Sizily
resolves

that Ferant
must be con-
sulted;

[1 leaf 60]

and Prince
Philip,
who took
Ferabras
prisoner.

Letters to
this effect are
sent to the
Sultan,

who has in
the mean-
time been
harassd by
after attacks
from Sise.

[1 ff. 60, bk.]

Ferant says
he will make
a grand sally
next day.
Prince Philip
and Prince
David re-
joice.

of the demeanyng of fferaunt and of the Towne / and therafter
may he take counselle outhur of the deliuerance of his prisoner or
of the contrary / And the tothir reason that he shewed, was this /
that the seid prisoner had be taken twies by the handes of Surnome, 4
in the presence of fferaunt his maister / without whom, by reason to
holde trewly the right of armes, the seide prisoner might net be de-
lyuered : "suche is the ordre of right and Iustice in dedes of armes /
as y haue alway vndirstande / And as yet y can thinke of the saide 8
prisoner, there hath be made no departyng bitwene them, nor noon
accorde nor apoyntement / and therfore, shortly to conclude my
matier / me thinkith, without their aduise it [were best] to procede
no farther." Thus endid he / & it thought vnto the kynge and his 12
counselle that his aduise was right good & Resonable / And then
were letters writen and sent vnto the Turke, vndir suche fourme as
thei were concluded by the counselle / as ye haue herde. Thus were
the messangers delyuered, and had grete giftes, and were surely con- 16
dite, vnto the kynges power / and at their retourne agein vnto the
Turke, they founde the hoste gretly troubed / for greuously had
they ben assailed by them with-yn the Towne / and in especiale
toward the Turkes loggyng / for there were made alway the grettist 20
assawtes ; and trouthe it was, that they had ben so hourelly assailed
sith the departing of the messangers, that they neuir might be at
leiser to assemble in no counselle to-gidir / and diuers tymes wolde
they haue short termes of trews & communicacione with fferaunt / 24
but he wold neuir answeere hem to any suche matier, for he had no
desire to dele nor trete with hem / wherof thei were fult¹ soroufult.
So long contynued this maner of demeanyng, that the Turkes
folkes were right very / and endured grete payne & labour / 28
fferaunt, that was fulle wise, remembred weel this, & thought weel
it were litle maistry to annoy them / and thought he had ben idle
a gret while, and not mette with his enemyes / and so he saide to
his folkes, with a merry contenance / "I se weel we be so presed 32
on with oure enemyes to haue a treetee, whiche lettith not but yn vs,
for we may haue alle that we can resonably aske / And it is longe
sith oure neighbours & frendes herde any thing of vs, that knowe not
weel where we are / therfore it is good that to-morowe we make vs 36
to be knownen" / Alle they that were yn the place were ioyfulle of
this wordes, and in especiale Le Surnome and Athis / for in dedes
of armes were thei neuir satisfied / and so answerd they vnto their
maister, it shold be right wele done. "so helpe me god," seide 40

- fferaunt, "I thinke to-morowe, with the helpe of god, to take suche
 acqueyntaunce amonges them, that they shalle not alle be pleased /
 for it is longe sith we made them any grete assaute / and therefore
 4 go eueri man to his reste / and be vp to-morowe vpone the point of
 the day / and eueri man serue god / and we shall do aftir as weel as
 we may" / Thus eueri man went to reste him. And that night
 made fferaunt al his smaH ordenaunce to be brought toward the Ferant
 8 Turkes loggyng / and on that side of the Towne made he to lay his
 grete Bombardes, ageinst the comyng of his enemyes / and there
 made he to be kepte moo fayrer & sure watche. In the mornyng / musters his men early,
 toward the poynt of day, were his folkes assembled about him / so
 12 ordeyned he a good company, as him thought sufficiant y nough
 to discomfite the wacche that was bifore / for to wyne the Turkes
 Bombardes, for they thought it was light y-nogh to do / and of the and makes Princes Philip and David captains of the first Battalion.
 16 knewe he that corageously they wolde do this entirprise / And the
 remenaunt of his folkes he gnyded him self, for he thought the
 first company shold haue nede of releef: thus ordeyned he the
 assawte / And whan it was purueide, Le Surnome & Athis ordeyned
 20 their folkes redy at the gate that was assigned vnto them / than
 made fferaunt the yate ¹ to be opende, and went out / and ascried [1 leaf 61]
 the Turkes wacche, and they wende fult weel to haue diffendid
 them / but their diffence litle auailed / for Surnomes company and
 24 Athis put as many to the swerde as they might gete, without They kill all the Turks they take,
 takyng of any prisoners. This first company passith forth with so
 grete corage & hardinesse that, er the Turke and his folkes might
 be armed, thei came to his logging, killyng and sleying alle that
 28 euir mette with them / and ouirthrewe Tentés and Pavilions; and
 did so moche in armes that eueri man fled fro them / whan fferaunt
 sawe them passe so fer / he knewe it shold be grete auenture of and go so far forward that Ferant has to march in support.
 their retourne / and therefore toke he his feliship, & went aftir them /
 32 and passed by the place where the wacche had ben, and where
 moche of the Turkes ordenaunce lay, whiche he made labores, bothe
 men & wommen, haue in to the Towne / whil he went to releef his
 first company. and this assaute dured til the sonne risyng / and
 36 there was the noise and the crie so grete / that men might not haue
 herde the thondre / and the Turkes drewe them alle to the Turke,
 so grete a multitude that fferaunt saw wele his folkes might not
 long endure there / wherfore he made to blowe retrete; and by He blows the retreat.
 40 than had his first company taken so many prisoners, that they were

almost as many as them self / and ther were many of them noble
 men / and of the *Turkes* counsell, suche as had ben at the *communica-*
cion of the trews / whan they withdrewe them / Surnome & Athis
 were the last / and put their folkes & their prisoners bfore them / 4
 and so moche endured they than, that it was meruaile; and had
 not fferant their good maister than releued them, they had neur
 retourned agein in-to the Town / and it was meruaile to wite hou
 many Surnome & Athis slowe at their retrayte / thus entred they 8
 in-to the Towne with alle their prisoners, to the grete damage and
 losse of the Turke, & litle vnto them. In this grete brewte and
 trouble, came agein the *heraldes*, that had ben messangers from the
 Turke vnto the kyng of Sizile / and sawe the feeldes fulle of men of 12
 armes, & had herd the noise and the crie more than ij. myle
 thens / This auenture turned to grete damage & displeasir to the
 Turke & his company / for thei sawe weel at length, by litle & litle
 their power sholde empaire / for whan they with-drewe them they 16
 [1 ff. 61, bk.] knewe wele what Losse they had / for they founde of their folkes
 moo then xv C. dede, and moo then ij C. prisoners taken. If the
 200, and have
 slain 1500
 Turks.
 Turke had grete sorowe, it is no question, for the losse was turned
 vpon a grete party of the best of his hous / He coude not thinke 20
 that Le Surnome nor Athis were any mortalle men, but ij. thinges
 sente doune by the god of the cristen / for his destruction / for him
 semed, and alle othir, that there might not be so moche worthynesse
 yn the body of any erthely man, as he founde in them that day / 24
 thus ranne² the renomee of them thorough alle the hoste / Thus
 whan the Turke was withdrawen, the *heraldes*, that y haue tolde
 you of bfore / entred in-to his Tente / and deliuerd him their
 28
 lettres, whiche he redde / and then made alle them to come vnto
 him, that were of his counselle / at that tyme beyng present / than
 made he to come afore him agein the messangers / and commaundid
 them to telle suche credence as they had from the kynge of Sizile /
 and they made their report weel and wisely, as they that were 32
 of grete discrecion / whiche was suche as ye haue herde before,
 accordyng to thentent of the lettres / And to make shorte tale, the
 Turke agreed to the request of the kyng of Sizile right gladly / and
 36
 hadde good cause / for eueri day he sawe his strenght empayre / So
 he made the Saufconditz to be made vp for suche names as the
heraldes had brought / and in alle haste the Saufconditz, made and
 sealed, were sent agein vnto the kynge of Sizile. Ye may weel

They re-enter
 Sizile, with all
 their prison-
 ers,

[1 ff. 61, bk.]
 200, and have
 slain 1500
 Turks.

The Herald
 from the
 King of Sicily
 reach the
 Sultan,

who agrees
 to the King's
 request,

and gives the
 safeconducts
 he want.

² MS. *reaume*.

thinke, that whan fferant and his company were entred agein in-to
the Towne, they made grete ioy of the goode auenture that god had
youden them that day. And whan he shold go to dyner, he made
4 as many knyghtes and noble men sitt at his boorde as might haue
Rome / and ij. boordes beside / amonges whiche company, Surnome
and Athis were not forgotten, of whom he had more ioie than of
any ertlyly men / and not *without* cause / for he had seen hem do
8 in armes that day yneredibly / for they had taken *with their awne*
handes vpon a iij.^{xx} prisoners / and alwey deliuerd hem to othir
for to kepe / while they contynued in bataile, *without* hauyng any
regarde or remembraunce to couetise / as they that desired no
12 thinge but to gete worship / and to do seruice to god in their
cristen feith / for euerich thought in his owne mynde that they
had y-nough in their owne contrees. hou be it, their ma'ners re-
sembled no thinge kynges sones; they demeaned them liker pouere
16 gentilmen / ffor albe-it there was noon so honorable as they two /
yet for no fortune or auenture that couth befall them / they wolde
neuir take on them to be knyghtes, excusyng them alway by the
symplenesse of their birthe / and they hadde reason not to take on
20 them the ordre of knyghthode / for they were knyghtes long before /
hou be it, nouthur of them vndirstode of other / what birthe they
were of / And fferant their maister, at his dyner, reported to them
their outrageous hardinesse, in maner blamyng them of that they
24 had done that day / for in abidyng them had he almoost lost grete
part of his people / and if he coude haue thought that they wolde
thus haue be rewled, he wold rather haue lefte them kepyng the
Towne / than haue had them forth to the assaute. thei answerde
28 no thinge vnto their maister / but were al shamefast of his wordes,
and thought that a nothir tyme they wolde not do so / but when
they were in like caas agein / that purpose was alle lost and for-
goten / Aftir dyner, fferant made to visite his prisoners / and
32 founde that he had a party of the grettist & moost prevy of the
Turkes counselle, wherof he was right ioifulle, as reason was, and
made them to be kepte, eueri man aftir his worship / and thus
abideth he in his place, all ioyfulle & assured of his enemyes / til
36 that he herde tidinges of the kyng of Sizile / as ye shalle here / ye
haue here before weel vndirstande hon the Turke sent vnto the
kyng of Sizile saufcondite for iiij. of his knyghtes to come to
fferaunt / This saufcondite was borne vnto the kyng by the same
40 heraldes that late had ben *with* him fro the Turke, which Sauf-

Prince Philip
and Prince
David, single-
handed, took
above 60
prisoners.

[1 leaf 62]

But Ferrant
reproaches
them for their
dangerous
hardihood.

The Turkish
sateconducts
are given to
the King of
Sicily,

who sends 4
knights to
Ferant.

[1 lf. 62, bk.]

These 4 Sici-
lian knights

tell Ferant of
the Sultan's
wish to ran-
som K. Fera-
bras,

and the
King's wish
for Ferant's
advice.

Ferant tells
the Sicilian
knights of
the prowess
of Princes
Philip and
David.

condite the kynge resceyued, and made it to be redde / & founde
that it was good & sure / Than purvaide he the iiij. knyghtes to go
to fferaunt / and they toke leue of the kynge & the quene, & of their
faire doughter, & of alle the ladies & gentilwomen / & tolde them 4
whider they wente / and eche of them made their recommenda-
cions / And faire Iolante forgate not to recommaunde hir to
Surnome; and she and alle the ladies seide amonges them / that
fferaunt was a notable knyght, and honorably had borne him, and 8
was worthy to be renommed of alle othir that they knewe / On the
morow erly the knyghtes departid, and spede them so, that withyn
lital while they came to fferaunt, of whos comyng he ¹was right
ioyfuH / for they were his special frendes / & thought wele that 12
they had brought some grete tidynges / he brought them to their
loggynge / and made them all the chere that was in his power /
& when they were rested a lital while, fferaunt and they went to
counselle in-to a chanbr / and there tolde they him eueri worde, 16
hou the Turke had sent vnto the kynge of Sizile / and hou the
matier was debated bfore the kynge, for the delyueraunce of kynge
fferaunce / and the causes that bothe thies knyghtes shewed / and
hou it was determined by the kynge and alle his counselle that, 20
without thavice and agrement of him, the kynge wolde answeere to
no thyng of this matier, for suche causes as had ben elegged bfore /
whiche thei declared and shewed vnto fferaunt / And whan he had
herde thise tidynges, he thought the matier was of grete peyce / 24
wherfore he wolde make no sodeyn answeere, but made his delay
vpone Surnome, sayng that the matier touched him, and that he
ought to be called to this counselle / And this they apointed an
houre, at whiche tyme Le Surnome shold be ther / and fferaunt 28
seide that he was right wise, & might wele be called to counsell in
eueri matier aswele as in that / bothe for his hie wisdomme & grete
vertu / and than tolde he vnto tho knyghtes of Sizile of the grete
worthinesse of Surnome and Athis, & hou he sawe neur noon 32
comparable vnto them, but that Surnome passed alle other / hou be
it, Athis folowed moche the condicions of Surnome, bothe in honour
& largesse / and in habilitie of his persone; and fferaunt saide there
was no knight in the world might avaunte him of the company of 36
Such two as he was serued with. Than he told hem hou le Sur-
nome receyued Athis vnto his company / and in what maner he
came / and hou ther was in Surnome noon envie / for he wold so
gladly reporte the worthinesse and prowes of his felawe, that by his 40

maner and speche it semed he thought him self, nor noon othere,
comparable vnto him / and reputed him self right ewrous that god
had sent him suche a felawe / and than reherced he grete armes that
4 the two felawes had done duryng the sege / and the drede that
their enemyes had of theim, and of the grete comfort and hardinesse
that his company toke in theim: and thorough their grete worthi-
nesse the Towne was double encoraged / Thies tidynges tolde he to
8 þe knyghtes of Sizile, ^[1 leaf 63] wherof they thought grete meruaile, and
luled for trouthe that god had sente them this meruailous fortune,
for sauacion of the realme / And so shewed it weel; "for they that
no thinge were worth / thorough them be at this day as valiaunt as
12 men can fynde / and they that no thinge dred vs, be at this day
the moost failyng and wreechid nacion that lyueth; and parde this
werke may not be without miracle." with suche language passed
forth the day til the houre that they had taken to assemble agein
16 in counselle, at whiche tyme Le Sournome was sent for to come
amonges them / and at his comyng was the matier alle newly
reherced / like as ye herde before, seyng vnto Le Surnome, that the
kyng had gyuen them in charge to haue his aduise & agrement
20 thereyn. fferaunt had weel remembered the matier / and seid ther
vnto the knyghtes, "ye se weele in what caas we be / and the
grettest harme that we endure, is the prisoners that ben here, þat
gretely dispende our vitaile / hou be it, y thanke god we be yet
24 resonably weel purvaide / wherfore it shalle not nede the kyng to
haue no drede of vs / but that we shalle be able to abide them
lenger than shal be their ease to lye aboute vs / & y purpose to put
those that be noble men to fynauce / and to put the tothir to
28 dethe; and by this meane shalle oure vitaile endure vs lenger. And
as touchyng your charge of puttyng kynges flirabrace to fynauce /
y shal sone say as y thinke / suche thinge may befall that the
kynges wold for no thing had put him to ffynauce. It is a faire
32 thinge whan he hath in his hande the same that is sufficient to
delyuere him / if the caas so fortune. But if it were the kynges
pleasir, vpon good apointment and good hostages, to enlarge him
for a terme / peraenture for his deliuerance may be founde peas
36 bitwene the kyng & the Turke / The visage of man makith vertu /
for if he be present, he may more lightly fynde frenship in his
brother and other frendes / than if he be stille in prison; for his
brother, seyng him in that daunger, shalle haue gretter pite and
40 compassion of him / than he hath now / wherfore me thinketh his

The Knights
of Sicily
recognize
God's hand
in the help
sent.

Prince Philip
attends Fer-
ant's Council.

Ferant pro-
poses to let
his noble
prisoners be
ransomed, and
the others
kild.

Ferabras
must be only
enlarged for
a time.

enlargissing, surely made, shalle do but profit vnto the Realme."

After that fferaunt had thus seide / the knyghtes wolde wite the
 [1 lf. 63, bk.] opinion of Surnome, whiche saide: "my lorde my ¹maister, that
 here is, me thinkith hath taken the best way / & be thus doying / 4
 the kyng shall not be differred from his prisoner, but haue him
 alway stille in daunger / and if it please the kyng of his grace, I
 wolde of one thing beseche him / that if king fferabras be enlarged
 for any terme / that or his departyng, he be sworne be his lawe, 8
 and the creance that he holdeth, that if there be any persone
 withyn the landes & possessions of his brother or of his / that hath
 any cristen prisoner that hath not ben in this werre / but that
 hath ben taken in passing or in goyng on pilgrimage / that thei 12
 may be delyuerd franke & quite, without constreynyng them to
 renay their feith / and also that fro hensforth there be no more
 oppression nor hurt done to the poure labores & simple folkes of
 this lande / and in this is the Raunsome, for my part, that y wille 16
 desire / As for the remenaunt, belengeth vnto my lorde my maister,
 that here is" / fferaunt coude passing grete thanke to Surnome, for
 his request / and thought weel that grete noblesse, fredom & pite,
 mened him to that remembraunce. The knyghtes of Sizile saide / 20
 that suche reporte as they had founde with fferaunt & Surnome they
 sholde make vnto the [Turkes], & thought weel that they wold be
 agreable to alle this, without contraryyng of any thinge / Afir these
 wordes they went out of the chambre / and came into the halle, 24
 were was many a noble man / fferaunt sent for some of his
 prisoners / for to wite if they wolde be brought to any ffynauce /
 amonge the whiche was one or two that had ben at the conclusion
 that the Turke had taken in his counselle, touchyng the trews / 28
 whan they came bfore fferaunt, they toke him a-part, and saide
 vnto him: "my lorde, if it might be done, and with your pleasir,
 we wolde fayne, if we might / speke with kyng fferabras your
 prisoner / bothe for the meanes of his delyueraunce & oures; we 32
 thinke to fynde suche a meane as shalle be grete weel vnto this
 Realme / and therfore remembre you / for we thinke yn this ye
 shal do grete seruice vnto the kyng your maister." fferaunt,
 heryng this knyghtes thus speke, whiche by semyng were men of 36
 gret honour, called vnto him the knyghtes of Sizile / and made
 them to reherce agein in their presence like as ²they had seide vnto
 him. And whan the knyghtes of Sizile had herde them / they
 withdrewed them, & counseled a lital to-gedre / and thought, seyng 40

Prince Philip
thinks King
Ferabras
should be
sworn to free
all Christian
prisoners in
Turkish
hands,

and to stop
all oppression
of the poor.

Some of
Feraunt's pri-
soners

ask to be
allowd to
talk with
K. Ferabras
about his
ransom and
their own.

what they had saide, there conde no thinge but weel falle of their
spekyng with kyng ffrabrace / than called they agein the prisoners
vnto them / and asked them what hostage they wold lay for them /
4 and they saide it sholde be harde for them to lay suche hostages as
fferaunt shold be content with / but, and it pleasid him, that one of
them might go to the Turke, and that othir abide in hostage, on
his lif / he thought it sholde suffice / fferaunt and the knyghtes
8 accorded herto / And thus that one of them is departed vnto the
Turke, whiche was right fer thens / and tolde the Turke alle the
maner how his felawe and he had done with fferaunt and with the
tothir knyghtes of Sizile, that were sent to fferaunt from the kynge,
12 whiche were accorded vpon good hostages, to lete his felawe and
him go to kynge ffrabrace / whan the Turke herde this, he was
right glad / and thought the matier was weel bigonne to breke to
his honour / for eueri man might weel thinke, that what so euir
16 his brother or the tothir prisoners did / was for their owne deliuer-
aunce / and not for the profit of the Turke, nor at his request / so
alle thinge was concluded to the pleasir of þe knyghtes prisoners /
and suche hostage delyuered as fferaunt was content with / The
20 Turke charged his knyghtes, and praied them to employe wele this
matier / and to shewe his brother playnly what case he stode yn /
for he wende neuir to haue seen the Houre of his departyng, with
his honour and lif / Thus departed the knyghtes, and came agein
24 to fferaunt / and in alle haste were their promyses accomplished /
and they redy to departe and go with the knyghtes of Sizile / On
the morow erly, the knyghtes of Sizile toke leue of fferaunt and of
alle the company, to whom they seide a lowde / that it was the
28 moost honorable company that was that day vpone the erthe / &
aught moost to be renowned in alle honour / sayng that the kyng
thanked them alle, as them that he was asmoche biholden vnto, as
euir was prince vnto his suggesttes, praing them alle way to contynue
32 their high & good corage / Than seide there many, with an high
voice, “say vnto the kynge, oure souneray[n] lord / that for vs he
make no tretce nor apointement to his preiudice / for, bettir
pleasith vs this lif, with suche payne as we haue, than euir did any
36 dauncyng Iustes or any othir disporte.” The knyghtes answerd /
“ye may be sure that god wolle gif you grace to departe out of this
place with honour, and then shalle ye se the ladies, where as ye
shalle be welcome / and right wele recomforted / & so haue they
40 grete cause / and wele y wote, whan ye come / we that no thing haue

They propose
as hostages
half their
number.

One Turkish
party goes to
the Sultan,
and reports
proceedings.

They return
to Ferant,

and start with
the Sicilian
messengers,

[11. 64, bk]

done in armes, shal be litil set by / but alle out cast" / Aftir thise
 wordes, they toke leue and departed, seyng to alle the company /
 that they trusted within litil while they shold here good tidinges.
 Than spedde they so wele their iourney, that they came sone vnto 4
 the kyng, which grete desire had to here tidynges of fferaunt, & of
 this Towne, and of alle the company therin, & also to knowe what
 opinions fferaunt helde in such message as he sent hem, touchyng
 the delyueraunce of the Turkes Brother. It was not long aftir 8
 their comyng, but the kyng made them come vnto hym / whiche
 tolde hym hou they had sped in alle thinges like as is a-boue
 rehersed / and howe they had by thauice of fferaunte / brought ij.
 knightes prisoners in their company / for they thought that the 12
 kyng, by heryng of their entent, might no thinge lese / And also
 shewed the kyng ferther of the opinion of fferaunt and of Sur-
 nome, whiche the kyng toke right wele in gre, & thought the
 enlargyng of kyng ffrabrace bettir and more prope[r] for him than 16
 his clere deliueraunce / Thau sent he forthe knightes prisoners, and
 asked them what their entent was / & they seide / that if it pleased
 him, they wolde speke with kyng ffrabras. Than sent the kyng for
 alle his counselle / and shewed them the message of his knightes 20
 prisoners / and it thought them alle, that it was best to lete them
 speke with kyng ffrabrace a-part, or yn what wise thei wolde / for
 thei thought their speche might litil hurte the kyng / but rather
 of lyklihode be to his pleasir & profit, seyng the cas they were yn / 24
 And assone as this counselle was thus concluded, kinge ffrabrace
 was enformed how thies folkes were come to speke with hym / and
 hou the king was wele content that they shold speke with him alle
 at their pleasir / and that they shold abide a day or ij., or as longe 28
 as it pleased him to telle him of their tidynges / and wherfore
 [1 leaf 65] they desired to speke with hym. kyng ffrabrace, that sith his
 takyng had herde no tidynges of his Brothir, nor of noon othir
 frende of his / was right ioyfulle to here tidinges of them; & yet 32
 the more, that the kyng was pleased that he shold speke with them
 a-part / for he wist weel he shold be the bettir, assertyned of alle
 tidynges / than were thei sone brought vnto him. when they sawe
 him, they salowed him, accordyng to their dewte, the teeres falling 36
 downe from their visages, for pite of his longe enprisonment / And
 whan he espied that / he was in grete drede to here som euyl
 tidynges of his brothir or of his Nevewe; & anone as they that
 brought them were departed / he called them vnto hym / & asked 40

and soon
 reach the
 King of
 Sicily.

The Sicilian
 Knights tell
 their King of
 Ferant,

and his pro-
 posal that
 K. Ferabras
 shall be only
 enlarged.

The Turkish
 Messengers

are allowd
 to see K.
 Ferabras.

- them of alle their tidynge / for seth he was first prisoner, herde he
 neur tidynge / ffor the kynge of Sizile had so ordeyned / ffor him He asks for
their tidings.
 thought / that if men shold telle him good tidynge, for his partie it
 4 was not couenable / & what so euer any man tolde him of the wele
 of the cristen partie, he wold not haue bileued it / but thought it
 had ben rather seide yn maner of avaunt / and therfore the kynge
 had ordeyned that no man shold telle him no tidynge / wherfore
 8 he was now the more desirous to here of their tidynge, & askede
 theim of his brothir, & of his newewe, & of alle their armee. and
 they tolde him of alle the certaynte / & of the cristen flete / hou it
 fortunued amonges them by tempest; hou they were scatterd / & The Turkish
Messengers
tell K. Fera-
bras how
Prince Or-
kays captured
Prince David,
 12 many of them drowned, & a vesselle of theirs brake vpon the ryvage,
 even aforne the Turkes Tentis, and many of them came to londe on
 lyue, whiche were slayn alle at their landyng, sauf one, that Orkays,
 the Soudans sone, toke with his owne handes, and of his deliuer-
 16 aunce / and how Orkays was takyn by him aftirward, & deliuered,
 as is afore reherced / and than they tolde him of alle the worthy-
 nesse of them withyn the towne / and in especial of him pat was
 taken by Orkays, and of his felawe, Le Surnome, whiche passeth
 20 alle othere; & tolde him of the losse that his brothir had had sith he
 lay aboute the Towne / aswelle by them of the cuntre, as of them
 withyn the Towne, wherthorugh his folkes might neur be out of
 harneys, nor all-moost had neur rest / and yet were they neuer the
 24 nerre, by ought they coude se, of their conquest, but rather ferther
 & ferther / than ¹they tolde him what direccion had ben taken [1 lf. 65, bk.]
 bothe by the Turke and by his counselle / and hou, if he might haue
 departid before this tyme with his honour, he had be gone long or
 28 this / but he coude fynde noon othir meane but this / Than tolde
 they him alle the charge that they had from the Turk vnto hym
 self, & of hem alle. king firabrace, hering thies tidynge, was
 gretly abasshed, seyng that in so litel while the worlde was
 32 chaunged with them / for a-boute the tyme of his takyng, their
 enemyes were in suche discourge that thei durst not wele be seen
 at no scarmyssh / yet neuertheles thies tidynge moche displeased
 him not / for he sawe wele therby som profit might growe to his
 36 deliuerance / whiche he desired our alle thing; so toke they
 amonges them the best conclusion that they coude, to conduyte this
 matier to the pleasir of his brothir and to the honour of him self,
 and desired to haue certaine of the kynge of Siziles seruautes, and
 40 Counselle to speke with him / and with suche as had be sent vnto but sees that
things may
work to set
him free.
He asks for
Sicilians to
confer with
him.

K. Ferabras
tells the Sici-
lian Knights

that his
brother, the
Sultan, pro-
poses to
ransom him,
and make a
Truce with
the King of
Sicily.

The Sicilians
say the King

will only
enlarge him
for a time,

him from his brothir / This came to the knowlage of the kynge of
Sizile, and he assigned those same that he had sent bifore to
fferaunt, to knowe his aduise and counselle / and whan thei were
comen to kinge ffrabrace, he seide vnto them yn this manere / 4
“ffaire lordes, the cause that I haue sente vnto the kynge to speke
with some of his counselle is this / ye knowe wele that y haue ben,
as me thinkith, right long a prisoner, to my grete annoy / ye se here
also thies two knightes, that be prisoners aswel as y / hou be it, 8
they haue not contynued so long, yet are they gretly annoyed, as it
shewith wele by that y shalle shewe vnto you / they haue remembrid
for their deliuerance, and haue ioyned me yn the matier with
theim / for this that they thinke the Turke wille be sonner con- 12
fourmable to any resonable apointment for my wele, than for
theires, by cause y am his brothir; and y shal telle you what they
haue aduised me: It is, that y shold make a request to be put to
ffynauce, and by meane therof the Turke shold be content to take 16
trewes for half a yere, or a yere, with the kyng of Sizile & alle his /
wherby the sege shold be reised, and prisoners delyuerd, aswele of
one part as of othir / and by this meane bothe parties sholde ease
them for that ceason / whiche, as me thinketh, sholde be a speciaH 20
wele and comfort vnto this Reaume, that hath so long contynued
yn werre. ¹This are the mocions that they made vnto me, whiche
is to me right pleasaunt, if they coude haue the power to bring it to
the same conclusion with my lord, my Brother / wherof y haue 24
grete doute, seyng that he lith at the sege bifore his Towne, that
but late was wonne from hym / Neuirtheles, if it please the kynge
of Sizile to entende this matier, I wold employ me to the same
entent / and require alle my frendes to giff the Turke counselle to 28
the same” / whan the knyghtes of Sizile had herd this mocione of
kyng ffrabras, they seide vnto hym / “fforsothe, sir, or this tyme
we haue herde the kyng, oure souuerayn Lord, say / that his entent
was neuir to deliuer you till the warres were ended bitwene the 32
Turke, your brother and him, without ye were rescowed by force /
hou be it, we knowe not whether he wold be content, vpon good
hostages, to enlarge you at your request, for to fynde some tetry of
peas betwene your Brother and him, whiche thinge we alle, his com- 36
pany, [desire]. And if vpon this wele ye wille speke and charge vs,
therwith, we wol make report vnto the kynge therof, and othirwise
not” / Kynge ffrabrace helde longe vpon his vttir delyuerance /
But the knyghtes of Sizile wold in no wise agree therto, seyng that 40

they were, alle be it they were not worthy, of the kynges counselle /
 "and if we shold gif him avise of youre delyueraunce, and not
 assured of peas, we were not trewe vnto him; wherfore be sure we
 4 wille neur speke therof as long as we lyue, without the warres be and then only if the war is stopt.
 ended / But if that were so, we wold right gladly employ vs to your
 request / and now wille for your enlargyng, vndir suche fourme as
 we haue seide you / trustyng the sonner to come therby to the weel
 8 of peas / ffor we be sure ye wille more largely employ you therto, ye
 beyng in daunger, than if ye were at your liberte." ¶ Afir alle
 thies wordes, he trusted to come to his delyueraunce. Natheles,
 kyng Eirabrace was content that they shold speke to the kyng
 12 for his enlargyng. The knyghtes seide, that with right god wille
 they wold so do / And thus departed and came vnto the kyng of
 Sizile, and made their report, as ye haue herde / and founde the
 kyng enclynable y-nough to entende to thise matiers, seyng the
 16 counselle that he had hadde / and in abregging this matier without
 moo wordes, they were concluded that, vpon good hostages, suche as
 the kyng of Sizile was pleased with / that kyng Eirabrace was
 enlarged and departed from the kyng of Sizile / of whom he toke K. Erabras is set free for a time,
 20 his leue, ¹and of the quene and of their fair doughtir / & of alle the [1 lf. 66, bk.]
 ladies & gentilwomen. The kyng made him honourably to be
 condyte / And so wele sped he him / that in litil while he came to
 the Turke / whiche made him right grete chere / and so did alle and goes to his brother, the Sultan.
 24 they that were there with him / this night was he gretly fested and
 welcomed of his Brothir, and had moche talkyng to-gedir / for he
 was a worthy knight, a passing wise man in grete matiers. So
 founde he his Brother alle of othir opinion than he lefte him /
 28 a[n]d so did he alle them that he spake with; wherof he had grete
 mervaille. In litil while knewe he alle the pleasir of his brothir /
 and sawe the maner of the sege / whiche thought him right
 - straunge. He sawe the fersnesse of them withyn the Towne / and
 32 herd reported the grete damagis that they had done to the Turke
 and to alle his company: the prowesse of Surnome, and Athis his
 felawe, was often rehersed vnto him. Thus many tidynges herd
 he / but noon to the honour of his brothir, nor of his partie, wherof
 36 he was right sorowfuH, and thought wele in him self that it was
 nedefull to haue a longe trews / for those folkes were discouraged in
 alle pointes. Than put he him in diligence to this trews / and othir
 notable folkes, and laboured it as shortly as they coude, so that the
 40 trews was taken bytwene them for a yere / and whan the surtees He works for a Truce; and one is arranged for a year.

Prince Philip
has happily
changed the
state of
Sicily.

[¹ leaf 67]

The King of
Sicily sends
for Ferant,
and Princes
Philip and
David.

They come,

and he joy-
fully wel-
comes them.

So do the
Queen and
the Ladies,

were made, sworne, and ensealed, the Turke departed from the
seege / & made alle prisoners to be yolden agein, aswele of one
party as of othir, saving kyng ffrabrace, whiche was but enlarged.
And for asmoche as fferaunt and his company hadde moo prisoners 4
than the Turke had / he had in recompense a C. thousand bes-
autes / and eueri besaunt worth a Docket / and, beside that, the
Turke deliuered agein ij. Townes / and deliuerd to the pouere folkes
of those Townes alle that they had lost / ¶ Now hath the Reaume 8
of Sizile endured this ij. yere yn grete payne and mysery / But sith
the comyng of Surnome it began alle othirwise to turne. ¶ Thus
departed the seege from byfore the Towne, to the grete honour of
the kynge of Sizile, and of them withyn. thorough alle the Reaume 12
This trews was cried & pub[li]ssed / wherof Surnome & Athys were
right sory / for they thought a long terme to be a yere in peas /
seyng the warres be not ended; and they purposed not to departe
before the ende of the warres. The kynge of ¹Sizile, that saw 16
him thus yn peas for a yere, bithought him what he might do alle
that ceason / where of a longe while afore he had not ben idle so
gretly / and so he sent for fferaunt, whom he desired moche to se /
for moche he thought him bounden vnto him / and praied him that 20
he wolde bringe *with* him bothe his seruantes, for moche desired
he to se them, for the grete renome they were of; and so did alle
they of his court, bothe ladies & gentilwomen, and knyghtes &
squyers, & alle othir / Anon as fferaunt had resceyued his letter to 24
come to the kyng, and afir that he had departed right largely
with the noble of his company / so that they alle were wele content /
he wente in alle haste to the kynge / to whom it is not to be asked
if he were welcome / where at his comyng the kyng toke him in 28
his armes, seyng / “my frende, ye haue don so moche for me and
myn honour, that y am alle youre” / Than toke he Surnome in his
armes, and [had] of hym ynly grete ioy / than fferaunt shewed Athys
vnto him, of whom he had herde so moche worship / & then he in 32
like wise welcomed him fulle honourably / seyng: “what shal y
sey vnto you, faire lordes / ye thre be the right arme and diffence
of my reaume” / Afir this, fferaunt & his company went vnto the
quene, and ladies & gentilwomen, whiche fulle honourably and ioi- 36
fully welcomed them / And moche was Athys loked on amonges
hem / for they had not sene him bifore / and they seide that god
had gyuen him grete grace / for heryng sey / his worthines was
meruailous / and his habilitie suche *pat* there was none comparable 40

- to him, saf le Surnome, that passed al the worlde. This day passed forth in pleasir and in disporte / and every day after they disported them with the ladies and gentilwomen yn alle honour. The kynges and Princess Iolante.
- 4 doughter, þat was so faire, as ye haue herde bifore / was right glad to haue thies gentilmen in hir company, without thinkyng of any harme or of any grete loue / hou be it, and hir fortune were to marye / peraventure she wold a sholde resemble one of them two /
- 8 and in especial, Le Surnome. & if she had knowen that he had be either a kynges sone, or a grete prynce, she wolde haue gyuen hir herte vnto hym a-fore alle othir / But in asmoche as she thought he was but of smalle reputacion in regarde to hir estate, she had no
- 12 suche ymaginacion, but ¹only to be accompanied with them in alle honorable disportes, and to make them frendly chere more than any othir / for the grete renome they were of, and for the good seruisse they had done to hir fadir / Thus endured they a grete
- 16 while in makyng Iustes, and turnays, and alle other disportes, for they had no thing ellis to do / And yn every thinge Le Surnome & Athis passed alle othir / Now leuyth the tale a while to speke of the kyng of Sizile and of his company / that restith them this
- 20 wynter, as ye haue herde, and retourneth to speke of the Turke, of his Brother, and of their company. [*Illumination: March of Sultan, Knights, &c.*]
- A**ccordyng to suche apointment as was taken, the Turke The Sultan withdraws, weary, to his biggest town in Sicily,
- 24 departed fro the seege and alle his company, & drewe him in to the gretest towne that he helde at that tyme, that he had conquered in Sizile / so very and trauailed with the warres, that almost he might be no veryer, and so were alle his folkes, fro the moost to the leest; for, moche payne and mysery had they
- 28 endured at the sege, as wele of famyne as othirwise / and the Turke thought wele, that he was escaped with his honour fro the worst bargayn that he was atte alle his lyue, by the meanes of his Brother / and no man coude sey that this trews that was taken, had
- 32 be for his pleasir / or by his cause, but only by the request of his Brother and othir of his folkes that had ben prisoners / Aftir that he and his folkes were a litil rested / he concluded to leue grete garrisons / and his places wele furnysshed, and he and his Brother
- 36 to retourne in-to their Contre / and seide vnto his folkes that he lefte ther / “that he wolde not faile at the ende of trews to be there agein, so wele accompayned, that he wolde ²neuir departe thens til he had accomplisshed alle his pleasirs.” These titynges and goes home.
- 40 wele ordeyned / he departed out of Sizile, & drewe vnto his owne

and Princess Iolante.

Had Iolante known who Prince Phillip was, she'd have given him her heart.

[¹ lf. 67, bk.]

Jousts and sports are the order of the day.

The Sultan withdraws, weary, to his biggest town in Sicily,

then garrisons all his conquests there,

[² leaf 68]

and goes home.

There, Prince
Humphrey of
England lies
in prison.

The Sultan
sends for
him;

and as he's
thin and ill,

[¹ If. 68, bk.]

gives him up
to K. Fera-
bras, who

soon gets him
into good
condition,

Marches / and his brother *with* him / whan they came ther / it is no
doute but he was honorably resceyued of alle his suggettes / for of a
grete while he had not be *with* hym, he abode there a ceason or he
wold speke any thyng of suche purposes as he entended / But kyng 4
ffirabrace foryate not the couenaunt he had made at his enlargyng,
for he had sworne vpon his lawe / that he sholde ayen alle cristen
prisoners that were in any Londe of his brothers or his / And in
the same towne that his Brother and he lay, was yong Humfray 8
prisoner, the kyng of Englonde's sone / hou be it, noman knewe
what he was; & of that yonge prisoner was kyng ffirabrace
enfourmed / and than wente he vnto the Turke, and tolde him of
his promes that he had made at his departir out of Sizile / And 12
the Turke asked if any prisoners were in that Towne / and he seide
“yea” / for there had ben a vesselle takyn *with* xiiij. persones yn
it / wherof they had reserued but ij., and that one of them 'dyde,
and that othir is yet alyue, a yonge man so megre & seke, that, as 16
men thought, he might lyue no while / Than the Turke sent for
him; & whan he sawe him, he asked him of whens he was / this
yonge Humfray, *pat* was so our come as he that neur bi-fore had
ben acostored yn suche mysery & pouert / answerd *with* low 20
vois & feble, “fforsothe, sir, y am cristen, borne of the reaume of
Englond / and my name is Ector / By fortune y arryued here / grete
almes it had ben for them that toke me to haue put me to deth /
but sith it pleaseth god that y endure this longe payne, y am con- 24
tente.” The turke, that sawe him megre, & alle out of likyng, was
no thing sory therof. And notwithstanding / that by his owne
counselle and his agreement / his brother had made thus *promys*, yet
thought he alwey in his mynde, that asmoche as he might, his 28
brother shold neur fynde prisoner / but that he wolde put them to
dethe or they came yn his brothirs handes; for if he coude knowen
of any prisoner bi-fore his brothir / he wolde haue made him
secretly be put to dethe / But for the symplesse & pouert of his 32
persone, he gruggid the lesse his deliuerance, & toke him vnto ¹his
brother / that ful grete pite had of this yong man / & sent him
vnto his loggyng / & made him to be eased & serued of that was
nedefulle to hym, made him to be bayned and newe clothid of alle 36
that longed vnto him / and wythyn little while, by the comfort
and helpe of kyng ffirabrace, he amended / and came ayen to his
grete bewte / so that eueri man had ioy to beholde him / kinge
ffirabrace thought, assone as he was hole, and that he might ride, 40

- that he wolde sende him yn-to the handes of cristen men / And
many tymes he wold biholde him / & thinke yn his mynde that they
were passing wele fetured / and goodly folkes of Englonde, ffrance, and admires
his beauty.
4 & Scotland, for by they were of his marches, he remembred of Sur-
nome & Athis, that he had sene at his departir out of Sizile / and
thought that Ector was moche of the same age / and if Surnome had
him, he supposed he wolde be right lothe to lete him oute of his com-
8 pany / And than wolde he thinke / if he had the hardinesse of one
of them / a shold not faile to do grete hurte vnto their party, if he
lyued long. Than was he somtyme yn wille not to sende him ; and
than wold he thinke ayen / that he had sworn his feithe, whiche
12 he wold not breke, to dy for it / In this ferme wille contynued he,
and on a day wente to se the Turke, his brother, and brought with One day
K. Ferabras
takes Prince
Humphrey to
see the Sultan
again.
him Ector / whiche aftirward he repented / for vnnethe might he
bryng hym ayen / as ye shal here / The Turke bihelde this yong
16 man that was with his brothir, & thought wele he was a straunger /
for he knewe hym not / he was so gretly chaunged & amendid sith
he sawe him / and wele he thought he semed ful like to come to
grete honour / wherfore he axed his brother what he was ; and he
20 tolde him it was the cristen man that was delyuerd vnto him the
last day / “fforsothe,” seide the Turke, “I knewe him not, he is so And as he
looks so well,
meruailously amendid / my hert yeueth me, if he be deliuerd, that
he shold do vs grete damage / wherfor, my brother, ther nedith
24 neur none knowe of this matier / and y pray you, for the wele of
vs and of oure lawe, to be agreable that he may be some night
secretly drowned / for ye knowe wele that by the comyng of one the Sultan
proposes to
have him
quietly
drownd.
straunger yn-to Sizile, were ye taken / and almoost to the destruc-
28 cion of vs alle / wherfore y holde youre conscience more hurte,
¹ what othe so euir ye haue made, if ye deliuere him, than to do as [¹ leaf 69]
.I. sey / for the grete losse of oure folkes that may come by hym /
wherfore y pray you, brother, to be agreable to my desire / and y
32 wol take the synne on me / And as for shame, ye may noon haue /
for neur noon shalle knowe it” / whan flirabrace herde his brother
sey thus / and sawe the deth of Ector his prisoner redy, if he
socoured him not / he was so wroth and sory / that of a grete while
36 he coude not answeere, for right moche loued he Ector ; and also in
his lawe he was right trewe and a noble knyght, whiche shalle
shewe by hym yn alle his werkes. The Turke, þat sawe hym in
grete thought / and that he answerd not / asked hym ageyn /
40 “how say ye hereto, faire brother” / “fforsothe,” seide flirabrace,

and he says
that he has
sworn to free
Christian
prisoners.

If the Sultan
kills Hum-
phrey,

K. Ferabras
will at once
give himself
up to the
Christians.

[¹ If, 69, bk.]

He will keep
his promise,
so far as he
can.

"I haue fere to sey any thyng that shold displese you / and therfore was y so longe stille / but, sir, ye are mighti, and a roialle kynge, yn whom aught to be founde more trouthe than yn a meane persone. And y sey for me, I am not so mighti a kynge as ye 4 be / albeit y am your brothir and a kyng / I haue promysed my feith, suche as ye knowe by youre owne agrement / and if y shold be forsworne for one only man / forsothe, my lord, it shold be noon honour to you nor me / And where as ye say, it shold neuir be 8 known / trewly y shold be as sorowfulle to knowe my self vntrewe as alle the worlde knewe it. what wold men sey if it were known that y shold put this cristen man to dethe / that was delyuered yn-to my kepyng for his surete? they wolde likken me to a Bocher that 12 gressith beestes / and than putteth them to dethe / wherfore, y biseche you, my lorde, take no displeasir though y consente not herto / for if it so befelle that ye wolde put him to dethe, as ye may wele y-nough, if it please you, I make promesse to alle the 16 goodes that we bileue on / that y shal neuer aftir abide yn your seruice, but rather go yelde me prisoner agein, and holde my feith, and perauenture do som thinge that shalle displease you / what ensample shalle oure folkes take at oure dedes if, for so litil a thyng, 20 we shalle breke oure feith and oure promesses" / The Turke, heryng his brother thus spekyng, saide vnto him thus / "he neuir made no suche promys, but only for his wele / and as for any promys, but only for his wele / he might breke it whan he wolde / for he was 24 not sworne therto / and if it were to do agein, he wold neuir do so moche for him / And said he wold ¹sende to alle his officers thorough his reaume / that if they had any cristen men in their handes, that they shold put them to dethe / and seide that he was not bounde to 28 be sugget vnto his brother" / And whan kyng ffrabrace sawe the Turke wrothe / he answerd right humbly / seyng, "my lord, y neuir made promes but by your auctorite. And by this meane, saving your correccion, be ye bounde as welles as I. Neuirtheles, ye 32 may do it as it pleasith you; I am not bounde to noon ympossibilite / but y say for me, y shall trewly kepe alle that y haue promysed as longe as it is possible for me" / The pouere Ector was yn the chambre alle this while, & thought fulle litle where aboute 36 they were / for he wende fulle wele to be assured of his departyng / Sone aftir kynge ffrabrace toke leue of his brother, right sorowfull & wrothe, & thought in his mynde to kepe his prisoner as surely as he might, for he drede moche his brother / and so he had cause, for 40

- assone as he was departed / he ordeyned folkes to sle yonge Ector, The Sultan tells some of his folk to kill Prince Humphrey.
 if they might fynde him at any tyme from his brother. he was so
 angry with the wordes that his brother had seide vnto him, that he
 4 thought to be avenged on Ector. On the tothir party kynge fira-
 bras knewe his brother right cruelle / wherfore he had grete drede
 of his prisoner, and ordeyned that he shold haue a chambre *withyn*
 his owne logging / and a xvj. or xx^{ti} men to awaite aboute him / K. Feralbras sets 20 men to safeguard Prince Humphrey.
 8 whiche he charged, on their lyues, to awaite wele aboute him /
 and to diffende him to their powers from alle daungers / and they
 obeid his commaundement without departyng fro hym at any
 tyme / Thise folkes that the Turke had youen yn commaundement
 12 to slee Ector, put them in alle the deuoir they coude therto; but
 they coude neur fynde the meanes to haue him / kynge firastras
 thinkyng alwey on the tyranny of his brother, concluded in him self
 to sende a-wey his prisoner be night / and to make him surely to
 16 be conduyte in-to some cristen lande / and for cause his goyng shold
 not be espied, he made tho men that he had apointed aboute Ector,
 to kepe stille his chambre ij. or iij. daies after he was gon, like as
 he had be stille there / Then tolde he vnto Ector alle thentent of his
 20 brothir / and how he was displeased with hym bicause he wold not
 breke his promes / and therfore wold he sende him nowe thens /
 and delyuer hym to officers ¹of armes, to whom he had grete trust / [¹ leaf 70]
 & ordeyned them to ride aH the night / and to kepe the wodes on
 24 the dayes / than delyuered he hym to his guydes, & charged them
 on their lyues to brynge Ector to saufte. Than he made Ector to
 promyse hym that he shold yelde him prisoner to one that hight
 Surnome, that was seruauant with the Senesshaft of Sizile / Ector and give himself up to Prince Philip.
 28 toke leue of the kynge his maister / and offerd hym aH the seruice
 that he might do / so it were no preiudice vnto his feith / And
 whan it was night, he departed / and they that shold conduyte
 him / so secretly, that they were espied of no body. ¶ Nowe
 32 retourneth the tale vnto the Turke, that aH-wey contynuede stille in
 his grete cruelte / He called them that he had commaundid to slee
 Ector, and asked them / “howe is it that ye haue not done as y
 haue commaunded you” / and they seide, “that þei might not” /
 36 for eueri day was he with kynge firastras / & on nightes had he
 xx^{ti} men waityng on him / when the Turke herd this, he was gretly
 displeased / In so moche that in a fury he commaundid that iij. or
 iijj. score of his folkes shold breke vp the dore where as Ector was /
 40 and to slee him / and let for no man / this was apointed to be done

on the morow / Here-bifore ye haue herd howe kynge ffrabras
 made to kepe Ectours chamber, like as he had ben there, to thentent
 that he might be a good wey of / or his brother knewe of his
 departing / ffor he knewe wele, and his brother might gete him / 4
 ther shold be founde yn him non othir mercy but deth. Thus
 was Ector departed ij. daies bifore the Turke had made his entir-
 prise vpon him / So the seconde day at night, they came vnto
 the chamber, where as they wende to finde Ector / purposyng 8
 verily to haue slayne hym, not lettyng for noman. Thus brake
 they vp the dore alle sodeynly vpon them that kepte the chambre /
 and it was in kyng ffrabras owne logging / wherof the crie & the
 noise was suche, that kynge ffrabras himself cam thider, and many 12
 of his folkes with him / And whan they sawe the kinge come, they
 withdrewe them alle, sauf x. or xij. persones that bode stille ran-
 sakyng the chambre, whiche kynge ffrabras made to be hewen
 bifore him. Thise tidinges came to the Turke; and it was tolde 16
 [1 ff. 70, bk.] him alle the maner how they ¹came in-to the Chambre / where as
 they founde not Ector, and howe the noise & the crie was suche,
 that his brother came thider, and slowe x. or xij. of his folkes / The
 Turke, herynge this tale, was right sorowfuH and wroth / and sent 20
 for his pryuee counsell / and tolde them aH the matier, without
 hiding of any-thing / bothe of the wordes that were bitwixt his
 brother and him / and how, for displeasir therof, he wold haue put
 Ector to the dethe / and in what wise / and how his brother was 24
 displeased / and had put x. or xij. of his folkes to dethe / which
 was to his grete shame and displeasir / whiche he wold not leue so /
 wherfore he asked their best counsell and advise / ffor if he shold
 folowe his owne wiH / he wolde do his brother a grettir annoy and 28
 displeasir than he had done him yet. They of whom he asked
 counsell were wise, & perceyued wele by his owne tale that the
 defeaute was yn hym / wherfore they seide thus vnto him, "Sir,
 saving youre displeasir, ye haue ben *with* my lorde youre brother 32
 to ouir hasty; for, as vs thinkith, tho wordes that he had vnto you
 meued hym of fre and noble corage; and ye haue done him a
 vilany / sith, in his owne loggyng ye wolde make to slee his folkes;
 for the prisoner was his. And to make folkes come yn be night 36
 with force of armes in-to the loggyng of so noble a kynge as he is /
 it semeth vs a grete offence / seyng he hath done so moche for you /
 we thinke he will take this in grete displeasir / And we drede
 moche, yf this matier be not the sonner appesed, grete inconvenience 40

2 days after,
 the Sultan's
 men break
 open King
 Ferabras's
 door,

but find
 Prince Hum-
 phrey gone.

The Sultan's
 Privy Coun-
 cil reproach
 him

for his be-
 haviour to
 K. Ferabras.

- may growe therof / The kynge your brother is a Lorde of suche
corage as ye knowen wel / and for you, and yn your werres, he
hath aventured body and goodes, and standith at this day yet
4 prisoner / his men and his sogettes haue done you goode service / The Privy Council remind the Sultan of K. Ferabras's great services.
wherby many of them haue lost their lyues / and this is a smalle re-
warde that ye yelde him / wherfore we meruaile nought though he
be displeased / considering like as he seide vn-to you suche promesse
8 as he made / to deliuer all the cristen prisoners that were in any
partie of youre Reaume / bothe by your owne pleasir & agreement /
wherfore it were litle meruaile if, for the despite that ye haue done
him / he meued werre against you / So moche as he hath done for
12 you a-fore this" / "By my trouthe," seide the Turke, "if ¹y coude [1 leaf 71]
thinke he wolde do so / I sholde sone deliuer the worlde of
him" / Than his counsell answerd him, "Remembre, sir, what
sholde falle ther-of if ye put hym to dethe / ffor he hath fair childre,
16 whiche shull not be so nigh of blode vnto you as he is / nor in
affection / whiche wolde rekke lesse to meue werre to yow-ward
than he wolde / also he is kynge of a noble & a mighti Reaume /
and wel beloued theryn / and of the moost worthy folkes that ye be
20 serued of this day, be his sogettes / and they loue him asmoche as
is possible for any sogettes to loue their Lorde / Thinke ye than to
be without werre, by sleynge of hym? nay, nay / ye may be sure / They warn him against killing Ferabras.
and that were shold stike nerre you than the werres of Sizile / And
24 more to your shame & reproef." The Turke, hering thies wordes,
knewe wele that thise folkes seide hym trouthe / and than seide he
vnto them, "it behoueth to knowe howe my brother takith this
thing to hert / I trowe he wolde be wele pleased if ye went to hym /
28 and if ye thinke it be to, y am content / and that ye say vnto him,
that y knowe nothinge of alle this / and if any haue offendid hym, it
shal be wele amendid / And if he seme not myn amendes y-nough /
if he require me of Iustice / y shal do it him. And ye may sey
32 hym, that y am right sory of this auenture / and if y had knowen apologize to K. Ferabras for him.
it a-fore, y wold for no thinge haue ben agreable ther-to / how be it
y was not pleased of the deliuerance of the cristen man, ffor the
experience that y haue sene in two only men to oure grete damage /
36 I pray you do so moche if ye may, that this thinge be wele appeased /
ffor if it be ferre spoken of / there may growe litle honour therby
to either of vs bothe." They were glad whan they herde their
maister thus speke / for the matier was to hym right shameful /
40 and they, as good seruantes, to appease it, toke the charge on them

K. Ferabras
tells the
Turkish
Council

[1 lf. 71, bk.]

how badly
the Sultan
has treat-
ed him.

He will go
home.

K. Ferabras
forthwith
rides to
Persia, and
is welcom-
d there.

Prince Hum-
phrey keeps
to the woods.

with right good wille, and departed from the Turke, and went to the kynge his brothir / whom they founde aft redy to ride / and whan they came, they spake with hym at good leiser, and tolde hym in substance alle the wordes as ye haue herde before / And than 4
kynge ffrabrace made alle his compleynte vnto them ful pitously / and seide, "my frendes, y cannot bileue that noon of you were consentyng or agreable to do me so grete a wronge, ¹ffor y haue serued my Lord my brother, with my body, my goodes, and alle my 8
power, as long as y might, so that y am now prisoner, and in way of destruccion / And thus, in his Towne, and of his folkes, there hath be done to me so grete Iniurye, that I am alt abashed to se his men come yn with force of armes, to breke vp the dore on my 12
prisoner, to haue murthred hym, as they saide, & haue hurte & wounded my folkes; and y haue none othir socour but to saue my self. fulle long shold it be, or a straunger might be sure with hym / whan y, that am his seruaunt & his brother, am yn drede of my lif, 16
& neur did thinge that of right shold displease him / wherfore it is bettir for me to withdrawe me in-to my contre, and assay amonges my sogettes to gedre my fynaunce, whiche y trust will not leue me yn this daunger / than to abide in this Towne, and be alwey in 20
these vnkyndely daungers; wherfore, my frendes, y wilt departe / and Recommaunde me to my Lord & my brother, and sey hym that y compleyne me of hym to hym self / and yet alwey y shal contynue his trewe seruaunt and brother" / These wordes sent he, with- 24
out longer taryng with the messangers, and toke his hors, and went his way yn-to his owne Reaume, where as he was resceyued with grete ioie / and was assured of his persone / for there was he mightly loggid / so that he had no drede of his brother / The Turkes mes- 28
sangers came vnto him agein / and told hym alle howe they had done, and what his brother had seide / and how he was departed. whan the Turke herde these tidynges, he was yn wille to sende a company aftir his brothir, to brynge hym ageyn, wold he or not / 32
But aftir many aduisementes of his folkes, he lefte that opinion, yn trust that by some bettir meane / and with more honour, they sholde accorde.

Now most we speke a litle of Ector, that aft the nyght rideth / 36
and on dayes tyme kepith him close yn woodes, til he were surely conduyte in-to the Reaume of Sizile / to suche place as pey had in charge that guyded hym. And there they departed fro hym, & taught hym the way / and the Townes that he sholde 40

- passe by til he came vnto the kyng. Than toke he leue of them,
 and thanked them right humbly / offryng them seruice & frendship
 for the payne they had with hym, ful humbly recommending
 4 hym vnto kyng ffrabrace, as to ¹hym that he was moost bounde [1 leaf 72]
 to / of al erthly men. Thus departed he from them / and passed Prince Hum-
phrey rides
thro' Sicily.
 thorough the Reaume of Sizile; and in his iournay he mette with
 some of the kynges folkes, to whom he tolde part of his charge /
 8 and accompayned with them til he came thider as the kyng was.
 And yn his iournay, he fil yn remembraunce of the grete goodnesse
 of oure Lord, remembryng the grete ynfirmitees that god delyuered
 hym of / bothe out of prison & from the malice of the Turke /
 12 whiche he knewe weel, was by no meane that he coude make, but
 only by the grete bounte of oure Lorde, wherein he thought him ful
 vnable to do seruice vnto god / aftir the grete grace / that he had
 youen him / And than made he avowe and promysse to god / that
 16 if he lyued so longe, he shold abide in his seruice yn the Reaume
 of Sizile til god had releued it / or ellis it were vtirly lost / and yn
 the meane season, neuir to discouer what he was, to no creature.
 and thus determynd he yn hym self, fro that day forth to take in
 20 pacience what payne or pouerte that god wold sende hym yn his
 seruice / whan he had taken this ferme purpose, he came thider as
 the kyng lay / and asked first of alle / aftir the Seneshalls loggyng,
 whiche was sone tolde him; ffor, nexte the kyng, there was no
 24 man in aH the Reaume keppe so grete an house as he did / nor was
 so moche renomed / And whan he came to hym / he fonde hym at He goes to
Ferant,
Prince
Philip, and
Prince David.
 Dynere, & Surnome & Athis seruyng him, for he coude neuir make
 hem do othirwise / but to be more diligent yn his seruice than any
 28 othir man / that longed vnto hym / Ector is thus entred in-to the
 halle, and salowed fferaunt and alle his company / and aftir, he asked
 whiche was he that men called Le Surnome. fferaunt behelde him,
 and sawe him yonge, faire, and wele proporcioned yn euery feture /
 32 and aH smylyng, saide vnto hym / "my frende, biholde, this same
 is he / ye may sey to him what it pleasith you / And if ye will
 speke with hym a-part, ye may" / "In good faith, sir," said Ector,
 "nay / y had leuer speke with him yn presence of moo folkes / for
 36 that his loos & renomee sholde be knowen / and y wold y were of
 suche worthynesse that he might be enhaunsed by me; hou be it,
 he hath little nede therof, for it is spred thoroughout alle the world."
 and than saide he to Surnome, "kyng ffrabrace, youre prisoner,
 40 that hoklith hymself weel ewred ²sith his fortune is to be prisoner / [2 lf 72, bk.]

Prince
Humphrey

yields him-
self to Prince
Philip,

and asks to
serve him.

Prince Hum-
phrey is
taken to the
[1 leaf 73]
King and
Queen of
Sicily, and
Princess
Isolante.

to be taken of so noble and good handes as of youres, and accordyng
to promesse, that of pite, & by trefy, ye made hym to make / he
recommmandith hym to you, and sendith me to you, to do *with* me
what it pleasith you, & hath deliuerd me out of that prison / wher- 4
yn y was brought by fortune and tempest of the see / and he sendith
you worde for trouthe, that yet hath he founde no moo cristen
prisoners / And whom-som-euir it bifalle, wele I thanke god it is
bifallen me wele nowe / and aftir, y thanke you, whom god hath 8
youen the grace to helpe me out of this daunger / wherfore, yn
accomplishyng my feith & promys, y yelde me to you" / than
kned he downe bfore him, and wold haue kissed his feet / Le
Surnome, alle abasshed of the honour he did hym, toke hym vp by 12
the hande / and saide / "my frende, y thanke God that ye be
delyuerd / for me thinketh it had ben grete pite if ye had ben
thus lost. And for Rawnsome, y shalt put you to choise, whethir
ye will be felawe to Athis & me, or maistre of oure chambre / and 16
take which it pleasith you." "fforsothe," saide Ector, "I am no
man of suche honour to be felawe *with* neither of you / But and it
pleased you to take me as your seruauant, I wolt desire no grettir
honour / and I thinke me wele fortun'd so for to be" / fferaunt, 20
that sawe this yonge man stande *with* Surnome and Athis, thought
hym-self right moche bounden to god; for eueri day befile hym
good adventures / for he hadde grete trust in Ectours worthynesse,
and was right glad that he logged *with* Surnome and Athis; and 24
toke hym in reputacion as felawe to theim. Thise tidynges came
to the kynge and to the quene / and to their faire doughtir as they
sate at dyner / and eueri man saide, that he was wele fortun'd that
was sent in-to the company of Surnome. Than was tolde the 28
maner of his comyng, and howe grete ioie fferaunt had therof.
"fforsothe," saide the kynge / "he is happy / & hath cause to be
ioifult, for his renomee is multiplied & doubled *with* straungers
that come to his seruice, whiche, had not ben for his displeisir, I 32
had receyued hem long sith of my houshold / hou be it, I haue ben
serued *with* them in his company, as wele or bettir than if they had
ben abidyng with me" / As they were yn thise wordes, came yn the
Seneshall and Ector with hym, whiche he brought vnto the kynge, 36
and he salowed hym right ¹humblly / and the quene & hir doughtir /
And than the kynge enquired hym first of the maner of his person,
and aftir his deliuerance, and of the tidynges of beyonde the see /
and in euery thinge he answerd so wele & so wisely, that the kynge 40

and alle folkes had grete ioie to here hym / Aftir dyner was he
brought vnto the ladies, whiche had grete ioie to beholde him / and
so had fferaunt, whiche saide, he was a man replenysshed of all
4 beaute yn visage and body / and in wordes and maner fully assured,
“and I trust fully yet to se him do as moche in dedes of armes as
alle thise” / “fforsothe,” saide the folkes to fferaunt, “we leue it
wele; and ye be moche bounden to god, for he hath gyuen you
8 fortune to haue noble seruauntes.” Thus contynued Ector with
fferaunt and his ij. felawes, abiding the ceason of the Turkes comyng,
whiche they thought right longe. The kynge made them alle iij. to
be reteyned with his doughter / hou be it, their moost abidyng was
12 with fferaunt / But yet, to put them to the more honour, whan they
were there as she was, they did hir dayly service / And eueriche did
his service so proprely / that it shewed wele they had be norissed
vp therin. And amonges them iij. was suche frendship / that eche
16 of them desired to honour his felaw more than himself. Now leueth
to speke of the kynge of Sizile and of his company, and retourneth
to the Turke, that was in his contre / as ye haue herde.

Prince Hum-
phrey stays
with Feraunt
and Prince
Philip and
Prince David.

20 **A**ftir the departyng of kynge fferabras, his Brothir, many of
his sogettes beganne to grucche ageinst him for the wrong
that he had done vnto his brothir; and moche payne had
he to appease it / And fro that day forth, neuir encreased he / ffor
ffirabras, that sawe him self in daunger of prison, wold neuir after do
24 his brother service yn the warres, he nor noon of his sogettes. And
if he had not be prisoner / many folkes Iuged he wolde haue made
warre ageinst his Brother him-self, for the grete vnkyndenesse he
hadde shewed him / Neuirtheles it was for that tyme appesed. The
28 Turke made, all this ceason, ordinaunce for his goyng yn-to Sizile /
and assembled alle his men / seyng vnto them, “my frendes, ye
knowe wele howe y haue enterprised to conquere the Reaume of
Sizile, and howe y haue at this day in my ¹hande, fult nigh half
32 the Reaume / and if y shold nowe leue of / it were to me grete
shame / wherfore y aske nowe counsell therin / for y am affermed
to go thidre / But y aske aide and comfort of my sogettes and of
my frendes / whiche is the cause y nowe haue assembled you” /
36 Than toke they counsell amonges them; and, in conclusion, every
man ayded the Turke aftir his power / more than euir they had
done bifore / so that he coude them right grete thanke / Than
mustred he his folkes, & fonde his nombre grettir than euir it was.
40 Thus employed he the tyme of the trews in purueaunce, that he was

After King
Feraunt's
departure,

the Sultan
never pros-
pers.

But he pre-
pares for his
fresh inva-
sion of Sicily.

[1 H. 73, bk.]

The Sultan
resolves to
besiege
Naples,
where the
King of
Sicily is.

concluded, aftir the feste of seynt Iohne, to entre in-to the Reaume
of Sizile / to make grettir warre than euir he had done bifore / This
was his armes & his departyng concluded / & euery man apointed
what he shold do / and him self determyned to lay seege bifore the 4
Towne of Naples, where as the kynge was, the quene & hir doughtir /
and the moost of alle the noble folkes of the Reaume / seyng verrily,
that if he had ones conquered that Towne, he sholde haue little
besynesse to wynne the remenaunt of the Reaume / Thus thought 8
they that they had little to do, but with that Towne allone. They
ordeyned also an othir grete company, beside them that shold ly at
the seege, to conduyte their vitale & ordonaunce, without distourb-
yng or troubling of them that shold abide at the seege / Than were 12
the Capteynes ordeyned that shold haue the charge of euery thinge /
And when alle was wele puruayde / The Turke abode stille in peas
til the tyme came that he sholde go in-to Sizile.

The King of
Sicily is told
of the Sul-
tan's prepar-
ations.

Now seith the tale, that the kynge of Sizile, that was fulle wise, 16
made alle diligence to knowe & enquire the purueaunce of
his enemyes / & spent grete good to the same entent / and
did so moche, that he had waged folkes of the Turkes owne / and
knewe by them, alle suche apointment as the Turke had taken / and 20
here-vpon he assembled his counsell / and tolde hem how he was
asserteyned, and praied them eueri man to take aduise there-vpon,
for it was tyme / the newe ceason approched so nigh, wherfore it was
expedient to take good aduise & short, here-vpon / and many mocions 24
were made vpon the maner of his conduyte, but no ferme purpose
was takyn / This tyme ranne ouir alle of the grete ffense that the
kynge of Sizile made in his Reaume to thencountre of the Turke,
and howe that the trews shold breke vp at the feste of seynt Iohne / 28
and than the Turke shold come agein in-to the Reaume of Sizile
with grete power / but for alle that, there was no kynge nor othir
prince that any thinge disposid hym to the helpe or socours therof /
Thus on a day the kynge of Sizile, to whom the matier touched 32
moost, whiche daily and hourelly had it yn remembrauncê, called
some of his moost secrete counselle / & newly toke avice of this
matier / and there-vpon euery thinge in writyng, yn suche wise as
ye shal here / ffirst it was apointed to write and sende newe mes- 36
sangers to alle cristen Reaumes / wherin he had no grete trust of
socour, for many tymes had he done so before / natheles, in asmoche
as the matier was newer than it had ben othir tymes / for it was
aftir a longe trews that the werre shold begynne agein / And also 40

[¹ leaf 74]

He organizes
his own de-
fence,

by advice of
his Council.

- that they shold not thinke in hym that he was so presumptuous /
that for the wele of the cristen feith he deynd not to requyre no
body / ffor thise causes, concluded he to sende to alle Reaumes / hou
4 be it, he had no hope but only yn god, and yn his owne power /
wherfore he purueide him as weel as he coude, *with* the helpe of his
owne folkes, to abide suche fortune as god wolde sende him / And
hou-be-it that he had tidinges that the seege sholde be leide bfore
8 what place that he were yn / yit lette not he to purvey and ordeyne
his othir places / and to sette good and sure Capitaynes in eche of
theim, and concluded fro that day forthe to fortifie alle his places /
& to purvey for alle thinge that was nedefulle to the kepyng of them,
12 for as long tyme as his power might stretch vnto. Aftir, ordeyned
he for the place that he wold abide yn him-self, the Quene and his
doughtir, and suche folkes as he wolde haue *with* him / Than
apointed he fferant & his company to abide with him / Aftir this,
16 ordeyned he, that if the seege were bfore him, a general Captayne
that shold be his lieutenaunt at large in his Reaume, whiche sholde
haue ¹power to assemble alle the garisons, what tyme it pleasid hym,
for to distourbe & trouble his enemyes / & the seide lieutenaunt
20 shold haue a certayne nombre of folkes that sholde haue none othir
charge but to accompany hym / and to go with him to suche place
as nede sholde be, for to recomforte them, as wele by power of folkes
as othir wise / if by dethe, or fortune of werre, the garrisons were
24 amynysshed / Aftir, he ordeyned that alle men shold drawe them to
the good Townes, *with* alle their goodes and catelle, for to sustene
the garrisons / and also to thentent that their enemyes shold fynde
scarste of vitaille to comfort and releue them *with*. Thise thinges be
28 put yn writyng. than he assembled his Captaynes and his Counselle,
as many as he might / and in their presence made it to be redde /
seyng vnto them, that this was but a maner of a mocion, praing
them to take good aduise theron / and every man to sey his opinion.
32 ¶ It was thought by them alle / that they coude take no bettir
aduise than the kyng had shewed them / trustyng, if good were
their good Lord, the Turke shold haue wers welcomyng than he
had laste / thinkyng that, if he had not bettir yere amonges them
36 than he had laste, he shulde be right wele content to take a lenger
trews / and neuir to come again / Thise thinges thus accorded &
diligently done / messangers were sent to alle Reaumes / the Capi-
taynes named & proclaimed thoroughout alle the Reaume / that every
40 man shold take his good and his catell, & draw him in-to goode

The King of Sicily appeals to other realms for help.

He bids Ferant and his men stay in Naples. He appoints a Captain-General in the country [1 lf. 74, bk.] to manage the troops there; and

orders all folk into garrison towns.

The Sicilian Council agree.

Townes / for the sauacion of them and their goodes / Thus euery
 man entendid to his charge, and did so diligently, that yn lital
 while alle thinge was done as the kynge had ordeyned. fferaunt
 had the charge to fortifie & furnysshe the Townes that the kyng 4
 shold be ynne / and he did it so diligently and so wele / that it was
 impossible, if god were their good lorde, for any men to wynne it
 for many yeres / ffor ye may wele thinke / there that the kynge,
 the quene, and hir doughtir were / there lakked nouthur vitaille nor 8
 ordenaunce / Thise thinges thus purveid as ye haue herde / alle the
 Reaume was wele recomforted, to abide suche aventure as god wold
 sende hem / The tyme drewe fast on, that the trews shold breke /
 and euery Capitayne drewe him to his garison, with suche company 12
 as was assigned hym / and kepte ¹suche rewle and ordenaunce,
 aswele of spense of vitaille as of othir thinges, as if the seege had be
 leyde before them / for they knewe wele it wold be long or they
 coude gete any more vitaille. And on the tothir partie, the Turke 16
 assembled his folkes to go in-to Sizile with grettir nombre than cuir
 he had bifore ; he made to charge grete shippes with vitaille & orden-
 aunce, so that hym thought no thinge sholde faile him / He made
 them to be brought in-to suche places in Sizile as helde of hym / 20
 and ordeyned his folkes to conduyte hem fro thens alway to the
 seege, as nede shold require, like as ye haue herde bifore / his
 ordenaunce was so grete, that it was meruaile to se it / He and alle
 his folkes landed at the port of Capletrent / and whan he had ben 24
 there a while, he toke his iournay toward Naples, to lay seege there ;
 for there was the kyng alle at his ease, redy purueid ageinst his
 comyng / whan the kynge vndirstode thise tidinges, he was alle
 recomforted, trustyng verrily in the helpe of god, and thought right 28
 longe aftir the Turkes comyng / But of alle othir, Ector was moost
 ioifult of their comyng / ffor, daies of his lif, he had neur sene bataile
 nor none assemble in armes / and alle his desire was to folowe Sur-
 nome & Athis, to se the worthines that he had herde speke of theim, 32
 and to take ensample at them ; for wele he wist that there was noon
 so moche renommed in the Reaume as they / And thise iij. loued to-
 gedir as they had be bretheren / ffor neur had they but one loggyng,
 one purs, and one wille / and neur was there amonges them angry 36
 word / Surname & Athis had grete desire to wite how Ector sholde
 demene him in the werres, for that he was so perfite in alle othir
 thinges ; and he purveide, so that he was right wele horsed and
 armed / and eche of them iij. promysed feith & trouthe to othir / 40

Ferant makes
Naples safe.

[¹ leaf 75]
The Sicilian
Garrisons are
munitioned.

The Turkish
army lands
at Capletrent,
and marches
to Naples.

The 3 French,
Scotch, and
English
Princes are
like brothers.

- and bicame brethern in armes / ye may wele thinke that the ladies
and gentilwomen, whan they sawe hem in this case / were not wele
assured when they herd the belle of the wacche, for the comyng of
4 the Turke : they wepte ful sorowfully / and euery man recomforted
them / and brought them to suche places where they might se the
puyssaunce come / and if the grete drede that they had of the werre
had not be / it had ben a good sight to see / ffor the Eyre and the
8 erthe ressplendished *with* the Baners of gold, and of siluer, and of
Cootes of armes / & ¹of bright harneis / & the riche abilementis
they had for their horses. So many folkes there were / that the
Ladies and gentilwomen wende there had not ben so grete a power
12 in alle the world, and had more feer than euir they had / ffor it
semed them the Towne might neuir endure ageinst them / And
thus came this company in iij. partis, for to besege and enclose the
Towne. *withyn* the Towne was there a vij. or viij. thousand feight-
16 ing men / And for as moche as they were there *with* the ladies /
they desired to do some thinge at the bigynnyng that myght recom-
forte theym / and concluded that on the next morowe, yn the morn-
yng, they wolde visite their neighbors. ¶ Now y shall telle you
20 of the Turke, howe he did : he remembered him of the [seege] that
he had layde bfore fferaunt / and how in loggyng them he had a
grete skarmyssh, and lost many of his folkes / wherefore he ordeyned
that euery day shold be a grete company arriedied to horsbak /
24 waityng on a Captayne / to drawe sodeinly to what part nede sholde
require / And there were iij. grete puissaunces, as ye haue herde, in
iij. parties of the Towne / And of that one, was Orkays cheff ; and
of the tothir, the kyng of Luby ; and of the iij^d. the Turke himself.
28 ¶ Now cometh the day that the sawte sholde be made. for asmoche
as the Turke knewe ful wele the[re] were many folkes *withyn*, he
wold not begynne the saute tilt the sonne were vp. fferaunt, that
was fulle wise and wele vndirstandyng in suche matiers, saide to the
32 kyng, “ sir, please it you to stande at the gate / and lete no man
go oute, but suche as I wilt / whiche y shull put alle bfore me ” /
And than he apointed suche as shold come with hym ; and for drede
he had of Surnome and of his felawes, he made them to promesse
36 & swere that they shold withdrawe them assone as they herde blowe
the retrayte / Thus alle thing ordeyned / he departed out of the
Towne with ij. thousand feighters / and did so moche, or the cry
arose that they were amonges the kyng of Lubyes Tentis / and ouir
40 ranne many of his folkes / the crie and the noise arose thorough alle

The Sicilian
ladies watch

the fine ap-
proach of
the Turkish
army,
[ll. 75, bk.]

in 3 Divi-
sions.

The Sultan

orders a
regiment of
Horse to be
always ready
to move
when needed.

Ferant sallies
out of Naples
with 2000
men,
against the
Turkish 2nd
Division.

the hoste / and than they that had the charge to a-waite on suche
sodeyn cries, were redy anone *with* the kyng of Luby / and came
quikly on fferaunt and on his company, In so moche that by force
it behoueth hem to withdrawe / and there were some of his folkes 4
taken / wherof Surnome was right heuy and sory / and he [and] his
felawes retourned ¹agein to rescowe them / and neur bfore had he
aqtytte him so wele as he did there / ffor by the noble prowesse of
hym & his company, their enemyes were fayne to withdrawe them 8
agein toward their tentes. All this encountryng shewed wele the
worthines of Ector / that neur vnto this day was sene in suche
case / They iij. to-gedir did so in armes, that it was meruaile to
thinke / and it semed by Ector that he had ben alwey brought vp 12
in that crafte / the feeld a-boute them was al steyned and couerd
with blode / ~~and~~ with ded folkes, In so moche that fferaunt was alle
abassed / & entendid to no thinge but to beholde the hardynesse of
his iij. seruauntes. And as they were thus feighting, came the 16
Turkes power and his sones / vnto the Kyng of Luby / and than
they came so sore vp-on the cristen men that they put them alle out
of aray / whan fferaunt sawe this, he sent vnto the kyng for a
thousand men moo to socoure them, to helpe to withdrawe them. 20
Than made he to blowe the retrayte / and the iij. felawes, by force
of Armes, were departe eche fro othir / and Surnome was enclosed
among so many / that hou-be-it he defendid him right valiauntly /
yet was he taken be might / for our many folkes were on hym / and 24
was anone had out of the prees / seyng fferaunt his maister / that
at that tyme wold haue ben ded / ffor he knewe weel that alle the
gold in Sizile might not bye him agein, and he might not helpe
him / for he and his company were so sore ourirsette / that with 28
grete payne they recured agein in-to the Towne / and had lefte
behinde them the chief of alle their werre / ¶ But now here wher-
on fferaunt aduised him / he toke al the folkes of armes that were
with the kyng at the gate / and sodeinly went out at the gate that 32
was ageinst Orkays tentes, for he sawe him vngarnysht of alle his
folkes / and bitwene his loggyng and the Turkes was a ryuer / and
there was no brigge ourir / but a litil passage / where might not
come past ij. horses or iij. on front / and yit *with* grete payne he 36
ordeyned a good company to kepe that passage / for by none othir
wey coude Orkays haue no socoure / Thus was fferaunt, *with* grete
part of puyssaunce of the Towne, come to Orkays tentes / and there
^[2 lf. 76, bk.] 2endured the bataile fulle long amonges them / By that tyme was 40

[1 leaf 76]

Prince Hum-
phrey and
Princes
Philip and
David fight
valiantly.

The Turkish
3rd and 1st
Divisions
attack Fer-
rant's men.

Prince Philip
is taken
prisoner.

The Sicilians
retire,

but make a
fresh sally
against the
camp of the
Turkish 1st
Division.

- Athis and Ector enfourmed of the takyng of their felawe / whom they held in part for their maister / for whos sake they had suche sorowe that it was meruaile to wite / fferaunt ascried vnto them /
- 4 "my frendes, now it is tyme that eche of you put payne to the rescouse of his trewe felawe, which rescuse can not be without takyng of Orkays, sone vnto the Turke; now shalt be seen who shalt do wele; for trewly, if one of you were in suche daunger / the
- 8 good Surnome wolde put him in grete deuoir / the ij. felawes lefte their sorowe / and, as they that had ben oute of their wittes, aventured them forth amonges the presse, *without* casting of any perill or drede of any daunger; there was neuir man sawe ij. men do so
- 12 moche in one day in Armes as they did / they were so besy in euery place, that their enemyes thought they sawe noon othir men but them, so moche they dred them / fferaunt folowed them alwey, and had as leef be ded, *without* he might haue day to rescowe his yonge
- 16 seruauant / he had at the leest in his company .v. thousand feighters, which were of fult good corage / and, by their strength and power, yn short tyme was Orkays and alle his company put to playne discomfiture / and Orkays takyn prisoner by the handes of Ector, that
- 20 presented him anon to fferaunt, whiche was right glad of his takyng, trustyng therby to recouer Surnome. The meane tyme that this noise and crye was, the Turke sent many of his folkes on horsbak to the rescous of his sone / wherby he thought him sure y-nough /
- 24 But they that were apointed by fferaunt to abide at the passage, kepte it so wele, that noo might passe there / and at the diffence was grete mortalite of the Turkes. whan fferaunt had done this iournay, and sawe Orkays in his handes in saufte / and that his
- 28 folkes had take suche pillage as they might easily bere *with* them / and had set fyre in the remenaunt / he made to blowe the retrayte / and withdrewe them in-to the Towne / hauyng prisoners *withoute* nombre / but, ouir alle othir, he was glad of the takyng of Orkays /
- 32 whan they were entred agein into the Towne / the kyng was enformed of the takyng of Surnome, and so were the ladies & gentilwomen / and the tidynges spred thorough alle the Town, wherof the sorowe and complaynt began as moche as if the kyng had ben
- 36 ded. And the kyng himself was so sory, that noman might comferte him / hou-be-it he had the Turkes sone yn his handes / for he helde him so cruelt and felonous, that he had leuer lete his sone dye than deliuere Surnome, by whom he had hadde so many losses and
- 40 hurtes / Natheles he concluded to sende vnto the Turke an heraude

Prince David
and Prince
Humphrey,

with Ferant
and 5000 men,

capture the
Sultan's son,
Orkays,
rout his 1st
Division,

pillage and
burn his
Camp, and
retire to
Naples.

[leaf 77]

A Sicilian
Herald is
sent to the
Sultan.

of Armes, to certifie him of the takyng of his sone, willyng him to entrete Surnome none othir wise than he wolde haue his sone entretid. *[Illumination: Surnome bleeding, in a shirt; gallows; sully from the Town.]*

The Sultan

determines

to put Prince
Philip to
death.

[1 ff. 77, bk.]

He scratches
the Prince's
face, and says
he'll see him
hangd after
dinner.

The Sicilians
sorrow for
Prince
Philip.

NOwe retourne we to the Turke, that, aftir the distresse that 4
he had vpone fieraunt and his folkes, and that Surnome
was brought vnto hym / and that he knewe werily it was
the same by whome he had hadde so many tymes losse & hurtes ;
and at that tyme he knewe no thing of the takynge of his sone / 8
And whan Surnome was brought a-fore him / he thought for ioie
his worthinesse was doubled / and behilde him, and sawe him so
personable and amyable / and so wele assured, that he hadde
meruaile to beholde hym / and concluded in him self / that he 12
wold neuir slepe til he had taken on him cruelle veniaunce, and
saide vnto him / "Thou vntrew cristen man, thyn vnhappy comyng
in-to this laude hathe done me more damage than did the puy-
saunce of cristen kynges : I shal neuir slepe / or y se the ded bifore 16
myn yen." Thus Surnome, hering his deth / with humble corage
content to abide it, for the pleasir of god / answerd agein vnto the
Turke, seyng, "O turk, by my dethe shalt thou not be kyng of
Sizile / for there is many more worthy than euer I was, yn the 20
seruice of the kyng ; wherfore y knowe wele my dethe shalt be
litol damage to cristen ; and therefore y am to endure suche payne
and turment as thou wilt deuise, whiche y shaft receyue in ioie" /
The Turke, for angre, might no more here him speke, but ranne on 24
him / and scratte him in the visage / and made him to be voided
out of his sight / and commaunded that gallows shold be made
anoon ; & concluded, that aftir he had dyed, he wold go hym self
to se him hanged / They of the Towne withyn, seing thies galowes 28
adressing, enfourmed the kyng therof / And than bigan the sorowe
more than bifore, thoroughout all the Towne / for they knewe wele
it was made for Surnomes sake / There might ye se ladies and
gentilwomen wepe and sorowe / but ouir alle other sorowed Iolant, 32
the kynges doughter. There was the beaute, bounte, witte &
worthinesse of Surnome, many tymes remembred & complayned
that day / & euery body thought that, at the houre of his dethe, alle
the vertues of the worlde sholde be lost / The kyng was alle out of 36
mesure / as he that had lost only by Surnome alle the ioi he had in
this worlde / thinkyng that, after his dethe, he wold no lenger
lyue / Ector also, and Athis, were so fer from alle reason, that, for
men wold not lete them go out at the gate, they wolde haue lepte 40

- our the walles / It is alwey saide that a mannys witte ys neuir
 vndirstond til at a grete nede. fferaunt, that neuir was dispurneid, Ferant sets a gallows on the walls of Naples, as if for the Sultan's son.
 made hastily a paire of galowes to be set vpon the walles, yn the
 4 Turkes sight, and euen bfore his loggyng, as though he wold make
 Orkays dye ther-one / And yit, notwithstanding pat, fferaunt put
 yn aduenture him self and alle that were in the towne, reseruyng
 the kyng / and a fewe that waited on him / & thought verrily alle
 8 to dye, or to rescowe his seruaunt / and to this apointed alle his
 folkes, and in especialt Ector and Athis, whiche fitt to his fete for
 ioy / humbly thankyng / And yet, notwithstanding the grete sorow
 that he had, he comfortyng them, seyng / "what, we haue yit no
 12 tidynges of the messenger that went to the Turke. I haue trust in
 god, and also know wele the loue that a ffadir hath to his childe /
 wherby he wol neuir be consentyng to the dethe of his sone / And
 that the prise that hath be made by you this day, my frende Ector,
 16 at youre nowe comyng, shall be the sauacion of youre felawe" /
 Many turkes sawe thies galowes yn makyng on the Towne walle /
 and anone tolde it to the Turke, ¹whiche strecched him vp at the [1 leaf 75]
 boorde, and saide / "Lete them hange whom they can gete; for
 20 there is none shall lette me to hange this that y haue" / And euen
 at the same tyme came yn the heralde from the kynge of Sizile,
 with the message pat ye haue herde tofore / The Tuike, hering
 this, was gretely ameruailed / and coude not bileue it / for he had
 24 herde no worde therof bfore / wherfore he saide al wrothly to the
 messengers / "If the kynge, and they of his company, coude by their
 language saue the lif of their man / they had wele lerned to speke /
 But, as for my sone, that is so vnhappyly lost, y wolt not respite
 28 the lif of this / but the rather delyuere hym to the dethe" / And
 than made he to brynge him to se Surnome, that was redy to go to
 his dethe / and the rope aboute his nekke / and whan he sawe him
 in this cas, he was so sory that vnnethe he might stonde on his
 32 fete / but Surnome comforted him, and saide / "I pray you,
 recommaunde me to the kynge & to the quene / and to my faire
 lady, their doughtir / to whom y haue euir ben trewe seruaunt /
 and recommaunde me to fferaunt, my good maister / and to my ij.
 36 felawes / and sey I praied them not to compleyn nor sorowe my
 dethe, for y trust verrily in the mercy of god to dye wele /
 Natheles, pray them to pray for me" / Than he toke hym by the
 hande, the teeres yn his yeen / and bade hym farewele / and praied
 40 his ij. felawes also to take his dethe agreably / thus the messenger
 and let his own son die.

The Sicilian
chiefs swear
to rescue
Prince
Philip, or
die.

departed, & came to the towne / and tolde the kynge and fferaunt
how he hadde founde him. And whan they herde this report, it
touched their hertes so nygh / that they thought they sawe Surnome
bifore them / in the same cace that the messanger had seen hym / 4
and after they had wepte & compleyned / euery man concluded
either to dye or to rescowe him / Two hundred men were ordeyned
to go to thise Iuyse / and a M^r. to renne on them that kepte the
place, and ij. M^r. redy to socour them / if nede were / and the 8
kynge redy, in his owne persone, at the gate with iij. M^r. to releef
them / at their comyng yn agein, if nede were. And thus was
euery thinge ordeyned and redy / and Ector and Athis were de-
lyuered the charge / whiche toke it on them with right goode 12

[¹ If. 78, bk.]
Philip
laments his
parents,
and France,

corage / Surnome, ¹on that othir side, that abode no thinge but
dethe, compleyned his fadir & his modir, and them of his reame /
and compleyned his contre, that shold stonde withoute heyre /
Aftir, he compleyned the kynge of Sizile, the quene and their 16
doughtir, his maister and his ij. felawes / prayng god right hertily
to comfort them, and sende them all good auenture, and in especia^l
that his faire lady shol neuir come in the handes of tho mys-
creauntes. Aftir this, he praied god to haue mercy & pite on his 20
soule, seyng that in his seruice he shold now take the dethe /
humbly besechyng hym, of his grace, to receyue his soule, / and of
his grete mercy to pardone alle his offences. ¶ Whan the Turke
had dyned, he herde tidynges that his sones loggyng was alle ouir- 24
throwen and brent / a[nd] moo than x. or xij. M^r. men slayne / and
his sone taken prisoner, and brought in-to the towne, and the moost
part of the grete lordes and noble men of his company / If the
Turke were soroufult, it is no question / and, for the grete angir, 28
forgetith all fadirly loue, and the seruyce of alle those lordes and
noble men that were taken prisoners / and forgetith also his owne
brother / that was prisoner to hym that he had than in daungere,
by whom he myght haue had his brother agein, or his sone / but 32

The Sultan

than alle was forgotten / And thus, as a wood man furiously puttith
the boorde fro him, without aduise, or setting any ordre to the dede
of Iustice that he sholde do / and asked alle hastily where was the
prisoner / and men brought him forth; and he toke hym by the 36
Rope that was aboute his nekke, and drewe him so hard that, if
folkes had not taken him away, he had strangled hym / but his
folkes toke him from him / and seide / "sir, this bilongeth not to
you to do / lete the hangman do his office, sith ye be so fere forth 40

nearly
strangles
Prince
Philip.

that no reason may mene you / we be kynne and frendes to them
 at this day, that by your cruelte we shal se dye / and your self be
 cause therof, and also of the dethe of youre owne sone / ffor, be
 4 assertayned, they *witlyn* haue no suche drede / but assone as this
 man is ded / he and alle they shalle dy bifore your yen / And whan
 your pleasir shal in this be fulfilled / your sorowe euir aftir shalbe
 out of mesure / and then shal be to late ¹to repente, for it shalbe
 8 passid remedy / Also your brother, or his plegges, shalle dye with
 sorow and shame" / But of alle that euir they seide vnto him, he
 rought not / and sware by his goddes, if they spake any more, he
 shold make them alle to dy an euyl deth / and toke a grete staff yn
 12 his hande / and made them cary forth the prisoner to the gallows /
 and euir layde on him so grete strokes, that made him alle bloody /
 now sent he forth so woodly this prisoner, that he had but fewe
 folkes aboute him / and yit they that were in his company were in
 16 suche sorowe and distresse, that they had as leef dye / as lyue / for
 their kyn and their frendes, that they sawe in suche daunger *witlyn*
 the Towne / and for that cause there was the more vnsure gudyng
 in this matier / The wacche of the Towne sawe the multitude of
 20 folkes comyng / and Surnome amonges them, ledde like a theef;
 and the folkes couerd aH the felde / they went & tolde the kyng
 & fferant, whiche wepte for pitie that Surnome was so pitously
 entretid / Surnome bihelde the Towne, wherin he had hadde so
 24 moche pleasir & ioie, thinkyng neuir to come ther more / for he
 loked aftir no thinge but dethe / often recommaundid vnto god alle
 them that were *witlyn* the Towne / and whan they were come nere
 the gallows, Ector and Athis, that were apointed to go to the
 28 Iuyse, toke their company *with* theim, and went thider as fast as
 their horses might renne, fore drede that they sholde come to late /
 the Turke, seyng this auenture, cried many tymes that men shold
 kille the prisoner, but there was noon that coude fynde in his herte
 32 so to do; and there durst they not abide, for they were alle out of
 array / And at that tyme, were slayn and taken many grete lordes
 of the Turkes partie / whan Ector & Athis, whiche had the charge
 to rescowe their felaw / fonde him allone, *with* his visage all bloody,
 36 of the strokes that the Turke had youen him on the hede / they
 wende he had ben hurte to the dethe / and were so sorowfull, that
 vnnethe they might speke one worde / Natheles, they set him vpon
 horsbak / and brought him agein in-to the Towne, *without* any
 40 encombraunce or hurt of any cristen man, and vnto the grete losse

The Sultan's
folk reprove
him,

[1 leaf 79]

but he threat-
ens them,

and beats
Prince Philip
till he's all
bloody.

The Sicilians
see Prince
Philip led to
the gallows.

Prince David
and Prince
Humphrey
sally out,

rount and kill
the Turks,

rescue Prince
Philip,

and bring
him into
Naples,

[¹ lf. 79, bk.] & damage of the turkes. And ¹whan they were comyn in-to the
 Towne, they had grete drede of thurt Surnome had on his hede /
 for they wist not wele yit how it was with him / Than Ector and
 Athis brought him to loggyng, and sawe that he was right seke, and 4
 sore diseased / for his nekke was gretly swolne / and alle the skynne
 of / with the streynyng of the rope / and his shuldres also were
 blac with the strokes of the staff that he had / and in his hede he
 had a grete stroke, whiche was alle bloody and swolne / and his 8
 visage was all to-scrag / The kynge made to sende for alle his
 surgeons, & made them to serche hym / whiche saide that he was
 sore hurt / but they sawe no drede of dethe yn hym / but that he
 should be heled wth yn litil while / The kynge and his company 12
 was ioifu^H of this tidynges; and then was tolde to Surnome the
 grete worthinesse and prowes of Ector that day / and also the grete
 armes that he and Athis had done to rescowe hym, and yn what
 auenture fferant, their good maister, had put hym that day / whiche 16
 semed to be bettir content wth his dethe than to lyue / & how
 Ector had taken with his hande the Turkes sone / And alle this was
 tolde him to reioice hym / ffor euery man knewe wele ^{pat} the
 preise and grete renome of his noble maister, and of his ij. felawes, 20
 was one of the grettist ioies that he coude haue / All thise wordes
 were seide vnto hym by t^{he} kyng, whiche was come to visite him /
 And Surnome answerd hym, & saide / “sir, y thanke god and you /
 that it pleasid your grace, for so pore a man as y am, to parte oute 24
 of your towne / and put yourself yn daunger / whiche y neur
 coude deserue / But y sha^H put me in denoir alwey to do you the
 bettir service” / And thus departed the kynge fro hym, and came
 to his owne loggyng / and there mette with hym the quene, hir 28
 doughtir, & alle the ladies, whiche were right sorowfulle of the hurt
 of Surnome. but the kyng tolde them for trouthe that he was in
 noo perill of dethe / wherof they were as ioifult as they might be /
 ffor there was noon erthly man so moche biloued of euery body in 32
 alle honour as he was, and in especialle of alle them of that Reaume /
 for sith his comyng, the reaume was more furnysshed of noble men
 than euir it was bifore / and he neur did ne seide thinge that
 sholde displease any body / Thus by ²hym daily encreased their 36
 ioie / But alle othirwise went it yn the Turkes hoste / for he was so
 troubled at that tyme, that he was half in dispeire / and rought not
 to haue slayn hym self, to haue ben oute of his grete sorowe / whan
 he was wth-drawen & retourned in-to his tente / and knewe for 40

hurt and
bleeding.

But the
Sicilian
surgeons say
he'll soon be
well.

He is told of
the valour
of Princes
David and
Humphrey,

and the
capture of
Orcays.

The ladies
grieve over
Prnce
Philip's
wounds.

[² leaf 80]

- certayne þat his prisoner was deliuered / and what outrageous losse The Sultau
he had of the moost notable of his counselle, that were dede &
taken, and wele a xij. or xiiij. hundred men slayne beside / and of
4 the cristen, not one hurt at that tyme / And also howe his sone was
prisoner, whiche might haue ben deliuered hym ageyn / had not be
his outrageous pride / And at the takyng of his sone, slayne the
same day .x. or xij. M^t men. Remembryng alt this, he was so is sad at ali
his losses.
8 soroufult that he wist not what for to do / but sent in alle haste for
his counselle, and for his Capteynes / and praied them to gif him
their best aduise. And if bfore dyner he were hote and tempest-
ous / now is he colde and sobre / for he hath had a sharpe showre
12 to cole him with / There was noon of his folkes that bemoned him / His folk hate
him.
but in their herles dedly hated hym / and dispreised hym / and
seide amonges themself, that there was neuir cruelt man in the ende
had honour nor glory ; and they thought wele their goddes wolde
16 punysshe him for his cruelte / and for thys cause they were alle
discoraged / Natheles they aduised them, by alle weies they coude,
to kepe their honour yn that they had to do / And sent for the
puissaunce that they had ordeyned to conduyte the vitailles & other
20 purueaunce for the hoste, and logged them where as Orkays had
ben discomfite, & made ij. or iij. brigges ouir the watir / and thus
was that quarter furnysshed agein / But for alle that, they were
more in drede of them *withyn* / than they *withyn* were of theym /
24 The Captayne, that the kyng of Sizile had ordeyned to be his
lieftenaunt thorough his reame, knewe for certayne that this grete
armec, that shold conduyte his vitale, were than at the seege, and
might not departe thens / wherfore he thought their vitaille shold
28 come to them *with* lital ease, if he might / and than assembled he a
good company togedir / and daily troubled them, bothe in takyng [1 If so, bk.]
fro them their vitaille, and sodeyn ¹assantes, comyng on them in the
night / and put them in suche trouble that they were very of their
32 lyues. In this wise endured the seege aboute a iij. monethes / In
this meane ceason was Surnome alle hole, and came to se the ladies,
as he had ben accostomed to do. And the kynge thought, as his
bien venu / and for to reioice the company, to make a Banket, where
36 the ladies and gentilwomen shold be / and the Turkes sone / & a
grete part of the noble men that were prisoners / for he wold
reherce vnto them the cruelte of their maister, And also to make
Surnome to telle of his aventure. Thus ordeyned he this Banket / The King of
Sicily gives
his Captains
a Banquet.
40 and sent for his Capteynes, the renomd, & in esspecial for fieraunt

The Sultan's
son, Orcays,
falls in love
with Iolante.

At the King's
command,
Prince Phillip
tells how the
Sultan had
him bound to
a post,

and then
nearly
strangled
him,

and beat him
on the head.

& for his iij. seruantes, whiche iij. serued the ladies at this
Banket / hou be it, the kynge wold haue had them to sitte downe /
There sate downe the kynge & the quene, and bitwene the quene &
faire Iolante was sette Orkays, that ful gladly bihelde this faire 4
lady / And if he had ben lorde of alle the worlde at that tyme, he
knewe no woman that he wold so fayn haue had to his wif / and
thought yn his mynde, by meane of mariage bitwene them two, the
peas might be made / and or he wolde leue hir, he wolde take the 8
cristen lawe / and fro that day forth abode he in this thought / like
as ye shalle here. many othir prisoners were sette at the kynges
boorde, that gretely bihelde his persone and his demeanyng / so
they did the quene and hir doughtir / fferaunt was set at the 12
kynges boorde, with many othis folkes of honour, that sate ther also.
whan the kynge had seten ther a while / and ben mery amonges
them ; he fille in question with Surnome of his hurtes, and com-
maundid hym to telle the trouthe how it was. Surnome durst not 16
disobey the kynges commaundement, but tolde of his takyng, & of
the Othe the Turke made assone as he was brought bifore hym /
that he sholde neuir slepe or he were put to dethe in his presence /
Aftir, how he made bynde hym to a poste / and putte a rope aboute 20
his nekke / and tolde howe the messanger seide vnto him, and
what answere he had / and how-be-it that he was not worthy to
qwite suche a prisoner as Orkays, yet was he offred for his deliuer-
aunce / Aftir, tolde he how the Turkes ¹folkes blamed him for 24
drede of the dethe of Orkays / and howe the kynge sent to the
Turke, & sware, if that he put him to dethe, that Orkays and alle
the other prisoners sholde be hanged / And than, with grete ire and
cruelte, he put the boorde fro hym, and came to him ther as he 28
stode bounden / and drewe the rope so fast, that was aboute his
nek / that he had strangild him, had not his folkes cried on him /
and seide that it was the hangmans office, and contrary to the
honour of so grete a prince to do so foul a dede / and whan he 32
herde the speche of his folkes, he vnbonde him him-self / and
deliuerd him to the hangman / and gaf him ij. strokes with a grete
staff bitwene the shuldres / and one on the hede / and conduyte
him him-self vnto the gallowes, he and his folkes vnarmed & 36
without any ordenaunce, ffor the whiche cause they might make no
resistance at his rescous. ¶ In heryng this tale, euery man wept
for pite, bothe Orkays and all the tothir prisoners. Aftir his tale
was ended, the kynge spake to Athis, and seide, "ye were prisoner 40

- at the distresse of the armee of the kyng of Scottes sone / telle ye
the manere now of your takyng." Athis was alle shamefast / but he
durst not disobey the kynges commaundement, and seide / "sir, it
4 is trewe *pat* by tempest of wedir, the vesselle that y was yn, brake, Prince David then relates how his ship was wreckt,
even bfore the Turkes hoste / wherby the moost part of the folkes
perin were drowned, sauf vij. or viij. that gate the lande / wherof
y was one, purposing to haue yolden vs vnto the mercy of the
8 Turke, thinkyng verrily that god hat done moche for vs to bringe
vs to lande so nere him, for we trusted to fynde mercy yn hym /
and when he sawe vs in this case, he cried with high voice / "sle
tho cristen traitours!" then were they alle slayne, sauf y / whiche
12 was to grete a pite / ffor amonges them was slayne the good Erle and Earl Douglas slain;
Douglas, that was a noble man and a wise / and whan I sawe this
pitous aventure, y withdrew me toward a litil Rok, and set my
bak ther-against / defending my self as wele as y coude, praing
16 all-mighti god of his mercy, as he that abode no thing but dethe /
And as y was yn this daunger / the Turke cried aH-wey to put me
to dethe / my lord Orkays was ther present, and meved with pite, [1 lf. 81, bk.] how Prince Orkays
20 dye / his fadir toke this to grete displeasir, and wold nedis haue rescued him,
put me to dethe, But Orkays did so moche that he put me in
saftee. Aftirwarde, agein his fadir required hym that y might dye,
but he wolde neuir agree therto / but did so moche, whethir his
24 fadir was pleased or not / that he delyuerd me / and made me to
be surely conduyte vnto fferannt, with whom y haue contynued in
seruice sith that tyme" / Aftir this tale tolde / euery man bihelde
Orkays, and thought it was an honorable dede of hym / Than the
28 kynge commaunded Ector to telle by what fortune he was taken,
whiche was right shamefast to telle his tale / natheles he bigan, and
seide thus / "Sir, it is trewe that in my right grete youthe y desired
to se the houre that y might be yn your seruice / for the honour of
32 god principally, and to mayntene the feith ; and for the grete weeles
that euery man rehersed of you, of the quene, & my lady your
doughtir / wherfore it happened me to gete in-to a vesselle with
notable men, that were therin / and by fortune of tempest we his ship was driven to a Turkish shore,
36 aryued yn a lande that helde of the Turke / and y suppose that
oure seruice was not to god agreable / So we were taken & brought
bfore the lord of the Towne / and for-asmoche as we were cristen,
they thought it a nouelte / and they presentid of the company in-to
40 diuerse places, and kepte stille with them my fellawe and me / and

and how,
thro' Prince
Philip's
charge to
K. Ferabras,

he was given
to that king,

[leaf 82]

and by him
set free and
sent to Sicily.

The King of
Sicily bids
Orkays tell
his tale.

he hided in prison / And at the tyme of my deliuerance, y thought
fulle litil of my lif / But that it fortuneth that my maister and felawe,
Surname, made his prisoner, kynge fforabras, to promyse that he
shold sende agein alle cristen men that by fortune had be taken in the 4
warres in any landes of his brothers or his / And he, remembryng
his promyse whan he came home, vndirstode that y was prisoner yn
the same Towne that the Turke was yn that tyme / and he asked me
of him / than was y brought bfore hem bothe / & the Turke, seyng 8
me so megre & pore, toke litil hede of me / but lete me delyuerd to
kynge fforabras / whiche made me be so wele cherissed and taken
hede vnto / that wyllyn litil while y recouered, and wex in good
plite / than on a day went y to the Turke, and y waited on hym / 12
and was alle newe araied & wele reconered / and he bihelde me, and
knewe me not / and asked his brother what y was / and he seide that
y was the cristen man that was deliuered out of prison but late / than
wold he haue put me to dethe / and seide that, by the worthynesse 16
of one man / his saide brother had be taken / and the noblesse & the
corage of the Sezilians was by hym redoubled / and by an othir
man, that his sone had deliuerd, he had taken so grete hurte, that
it was meruaile to thinke; And his hert gaf him, if y departed, 20
that y shold do him grete damage / and thus in no wise wolde he
be agreable to my delyueraunce / and so fille they at wordes / In so
moche that kynge fforabras sware that he had leir dye than to
false his promys / than he deliuered me by night / and made me to 24
be surely conduyte vnto this reame / where y haue abiden euir
sith / and aftir my departyng thens, the Turke sent of his folkes to
breke vp the chambre where as he wende y had ben, to put me to
dethe, in despite of his brothir. But y thanke god & good kynge 28
fforabras / y was out of his daunger / ffor y wote wele, and y had
ben in his handes, he wold haue had litil pite on me / that wold
not haue pite of the dethe of his owne sone / and of so many
notable men, asmoche as to deliure one persone for the sauacione 32
of them alle" / Alle they pat were there of the Turkes meyne, knewe
wele thies tales were trewe, wherof they were gretly encombred and
abasshed of the cruelle & tyrannous disposicion of their maister.
Than spake the kyng to Orkays, & seide / "Sir, ye must now telle 36
your tale" / then saide Orkays, smylingly / "sir, my tale shall sone
be tolde / for y had neuir othir fortune of warre but suche as ye
knowe, sauf one whiche y wolt not reherce for my praise / but for
the praise of them that haue deserued it / trouthe it was, alle that 40

- Athis hath seide / It was my fortune to delyuere him ageinst the will of my fadir / and conduyte him surely vnto ffleraunt / and the next day it happened they made a grete assaute on my logginges,
 4 where as were many folkes slayn / and prisoners taken out of nombre, wher-of y was one, and fild in the handes of Athis, that had ben my prisoner / and whan he was in the Towne, he remembred y had done somewhat for him / and yn grete haste ledde me thorough
 8 the towne / and lete me oute at ^{the} gate that was ageynst my fadirs loggynge / and there deliuered me, seying vnto me / ' I can no bettir horse you, nor harneise you, to your pleasir than ye be / and if y coude, ye may be sure y wolde / therefore ye shalle haue your
 12 owne still ' / and thus departed y fro hym / and came to my fadir, whiche seide, y ought to blame no man of this fortune but my self / by the deliuerance of hym that he was no thinge agreable vnto / than tolde y hym of my deliuerance / and by whom it was, whiche
 16 was a thinge, as who seith, impossible for hym to bileue / & howe be it, he sawe me deliuered, and knewe wele that I was delyuered by hym that y had saued bifore / yet repented hym that he had not put him to dethe / And at suche tyme as y toke Athis, y knewe
 20 him not but by his dedes, which shewed wele him to be a noble man / But whan he toke me, he knewe for certayne that y was the Turkes sone / and what good he might haue had by me / yet was he of so noble corage, that he forgate all couetise, and deliuered
 24 me " / Than might folkes se howe basshfulst Athis was, to here his praise, and also for drede he shold be shent / The kynge, the ladies, and alle the company behelde him, which loked alle rede, and sore abasshed / than asked him the kynge / " what / Athis made ye this
 28 deliuerance " / and kneled downe alle shamefastly, and seide / " fforsothe sir, yea / wherof y cry you mercy, ffor y coude in no wise put him in aduenture that had saued my lif / and if yn this matier y haue offendid ageinst youre grace, or ageinst my lorde my
 32 maister / y biseche you bothe of pardone / and offere my self to what punysshment it pleasith either of you to apointe / for y had leuer a dyde, than by me he sholde haue ben in daunger of his lif." Orkays repented him sore of this that he had tolde / for he sawe
 36 wele by Athis pat he was both abasshed and adred / The kyng perceyued wele that Orkays and Athis were bothe abasshed, and seide to Orkays, " ye haue tolde me of the fredom of Athis / and me semeth ye drede that y shold con him maugre / but forsothe, y
 40 do not / I knowe wele there was offence / but the cause was so

Prince Orcays says he did free Prince Davyd,

and was then captured, and set at liberty by him.

[If. 82, l.k.]

Orcays praises Prince David.

David confesses his fault against the King in setting Orcays free;

and is at once
forgiven.

[² leaf 83]

A Peacock is
brought in,
and on it the
King vows
to defend
his realm;

Orkays vows
(after his
father's
death) to
give back all
the Turks'
conquests to
Sicily.

Ferant and
his Knights
vow

never to let
the Sultan
be ransomed,
if they catch
him.

A Dance
winds up
the Banquet.

resonable, that with alle my hert y forgif him" / Athis thanked him
right humbly / and than went to his maister, & besought ¹him of
pardone, whiche lightly forgaf him; and aftir, alle his lif, loued he
him the bettir for that noble dede. ¶ Aftir thies wordes, was 4
brought yn a Poo by ij. gentilwomen / And the kynge made to the
Poo his advowe first / and promysed to diffende his reume to his
power / "and that, notwithstanding the pride and tyranny of his
aduersary *withoute* him, he wolde neur do tyranny nor shame to 8
prisoner[es] that were noble men or of any good disposicion / but shold
kepe them yn honour and noblesse as longe as they were in his
gouernaunce" / Aftir, made Orkays his avowe, and seide that, "to his
power, he wolde put him in peyne to make pees bitwene the Turke 12
his fadir, & þe kynge / & if his fadir died before hym, he shold
neur, daies of his liffe, make warre *with* the kynge of Sizile, nor
with his Reaume / but rathir yelde agein vnto him alle that his
ffadir had taken fro hym / for he sawe him so wele *puruaide* in alle 16
goode vertues / that aboute alle othir kynges, he desired his fauour
and acqueyntaunce" / but the trouthe was this / that faire yonge
lady, that sate by hym, meued his hert with this pite and kynde-
nesse more than any othir thinge / though he spake it not / eueri 20
man coude him grete thanke / The kynge, the quene, and their
doughter thankid him moche / Aftir was the Poo borne to fferaunt,
whiche sent it agein vnto the lordes and knyghtes that were
prisoners, whiche made their avowes accordyng to the same that 24
Orkays had made. Aftir this, made fferaunt his avowe, and sware
that, for the grete crueltees that he had seen *without* nombre in the
Turkes persone, wold he neur yelde him vnto him / and if the
Turke came in his daunger, he wolde neur put him to ransom; 28
and by the same avowe required he, and praide alle them that were
vndir him, that they wolde make the same promes / The Halle was
fulle of noble folkes, and the Poo was brough[t] bfore them / and
euery man helde vp his hande, & sware *with* lowde voice the same 32
promesse that fferaunt had made / The Poo was brought bfore the
ijj. seruantes of fferaunt / whiche serued bfore the ladies / and
they made their aduowe to god, to the ladies, and to the poo / that
they shold truly kepe the same promesse / that their maister 36
made / ²Thies avowes were put in writyng by the kynges of
armes / than were the lordes taken vp / and the Mynstrells came
yn / and the lordes, knyghtes and squyers, ladies and gentilwomen,
daunced ther / that night was ther no tidinges of the seege / 40

[² ff. 83, bk.]

Orkays bicame so amorous of this faire lady / that he coude haue
 no rest / and often tymes came he, by licence of the kynge, to se the
 quene & their faire doughter / In so moche that folkes perceyued
 4 wele by his maner / that he loued hir our alle thinge / and folkes
 seide amonges them, that it were a mete mariage if he were
 cristened, for therby shold the pees be sure and ferme / but without
 he were cristened, ther was noon of the Reaume that wold be agre-
 8 able ther-vnto / This faire lady knewe wele of alle this / whiche
 made no countenance like it / for if she had knowen Surnome, or
 one of his felawes, of as noble lynage as hym, she had leuer haue
 had one of them with right lital, than him with alle the Turkes
 12 landes, and in esspecial Le Surnome / for aboue alle othir she liked
 him best; hou be it, there was in any of the tothir two as moche
 honour as in any persone neded to be wisshed, though Surnome
 passed them. ¶ Tidinges sone ranne by some prisoners, that were
 16 delyuered in that meane tyne / that the Turke was put in know-
 lage of thavowes of the Banket / & whanne he herd them, he aduised
 them weel / and perceyued by the kinges avowe that he had made,
 to diffende his reaume to his power / that he wold not lightly
 20 delyuere vp that Towne that he was yn / And aftir, remembered the
 avowe of his sone, which was / what-so-euir he conquered in his
 lif, aftir his dethe shold be deliuerd agein vnto the kynge of Sizile /
 Aftir this, he thought on the avowe of fferaunt and alle his / whiche
 24 was more lothe vnto hym than any of the tothir / for by that sawe
 he his dethe sworne, if he came in their daunger / Also he sawe his
 folkes alle out of corage, and thought wele that his goddes hated
 hym / on the tothir side, he sawe the maner of the sege, that was
 28 daily wers for him and wers / and bettir for them that were withyn
 the towne / also what scarcyte of vitaille they had / and with how
 grete payne they gate that lital that they had / Alle thise tidinges
 considered, he sawe him self how he had done shamefully to his
 32 brother / whiche he wist wele wold neuir be agreeable to do hym
 1 neither ayde ne seruice. with alle thise thoughtes, he fille in suche
 sorowe and drede that he wist not wele what to do / And so he
 thought to assemble his Capteynes and his counselle / and to shewe
 36 them thies matiers, in suche wise that they shold not perceyne by
 his maner nor his wordes, drede nor fere in him to slake their
 corage, but toke this conclusion to breke with them, as though he
 vnderstode them enclyned to alle his pleasir / and of high and noble
 40 corage, and thought to shewe his owne maner high and feers / for

Orkays is
head over
ears in
love with
Iolante.

But she likes
Prince Philip
best.

The Sultan
hears of the
vows at the
Banquet,

and sees that
his siege of
Naples goes
worse and
worse.

[1 leaf 84]

He calls a
Council.

wel he wist, in conclusion, that generally they alle wold gif him counselle to departe / There may no man telle the grete deuoir that the kynge of Siziles folkes did every day / grete payne it was to kepe them from fighting with the Turke, and many tymes went 4 they out and scarmysshed with hem / and alt-way to the damage of the Turke, wherby the kynge saw wel that the Turkes folkes had lost hert & corage / and in his ymaginacion thought to make a grete assaute vpon the Turkes loggyng / & concluded in his secrete 8 counselle so to do / Than sent he a seruaunt of his, that was wel spoken, secrete and wise, to his lieftenaunt, and sent hym worde at what houre he wold make thassaute vpon the Turke, warnyng hym to be there *with* alle the power he might make ; and that he shold 12 first set vpon the Turke ; and while he was yn hande *with* hym vpon the tone side, wolde he haue alle his power come oute of the towne, & sett on hym on the tothir side.

The King of Sicily resolves to attack the Sultan in rear

and front at once.

YE haue wel herde how the Turke was determyned to sende 16 for his counselle and alle his Capitaynes / & so he did / and whan they were bifore hym, he seide vnto them in this maner / “ffaire lordes, the cause that y haue sent for you is this / ye knowe wel, first, the takyng of my Sone ; I suppose also, ye 20 vndirstonde thavowe that he hath made, whiche turneth me to grete displeasir / for if y were dede, the payne that y haue taken in my conquest shold litil profite ; for his avowe is, aftir my dethe to yelde it agein / and ye knowe wel y haue no moo childreen nor 24 othir heyre than him, sauf my brother, whiche y sha^{ll} not right wel accomde *with*” / than seide he smylyngly / “ye knowe wel also, how by the avowes that haue be made, my dethe is sworne / Also my aduersary hath made his avowe to diffende his lande, and 28 neur to trete with me / ye se ^loure conduyte, and thexploite of warre that we haue done / If y coude se you of as good corage as y haue seen you before tymes, y shold be wel comforted / but sith we came bifore this towne, I sawe no good assaute made by vs ; 32 wherfore y pray you gete agein your good corage, and I sha^{ll} not leue you, but bere you company in alle daungers” / Thus endid his wordes ; and they alle withdrewe them, and spake togedre a while ; and than, by one of the best of them, he was answerd in this wise / 36 “Sir, we haue alle wel vndirstand your seyng / and thervpon spoken togedre / and right humbly we beseche you / of that I shal say vnto you, to take no displeasir / for it is as late to breke vnto you now as it can be / and if we had durst, we had done it long 40

The Sultan lays his bad case before his Council:—

His Son ‘ll give back his conquests ;

his death is sworn ;

[1 H. 84, bk.]

his men are out of heart.

His Council answer:—

- sith / ye knowe, sir, the hardnesse and aduersitee that is nowe
come on you / and it semeth, sauf your displeasir / that the naturall
pite that a ffadir or a brother ought to haue, or a good prince, to
4 his suggettes & seruantes, is gretly quenched and almost failed yn
you / whiche is a grete pite and damage / and hath caused alle your
frendes and seruantes to be vtterly discomforted ; we knowe wele,
for these causes haue thises avowes be made on your persone / ye
8 knowe youre sone in daunger, that might haue ben yolden vnto
you for a right meane man, to regarde of hym / but ye wold be
thereto in no wise agreable / but to put hym in thauenture of dethe /
and alle your trewe seruantes, that were prisoners with hym, and
12 alle them that ye had leyde in plegge for the kyng your brother ;
yea / and perauenture his owne persone, ffor we knowe hym suche /
that forto suffre dethe he will not breke his promes ; and that might
ye perceyue wele, by the cristen man that he deliuered" / Than
16 answerd the Turke, and seide : "by that delyueraunce haue y lost
my sone. But whatsoever hath be done before this tyme / be it
good or euyl, we be in suche cas nowe as ye se / whiche we may
not long endure without othir prouidence : and it toucheth you alle
20 aswell as to me / and therefore y haue assembled you to haue your
advise / put out of your hertes all rancour & debates, and remembre
the matiers nowe, yn suche cace as they are yn" / It semed to them
alle that were there, that debates might litil auantage / and that
24 they most purvey for othir remedy, for they were in right grete
scarste of vitayles, by the kyng of Siziles lieftenaunt and his folkes,
whiche dayly toke it from them. The Turke asked thavice of hym
that best pleased hym the reason of / whiche saide in this wise /
28 "sir, for the causes that haue be rehersed here / men shal not se
folkes speke to-gedir a doseyne wordes, but it is of the conduyte of
you / and of your hoste / and to sey the trouthe of their corage and
wille / it is no thing towardes you nor your warres / as they were
32 whan ye came hider / for every man seith / that in youre persone,
as to the gudyng of your warres, they se neither rewle nor
ordenaunce ; wherby they are so discouraged, that xxth Sizilians are
worth an .C. of your folkes. Also youre vitayles faile you / and
36 wynter shall come on hastily, and ye haue not folkes y-nough to
holde your sege / and for to conduyte your vitayle / wherfore the
kyng of Siziles folkes distressith them dayly that conduyte it / And
therefore, myn advise shalbe this / that, or ye haue any grettir losse,
40 that ye breke vp the sege / and drawe ye all this wynter tyme in-to
sege.

'Your troubles are all of your own making :

you wouldn't save your son's life when you could.'

The Sultan says, 'We're in a bad plight.'

What's to be done ?'

[1 leaf 85]

One of the Council answers :—

'Your folk see neither rule nor order in your conduct of this war.'

You'd better break up the sege.

The longer
you stay,
the greater
your loss and
shame 'll be.

suche townes of this Reaume as ye haue conquered / men shall se
that this shalle not be for your honour / but byholde / if ye abide
here any lenger, what honour ye may wyne therby / I dare sey, at
last ye shal be fayn to departe, whan ye shal haue spent youre 4
richesse, and peraventure lost many moo of your folkes, wherthorugh,
your departyng than shal be grettir damage and more shame than
it shold be at this day / for in defeaute of vitaile, can ye not gete
that place yet / it is so wele purveide / & by trefte ye can not gete 8
it / ffor ye knowe wele what avowe the kynge hath made; wherfore
ye may entende by no meane to haue it but by force; and beholde
hou fer ye are therfrom / for sith ye came hider, was not one of vs
so hardy that durst thinke to approche to their walles / wherfore, 12
alle thinges considered, with your correccion I am of thopinion of

When you've
withdrawn
to one of your
townes, you
can send
home for
more help,

your departyng. And whan ye shalle be withdrawen in-to what
Towne of this Reaume it shal please you / ye may sende than to
the grete lordes of your Reaume, to shewe them yn what cas ye be / 16
and make them to take aduise amonges them, and sende you suche
counsell as they thinke best / and then most they nedes helpe to

[1 lf. 85, bk.]

execute ¹suche counsell as they gif you; and from hensforth
afferme your self to bileue your counsell, and to werke by their 20
aduise / for the moost wise that lyueth, hath nede of counsell and
aduise / and if it please you so to do / ye shal kepe that ye haue
conquered; for youre enemy is not mighti / And y trust, if it will

and do better
next sum-
mer.

please you to bileue your kynne and counselle, by the next somer 24
your honour shal be recouerd, and be in as good caas as euir it
was." Thise wordes, herde by the Turke, displeased him no
thinge / and so he asked the tothir folowyng, their aduises / But
euery man was so weried and annoied, that they were of the same 28
opinion. The Turke then concluded on this opinion, seyng / "ye

The Sultan
agrees to
retire from
the siege in
twelve days.

blame that y haue not done by counsel, and yet me semeth, by
vsyng of this counsell, bothe shame & blame shal bifalle me / but
as hereyn y wol leue myn opinion / and do by your aduise and 32
counselle; and me thinkith it were good to knowe the day of oure
departyng." than concluded they on the xijth day folowyng / And
that shold be in the night / euery man shold trusse his tente and
his cariage / and euery man be on horsbak at the spryng of day / 36
The conclusion this taken, euery man was warned that had any
charge / but the day of their departyng was our longe & damage-
able for theym / ¶ Ye haue wele herde here-bifore of thentirprise
that the kynge of Sizile had taken, and how he had assertayned 40

- his lieftenaunt therof; and the messanger had quytte hym so wele, that he was entred secretly in-to the Towne agein / and reported vnto the kynge, for trouthe, that in his lieftenaunt shold
- 4 be no defaute / for he wold be there *with* moo than .x. thousand men / at suche houre as the kynge had commaundid him / whiche
- 10 houre was at the poynt of the day, when men might vnnethes se / and they had taken that houre / for cause the tothir ij. puissaunces
- 8 of the Turke might not so easely come to-gedir vnto hym as if it had ben day / The day of this entirprise was on the morowe aftr the turke had assembled his counsell, as ye haue herde. This night the kynge-of Sizile made alle purueaunce for his goyng forth, as he
- 12 that wold be there him-self. vndir his baner that day he herde masse, & made alle his company do the same / and than toke he leue of the quene and of alle the ladies, whiche he lefte fulle sore wepyng; for grete drede had they of hym / and of his company.
- 16 The kynge wente downe, and came to the gates, praing alle his folkes to quyte hem ¹wele, for if they might abate the Turkes pride / they shold from thensforth lede the remenaunt of their lyues in ioie and in disport, for by this meane shold ende the
- 20 warres / wherthorough so moche cristen people had diel / fferaunt, that was bifore *with* his company, whan he shold go oute, he escorted in like wise his iij. scruauntes; and they made their avowes to god, that, shold outhur dye, or be the first that shold come to the
- 24 Turkes tentes, and if they founde him there, they shold put them in deuoir to accomplissh their maisters avowe / In like wise, as the kynge hath monysshed his folkes / so did the lieftenaunt, that was without, and nerre vnto the Turkes tentes, exorted his folkes, shew-
- 28 yng them that his entirprise was not for no smalle searmyssh or assemble / but either to destroie the Turke, or to dye in the quarelle / eueri man promysed hym to do wele; & that for drede of dethe they wold not lette to accomplissh the kynges pleasirs / And as
- 32 they were in thise wordes, they were so nygh their enemyes that they were amonges tentes and pavilions / and came with suche strength and corage, that at their first comyng they bare downe alle that they mette *with*, ouirthrowing pavilions, and sleying men so
- 36 many, that it was mernaile to se / Than was the crie and the noise so moche, that they herd it in-to the Towne / than they opened the gates / and fferaunt and his company went first out, and went streight vpon the Turkes waeche, whiche they lightly destroyed /
- 40 than came they to the Turkes loggyng / whiche they fonde fortified /

But the next morning, at break of day, the Sicilian Captain-general, with 10,000 men

[1 leaf 86]

(the King having heartend his folk),

attacks, and is among the Turkish tents, slaying their men.

Ferant sallies from Naples.

The 3 Princes
charge up to
the Sultan's
tent, and,

having sent
for the King
of Sicily,

[1 H. 56, bk.]

rount the
Turks.
The Sultan
offers to
surrender,

but the foot-
soldiers cut
off his head,
and stick it
on a spear.

The Sicilians
retire to
Naples.

The two other
Turkish
Divisions
hold together,

but litil while endured it ageinst them / The kynge folowed fieraunt
with grete corage, and alle his folkes / and perceyued wele anon that
the Turkes loggyng was wonne ; wherof, if he were glad and ioifult,
it is no question. The iij. felawes, that y haue spoken of before, that
moche desired to accomplissh their promes, did so moche that they
came to the Turkes tent, whereas fond hym accompayned with alle
his folkes, that were than assembled in harneys, praying them to
quite hem wele / when the iij. felawes sawe this company, they
sent anon for the kynge, whiche came fforthwith ; and whan they
sawe the kynge nere them / they smote yn amonges their enemyes
with suche strength and corage, that lightly they made them weye /
for they ouirthrowe alle that abode their strokes. The kynge, that
was nere them, behelde hem in grete meruaile, thinkyng that it was
impossible for any mortalle bodies to haue done that they did. Thus
in litil while, the grete puissaunce that was aboute the Turke,
brake, and was discomfite / than wolde he haue yolden him / but
noman wolde take him. Thise iij. felawes, whan they sawe him
in that caas, coude not fynde in their hertes to lay handes on him /
and take him prisoner they might not, for their auowes ; so lette
they the fote men to slee hym / and made to smyte of his hede, &
put it on a spere / And whan the kynge of Sizile sawe he had the
ouirhand of his enemyes / he made to blowe retrayte, for drede of
the tothir ij. puissaunces / for by than was the sonne risen. And
euery man, seing the kynges baner withdrawe / drewe them vnto
him glad & ioifult, with prisoners and richesse out of nombre. Thus
drewe they hem alle vnto the Towne ; for wele they wist the seege
was ended / hou be it, they might haue had grete harme by the
remenaunt of the Turkes folkes, seyng they were sore foughten with
afore / Thise othir ij companyes of the Turkes were assembled
to-gedre & embatailed for to come vnto the Turke ; but anone they
were assertayned that he was dede, and alle his logging ouirthrowen /
and so they kepte hem stille to-gedre / they sawe the kynge with-
drawe to the towne, and entred yn with alle his folkes alle at his
pleasir. The ladies were assertayned of the grete iourney and good
auenture, that god by his grace had youen the kynge vpon his
enemyes : than went they to chirche, to thanke god / The kynge,
whan he came to the Towne, he alight at the Chirche, and alle the
belles of the Towne range / he and alle his folkes thonked god with
goode herte / and made his offrynges / and aftir went to his
loggyng / and made to purvey that his lieftenaunt and alle his folkes

- were wele logged / They had be there but litil while, but the
 vacche tolde them for trouthe that the tothir ij. compaynes of the
 Turkes departed / Than shortly the kynge and alle his folkes went
 4 to horsbake, and folowed their enemyes / and *withyn* short space
 ouirtoke them / and they wold haue embatailed them / but they
 were so affraied and discouraged, as they that had lost their hede /
 for they abode but litil while / but toke them to flee / and than the
 8 chace bigan, whiche dured a iij. or iiij. myle, wherein were so many
 slayne, that it was meruaile to thinke, for there was no diffence
 amonges them. than the kynge made his folkes to retourne agein
 yn-to the ¹Towne / and made to take alle the good that was bilong- [1 leaf 87]
 12 yng to the Turke and his hoste, to be departed amonges his folkes,
 to euery man aftir his degre / and was good innumerable, biside the
 prisoners they had goten / Also they fonde in the vessells that
 caried gold and siluer, more than ij. Millions of golde / euery man
 16 was so wele garnyssed *with* othir goodes, that they toke litil hede
 therof; but by a comen assent, and with good hert, gaf it vnto the
 kynge for to mayntene his warres / prouidyng that they might do
 their owne pleasirs *with* their prisoners. The kynge with good
 20 wille agreed ther-to, and sawe him by this meane riche y-nough to
 mayntene his warres, and for to conquere a nother reaume ther-to.
 Of alle the goodes that were goten there, Surnome, Athis and Ector,
 were not the bettir / for euery man knewe him self a kynges sone /
 24 and thought, now the warres were ended, they had litil nede of
 good / for they shold haue good y-nough, bothe for them self, and
 to make their felawes riche y-nough for euir / and thought eche of
 theim, if his felowe knewe that he were a kynges sone, they had
 28 ben to famylier *with* him. Thus had alle thies iij. kynges sones one
 thought / and eche of them thought neuir to faile his felawes, but
 to make them riche for euir. many folkys meruailed moche that
 thise iij. toke nomore hede of good / for they toke hede of non
 32 othir thinge, but only to be wele horsid and wele armed / and wele
 beseyne / & of alle this lakkid they nought at any tyme they wold
 aske it. whan they were retourned agein vnto their loggings,
 vnarmed & wele araied, they semed liker aungells than men / The
 36 kynge of Sizile rehersed in the presence of the ladies, and of alle
 them that were there, the grete worthinesse that he had sen in
 them iij. that day bifore the Turkes tente / and seide that he was
 half abassed and aferde to beholde the grete noblesse of them; and
 40 tolde howe they had parted the prese, and how many folkes fille

but soon
retreat,

take to flight,
and are cut
up by the
Sicilians,

who take
large booty
and 2,000,000
of gold.

The 3 Princes
of France,
Scotland,
and England
will not
accept any
plunder.

They look
liker angels
than men.

The King of
Sicily tells
of the Three
Princes'
prowess.

downe aboute them for fere of their strokes; so many, that their horses might vnnethe haue rowme to stande in / than tolde he aftir of the dethe of the Turke; And that, notwithstanding the grete crueltee that eche of theym had founde in hym / whan they sawe 4 him in wille to yelde him / there was none of theym wolde lay hande on him / but lete the fote men allone *with* him. Euery man

[1 If. 87, bk.]

¹ had grete pleasir to here the kynge reherce the Honour and noblesse of thise iij. yonge gentilmen / This night passed the kynge 8 forth in grete ioie / and on the morowe made many masses to be seide, in thanking god of their good fortune / Aftir dyner, assembled he his counselle, to take aduise vpon suche besinesse as he had to do, for he was bothe wise and worthy, and loued and dred god / 12 and for thise causes euery man loued him, and desired to serue him. And, aftir his power, he had ben aHwey large and curtaise / and right famylier *with* noble folkes / wherfore he had their loue so fermely, that, for to dy, they wold leue hym in no daunger / ¶ whan 16 his counselle was assembled, he saide amonges them in this wise /

and asks
their advice

“My trewe & kynde frendes, by whom at this day I haue hadde this high and noble fortune / wherby y may come to the recouere of alle my reame / yet can y not leue to calle on you, to put you in 20 daunger for me / notwithstanding the grete damages & harmes that ye haue suffred for my sake / ye se wele, my trewe frendes & sogettes, the estate of oure enemyes, and of vs bothe / wherupon y pray you to counselle me / for the wele of cristendome and the 24 recouere of my reame / and y am redy in what ye wille aduise me, to iuarde my body and my goodes to thaccomplishment therof, if me thinke it be leefult.” This counselle was long in takyng, for

as to the
recovery of
his realm.

they knewe wele it was tyme and nede / wherfore they counselled 28 the kynge to tary not, but to ouir-ride his reame / and to conquere the townes agein, that the Turke had wonne; ffor they thought wele, if he went shortly thier-about, his enemyes were yet in suche drede & discomfort, that he shold fynde litil diffence in them / 32 And they thought it neded not to telle Orkays yit the dethe of his fadir, notwithstanding he had made his avowe to yelde alle agein / but they thought it shold be grettir honour for the kynge to conquere it agein by might. ¶ In this maner was it ordeyned and 36 concluded / and the kynge made alle comoners to departe, sauf only men of werre and sowdiours / This night made he redy alle thinges for to kepe the felde, an[d] on the morowe was alle his ordenaunce & Artilry carted redy to go forth / And the quene and hir doughtir, 40

They urge
him to press
on, and re-
take all his
towns from
the Turks.

and alle hir ladies, went vnto a faire Castelle, but iiij. myle then.
 By than was spred the tidynges of the grete victory thorough alle
 his Reaume / wherof they made meruailous ioie / and yelded than-
 4 ¹kynges to god. On the morowe, came many folkes vnto the
 kyng, bringyng vitaille and othir stuff / so that the kyng wende
 there had not ben so many holdyng the cristen feith in a gret parte
 of his Reaume / Than concludeth the kyng, to sende forth tidynges
 8 to alle cristen princes, of the victory that god had youen him / than
 were messangers sent to euery Reaume ; so that, withyn litil while,
 this grete iournay was knowen thorough alle cristendome / & euery
 prince made processions to be gon, thorough-out his Reaume / and
 12 belles to be rongen in euery chirche, for the good aventure / &
 many suche, as had take litil hede of the kyng of Sizile, or of his
 Reaume, and had called him an vnhappy kyng / nowe calle they
 hym wele vred, & repente them of their seying / The kyng of
 16 Sesile, seing his grete puissaunce, & wille of his folkes, went forth
 conqueryng on his enemyes / and wanne with assaute the first
 towne he came vnto, whiche was the strengist of the Reaume, sauf
 only that / that himself had be biseged yn / but they withyn the
 20 towne had lost all corage / wherfore ther was founde litil diffence
 in them / and alle they were put to dethe, without takyng of any
 one prisoner / This takyng put the remenaunt of the turkes in
 suche drede / that daily they departed out of the land / The kyng
 24 of Luby him-self, and alle his company, were goon agein in-to his
 owne Reaume / they that abode, were hopeles of any socour or aide
 that might come to them / wherby, in litil while, what by force and
 by trette, the moost part of the Reaume was recouerd, sauf twoo or
 28 thre Townes, that were nigh the see / and that was, for they thought
 that they might sonner haue socour than any that was withyn the
 Reaume / The kyng, that was sore trauailed / and it was than
 wynter, toke counselle to lete them be til somer, and than to
 32 assemble his power agein / and to lay sege to them, and wyne
 them / Than lefte he fferant in the next place put ioyned vnto
 them / for grete trust had he in him / and went home him self /
 and abode the remenaunt of the wynter with the quene and his
 36 faire doughtir, whom him thought tyme was to be mariel / But
 aboue alle thing, he desired to bistowe hir to a man of grete honour
 and worthinesse. ¶ Nowe shalle we leue a while of the grete warres
 of Sizile, & speke of Almayne. [*Illumination : on right, Messengers*
 40 *giving a letter to a King : on left, Kings, Bishops and Lords.*]

All the
 Sicilians
 rejoice at
 the victory :
 [1 leaf 88]

and news of
 it is sent to
 all Christian
 princes.

The King
 retakes from
 the Turks all
 their Sicilian
 towns,

except 2 or 3
 near the sea.

[1 ff. 88, bk.]
The Emperour,
Frederick,
Duke of
Bruswick,

dies.

The Electors

give his
empire to
the King of
Sicily, who

thus becomes
an Emperour.

[2 leaf 89]

The biggest
Sicilian town
in Turkish
hands

is taken

by the 3
Princes,

IN that tyme had the Emperour a duc of Bruswitt, named
ffrederike, the whiche, for none nede that the kynge of Sizile
had, nor his Reanne, wolde neuir entende to do him aide nor
socour / And for trouthe, he was olde & beyonde the yeres to bere 4
armes / beside his age, was he as couetous as any man might be /
thise ij. principalle causes letted hym to do any aide to the Reaume
of Sizile / There is nobody, be he olde or yonge, but ones shalt dy /
This Emperours tyme came, that nedes he most departe out of the 8
world / and lefte grete tresour behinde him, whiche, aftir his dethe,
litol profited him / and in his lif did him noo worship / for it
diffendid him to accomplissh suche thinges as by his dignite and
office he ought to do. aftir his dethe, anone the Chesers of thempyre 12
were assembled, and aduised amonges them, whom they might make
Emperour ; and concluded amonges them that the kynge of Sizile
shold be it / for he had endured grete trauaile and payne for the feith.
So they purueyde in alle haste to be ascertayned of his pleasir / and 16
befille so, that on cristmasse day the presentacion of the Empire was
brought hym, whiche he resceyued fulle humbly / Thus was the
kynge of Sizile Emperour, and purposed to do more seruice to god,
if the cace requyred, than euir did he before hym / Than ordeyned 20
he his aray, accordyng to his estate, more rially than it had ben
bifore. Whan thise tidynges were knowen thorough the Reaume,
they made grete ioie / and euery man seide, that he was moost
worthy to be it, of any man that lyued / In this meane ceason, 24
Surnome and his ij. felaws asked leue of their maister to go vnto
an Enterpryce ; and he graunted them, and accompayned them
2right mightly / they tolde their maister no thing whider they
went / and he enquired them not / for he trusted y-nough in their 28
honour & wisdomes / than went they vnto a Towne, that was the
biggest that was in the turkes handes / than sent they bifore of
their folkes to be hidde in a wode but litil thens / and them-self
went vnto the towne with suche feliship as pleased them / & scalet 32
it be night / even against the point of the day / & were entred
vpon the walles of the maister Toure or any man espied them /
than went they downe, and opened the gates / and lete the remen-
aunt come yn, that were in a busshment without. and than aroos 36
the noise and the cry thoroughout the towne / and euery man wold
haue goon to their harneys / but it was to late / by the noblesse of
thise iij. and of their company, was the Towne sone deliuerd of alle
the Turkes / for they made serche euery house, and slewe as many 40

- as they coude fynde withyn the Towne / Then sawe they in the haunen, liyng many vesselles / wherin they supposed was the richesse of the Towne. Than made they alle these goodes to be departed
 4 amonges their company / and whan euery man was rewarded & wele logged / they made a lettir to their maister / and sent him worde howe they hadde done / “praying hym, if it pleased hym, to come thider, or ellis to commaunde them his pleasirs.” Whan fferaunt
 8 sawe the letters, he redde them with glad chere / and perceyued wele that his folkes had wonne Gayett, the moost stronge place that was withyn the Reaume of Sizile / Than was he as ioyfull as any man might be / and toke suche company as pleased hym, and
 12 went vnto them / and, at his departyng, wrote a lettir vnto the Emperour, shewing him alle this matier, how it was / and howe grete a wele it was for his Reaume; ffor as long as the turkes had ben able to kepe that place, they might haue kepte alle the cuntre
 16 aboute them in tribute. and withyn that lettir he had closed the lettir that had be sent hym by his iij. seruauntes. ¶ Now leueth the tale a while to speke of them, & retourneth to speke of Orkays.
 20 **T**Routhe it was, that he knewe wele that the sege was departed / but he knewe not in what maner / notwithstanding he en- quered often / but noman wolde ¹telle him, for the Emperour had commaundid so / and so he knewe wele, sith the sege was broken, he coude not be delyuered without raunsome / wherfore he
 24 desired to speke with the Emperour / and the Emperour went vnto him; to whom he seide / “sir, y knowe certaynly that þe sege þat was this before the Towne, is no lenger / wherfore y beseeche you that ye wille entende to my delyueraunce / and y promyse you that
 28 y shalt do my trewe deuoir to make the pees and accorde bitwene my lorde my fadir, and you” / “fforsothe,” saide the Emperour / “it is alle othir wise than ye knowe; but entre in-to yondir lital chambre / and ij. or iij. of your folkes, suche as best shalle please
 32 you / and y shalt telle you suche thinges as touche you right nere” / than went he in-to the chambre / and the Emperour called v. or vj. of his counselle with hym / and went in to Orkais, and saide vnto hym / “my frende, for youre wele, it behoueth that ye be aduertised
 36 for suche thinges as are befallen sith ye were prisoner” / than tolde he him alle holly the dethe of his ffadir / the destrucción of his folkes, what nombre was ded of them / Aftir, he tolde him the reconere of his places / and of the takyng of his last place, that
 40 was wonne agein by Surnome and his felawes. Than tolde he him

and all the
Turks in it
are slain.

This town is
Gaeta.

The Turkish
Prince
Orcays

[1 lf. 89, bk.]

is told of the
death of his
fader;

and of the
loss of his
towns.

Orcays is not to be admitted to ransom till the Emperor has retaken all his Sicilian towns.

As Orcays is now Sultan,

[1 leaf 90]

he declares he will keep his promise to give up his Sicilian towns to the Emperor.

the grace that god had youen him, to be chosen a diffendour of the cristen feith; and how he was Emperour; wherby he was bounde to mayntene & encrease the cristen lawe. Aftir he had tolde Orkais this, he seide, vpon the request that he hade made vnto him for his 4
delyueraunce / that he entendid not to put him to synaunce, biforn he had by force recouerd his inheritance / and than he wolde be agreable to his delyueraunce / Orkais, hering thies tidynges, by the whiche he vndirstode the dethe of his ffadir / and of many a noble 8
man that was with him / wherfore he made grete sorow & lamentacion, & so did alle suche of his folkes as he had with him / so moche that noon of hem coude speke a worde. But at laste, a wise knyght of his seid vnto him, "My lorde! suche be the adventures of 12
this world / there is no man can be assured here, of parfit wele / and as for this losse, ye can not recouere it by your sorowe / Wherfore the best meane of remedy is, sith it is so fortunel, now to ouirpasse this sorowe / & to remembre the best waies for your self / for ye be 16
rightfull heire vnto the Turke; & his inheritance most descende vnto you / and your abklyng here shalle gretly annoie you / and litil profit vnto the Emperour that is here pre'sent. It is not Longe sith ye aduowed biforn Hym / if the Turke were dede, that ye wolde 20
delyuere vnto his handes as moche as the Turke shold leue you of this Reaume; wherfore, it is wele done now, that ye accomplissh your auowe / and as for your delyueraunce, ye may apointe with him to his pleasir / aftir your power" / "Trewly," saide Orkais, 24
"that y haue promysed and auowed, y am redy to holde" / the Emperour thankid him / "nathelees," he saide, "that he purposed, neither be tretise nor apointment, to recouere no place of his owne Reaume, but like as it had ben taken fro him by force / so wolde 28
he wyne it agein, or euir that he entendid to the deliueraunce of any prisoner that he had" / Orkais, hering this answeire, with the remenaunt of his sorowe, was passyng heuy and pensiff, and toke leue of the Emperour / and retourned to his logging / where he 32
endured in grete sorow / til such tyme as ye shalle here-aftir here / fferant, as y haue seide you, did so wele, that he came saufly to the towne that his folkes had newly taken / where as his thre seruantes ioiffully receyued him / ye may wele wite there was grete 36
ioie amonges them; for he loued them thre as wele as they had ben his owne children. Now shall y telle you of the Turkes folkes that were retourned in-to their Cuntrees. [*Illumination: March of Troops from a City: baggage-waggons, footmen, horsemen and Chiefs.*] 40

MAny tymes bi-fore, hadde they retourned *with* grete glorie, The Turks who've gone home beaten,
semyng to them that al the world might not endure ageinst them / But now is it othirwise / for they retourned *with*
4 heuy chere for their maister, that they had thus pitously lost for
lakke of corage. They that were in the contre abidyng, hering and their countrymen there,
this sorowfull tidinges of the dethe of their lorde, coursed the houre
that euir suche fleers were borne, and helde them as shamed men,
8 *without* honour / and they that had lost their frendes, wolde fulle
fayne haue putt them to dethe / Thus wist they not whedir to go / [1 lf. 90. bk.]
but were fayne to hide them in their houses / as they that durst
not be shewed / wisshyng that they had neuir departed out of
12 Sizile / but that they had ben slayne whan their maister was / the
sorowe was right grete ouir alle the Turkes lande, *with* alle his
sogettes, whan they knewe the trouthe of his dethe / and that he
had but one only sone, whiche was yit prisoner / thus had they have no comfort,
16 no recomfort / for the moost part of the grete lordes that shold helpe
to sustene them and comfort them, were dede in the company of
their lorde / natheles, at last they toke hert vnto them / and
assembled the iij. estates throughout alle the lond, to take counselle
20 and anise vpone the gouernaunce of euery contre & lordshipe / & of
the deliuerance of their yonge lord / and as they were for this
nede assembled, came tidinges vnto them of the grete losses that
they daily had in Sizile / and of the good and stronge Towne that
24 the iij. felawes had newly conquered, as ye haue herde bifore, wher-
of they were right sorowfulle / Natheles they ordeyned vpon their
othir businesse, holdyng the Reaume of Sizile for lost / & alle the and hold Sicily lost;
richesse that was caried thider, as is bifore rehersed / thinkyng
28 wele this losse might not be recouerd by them / wherfore they con-
cluded to take aduise vpone the remenaunt of their charge / whiche
the grettist was, to haue agein there yong Lorde that might gouerne
them / yn whom they hadde grete affiaunce / wherfore they con-
32 cluded to make a request vnto the Emperour to haue saufocondite but they wish to ransom Orcays.
for some of them to come to him / and purveide connyng officers
of armes to be sent vnto the Emperour / for the request of this
saufocondite. ¶ Now leue we them with their charge, and retourne
36 to the Emperour.

This meane while the wynter passed, and the newe ceason
approche / the Emperour assembled all his counselle, and the
Capitaynes, suche as he had moost affiaunce yn, and there
40 was speche of alle his bessynesse / and concluded that, yn the

moneth of Iune, the Emperour shold be in the fælde, & his puis-
 saunce, to conquere agein the remenaunt of his places that his
 enemyes helde withyn his Reaume / among alle othir that were sent
 for / fferaunt was comen thider / and had lefte his iij. seruautes 4
 keypyng the places that they hadde wounne. ¹wherof the Emperour
 was sore troubled that they were not come / and so was faire
 Iolante that loued hem ful hertily / and in esspecialle Le Surnome.
 wherfore she desired moche to se them, and so did alle othir ladies 8
 and gentilwomen ; and some of them seide unto hir, to trouble hir /
 for they knewe wele she desired moche to se them / that they herde
 sey / that, at the takyng of the place, Le Surnome was slayne / and
 the tothir ij. were wounded to the dethe ; but ther was noon that 12
 wolde telle it to the Emperour, for troublýng of him. This faire
 lady, heryng thise tidynges, toke suche sorow at hir hert, that she
 might neither ete ne drynke / she thought alway that she sawe
 them bifore hir / doing hir suche seruice as they were wont to do / 16
 and had in hir self y-nough of ymaginacions of the beante and
 maner of their persones / and of the grete pite and damage that was
 of their deth / whiche, as she thought, was incomparable / and this
 thought was neurir out of hir mynde. hou be it, bifore hir fadir, 20
 she couerd hir sorow as wele as she might ; But she coude not so
 wele couer it, but that he perceyued hir hert was not in ease / and
 he had no moo children but hir / wherfore it greued him moche
 the more to see her in that / So on a day he toke hir a-part, and 24
 asked hir what hir ayled / for he saw wele she was right heuy /
 and she thankid his grace, and saide there was no suche thing ; for
 gretely she dred to telle hym, in as moche as it was tolde hir
 secretly / and also, if he shold knowe therof, she wist wele / he 28
 shold make right grete sorowe. The Emperour was not content
 with this answeere / but toke hir forth with hym in-to an Inner
 chambre / and wold nedes wite whi it was / than kneled she downe
 a-fore him / and bisought him, that what so cuir she shold sey 32
 vnto hym, that he wold not be troubled ther-with / nor also to
 thinke in hir, that any fonde loue caused hir to haue the annoy þat
 she had, but only the grete losse & damage of him and of his
 Reaume / than tolde she him / how she hadde herd say that Surnome 36
 sholde be slayne at the last towne that was taken / and his othir
 ij. felawes wounded to the dethe / and this was it that caused hir
 to be so sorowfuH, to thinke that so noble persones as they were /
 and by whom grete honour and wele was come to him / and to his 40

The 3 Princes
 stay at Gaeta,
 [1 leaf 91]

but some
 Court ladies
 declare that
 Philip is killd,

and David
 and Hum-
 phrey wound-
 ed to death.

Princess
 Iolante

confesses to
 her father

her sorrow
 for the re-
 ported death
 and mortal
 wounds of the
 3 Princes.

Reaume, sholde be now so sone ded & destroyed / And whan the
 Emperour ¹herde thise tidynges / he thought verily it had ben ^[1 ll. 91, bk.]
 sothe / & had suche sorowe / that he lened him downe on his bed / ^{The Em-}
 4 and might not speke. he bade his doughter sende for fferaunt / she ^{peror grieves}
 did so / and he came anone / and founde the Emperour lyng, his ^{for the news,}
 yen fulle of teeres / and coude not speke a worde to him / wherof ^{and has}
 fferaunt was meruailously abasshed / and kneled downe bfore him, ^{Ferant sum-}
 8 biseching him to telle him / what hym ayled / for in alle his liff had ^{mond.}
 he neur see him in suche plite / for no losse that euir bifelle him.
 So atte laste the Emperour tolde him of thise tidynges *with* fulle
 grete payne / for his hert was so sore enclosed that he might
 12 vnnethe speke / and whan fferaunt herd this, he was sore abasshed /
 so that he wist not what to thinke / for the grete loue that he had
 to his iij. seruauntes; hou be it, that he had seen them sith / and
 lefte them wele y-nough at ease / than seide he to the Emperour /
 16 "trewly, sir, than are they dede sith my departyng / for y lefte ^{Ferant says}
 them alle hole & sauf / and if it were othir-wise, y wote wele y shold ^{he left the}
 not long endure aftir them / for y haue noon honour, but, next god, ^{3 Princes safe}
 it cometh me of them / wherfore it sholde be right hard and heuy ^{and sound.}
 20 to me, if it were so / to make suche chere as y do / alas! how shold
 y now comfort an othir / and ther were no cause of comfort in my
 self" / "forsothe," saide the Emperour, "y leve you wele" /
 "trewly, sir," saide fferaunt / "the place they be yn is not to be
 24 lefte, but in the handes of right trewe and noble men; and that was
 the cause y lefte them there" / Than departed fferaunt from the
 kyng, and sent in alle haste a messanger vnto them / and praied ^{He sends for}
 them to come vnto hym / and to purvey, so that the towne were ^{them,}
 28 surely keppe / Assone as they herde thise tidynges, they were right
 ioyfulle / and moche desired they to se the Emperour / and in es-
 speciale his faire doughter, to whom they were alle thre seruauntes /
 and thus departed they assone as they might / and *withyn* litil
 32 while came to fferaunt their maister / whiche was of them as ioyful
 as any man might be / and, assone as he might, brought them to the
 Emperour, to whom he had no thing tolde that he had sent for
 them / and assone as the Emperour sawe them / he chaunged sore /
 36 coloures / & toke them in his armes, eche one aftir othir / and
 neur made them suche chere as he did than / and sent them forth-
 with to his doughter / & whan she sawe them, she had suche ioie at
 hir hert / that she coude not ²a grete while speke o worde, but ^{and to}
 40 toke eche of them by the hande, and aduised them wele, thinkyng ^{Iolante.}
^{[2 leaf 92].}

Iolante has never seen such lifelike dead folks as the 3 Princes are.

[1 MS. smylingly]

in hir self, whethir it were a dreame, or matier of trouth / and whan she might speke, she seide vnto them / "fforsothe, my frendes, y sawe neuir yn my lif so lifly ded folkes as ye be" / and they answered hir alle smylyng,¹ and saide / "forsothe, madame, we are noon othirwise ded than we were wont to be" / and therwith came the Emperour to his daughters chambre, and tolde them what was reported of them / and than knewe they wele that the grete chere that men made them, was for that cause / and fro that day forth, founde they them more bounden to the Emperour and to his faire doughtir, and also to their maister / than they had ben bifore / and eche of them thought in their mynde, whan they coude se their ceason, they wolde meue him for the mariage of his doughtir / for they knewe noon like vnto hir in beaute / and alle othir vertues / ¶ Now retourne we, and speke of the goode and noble Emperoure.

The Emperour musters his forces,

THe Emperour sent for his folkes / and by than they were assembled / it drewe vpone suche tyme as he had concludid bifore to take the felde, and so vndirstode him self right wele accompayned / and his ordenaunce was grete. Than went he to the next place of his enemyes, and bisegid it rounde a-boute / and made so sharpe assaute / that withyn litil while þe towne was wonne / and for to put the remenaunt in drede, that helde any place withyn his reaume / alle tho that were withyn that towne were put to dethe / And aftir that / alle tho that kepte any othir places were so dredefulle, that they had neither wille ne corage to holde them / but some stole their wey, and lefte the places allone / and some deliuerd them by apointment / The Emperour taried in no place to speke of / til he had perfourmed his conquest / and withyn litil while, he had his reaume holly in his hande / The Emperour thus beyng on the felde / came vnto him the same tyme / the kynges of armes that were sent to hym oute of Turkey, requiryng him for a saucondite, like as was spoken of here to-fore / Themperour was conseiled to agre to this Saucondite, in asmoche

and soon has his whole realm in his own hands.

He grants a safe-conduct [2 If. 92, bk.] for 200 Turkes to treat for a truce.

as he had accomplisshed his conquest / and so graunted a saucondite to CC. persones / And than he departed his armee, & retourned to themperesse his wif, and appointed a day to assemble the estates of his Reaume, to take anise of suche besynesse as he had to do / and there abode he in ioie and rest / til suche day as he had taken / Now cometh this Day of metyng of his estates. And a litil bifore, were comen the Turkes folkes, that had noon othir charge but to put their yong lorde to fynauce / and the Emperour

- had herd them before the comyng of the estates. So when these
estates were comen / he made to assemble them vpon a gret day in
an halle / for there were many folkes / Than, in presence of them
4 alle, he shewed his grete besynesse: first, of the demeanyng of his
warres, wherof he was in no surete as yit / aftir, of the delyuer-
aunce of Orkais, and othir prisoners that he hadde / for whiche
cause the Ambassatours came to him out of Turkey / aftir this, spake
8 he of the demeanyng of the Empyre / and that, for the grete warres
that he hath had / he had not yit be in no place to receyue none of
the crownes that to the Empyre bilonged / "Aftir," saide he, "that
he is nowe bicomme aged, and that he hath had in the warres grete
12 payne to trauaille / wherfore it was nedefulle for hym, fro hensforth,
to se the meanes somewhat to be supported and holpen / But in case
of nede, to do as welles as euer he did / with the good helpe of his
suggettes. but what he mente he shold shewe them, whiche was, as
16 semed hym, to marye his doughtir to some mighti prince / by whom
he might haue aide and comfort to discharge him of his laborous
troubles in his olde dayes / seyng also that she was of resonable
yeres to be married. Thies iiij. thinges touched his hert right nere /
20 Requiring / that euerich of them wold take good auise hereon /
ageinst suche houre as they shold mete ther agein." Aftir these
wordes seide, the emperour departed / and they that were of his
pryve counselle, spake of these matiers / whiche thought that two
24 the first poyntes were but one / that was, of the warres that he had
hadde / and of the deliuerance of Orkais and his othir prisoners /
for, by that one, that othir sholde be made / As thus / they semed,
seyng the Emperour had alle his reame in his hande / that by the
28 deliuerance of Orkais he might haue a grete fynance for to helpe
hym to his empyre / and by his delyuerance, might he take a
longe trewes of x. or xij. yere / and in the meane while might he
receyue his crownes / and vnderstande the demeanyng of his
32 Empyre / and what aide he might haue there / And than, this
trewes ended / he might go aftir in-to the Turkes Land / and put
him in deuoir to encrease the cristen feith / and in this meane
tyme / he might wele entende to the mariage of his doughtir / In
36 this wise, as I haue seide, they auised the Emperour / whiche sone
agreed to their opinion touchyng his warres / and the deliuerance
of his prisoners / and the demeanyng of his Empyre / But he
thought to vse othir auise touching the mariage of his doughtir,
40 seyng vnto them / "Remembre ye what a valiaunt man is worth ;

The Emperor
asks his
Council about
1. carryng
on his war,
2. the ransom
of Orcays,

3. managing
his Empire,

4. marryng
his daughter
Iolante.

His Pryue
Council say
his points
1 and 2 are
only one;

also that he
should get
money by
lettynge
Orcays be
ransomed ;

[1 leaf 93]

should then
visit his
Empire;

invade
Turkey,

and then
marry his
daughter.

The Emperor for, sith the comyng of Surnome, as moche wele is fallen to vs by
 his worthynesse / as if the grace of the holy gost had lighte amonges
 us / ffor, fro that day sith, we haue so moche be comforted and
 enhardyed, that they that bifore, no-thing were / became moost 4
 worthy / and moost valiaunt / And on that othir side / oure
 enemyes, that were worthy and hardy, haue lost corage and strength.
 Thus may ye se, what the body of one noble man is worth / and for
 asmoche as ther may cowardise be loggid in the hert of a right mighti 8
 kynge, aswele as in a symple persone, Therefore y wolde knowe,
 for the wele of you alle / hym that shuld haue my doughtir, for
 a noble man / for y hadde leuer she had the pore hardy / than the
 riche cowardle / for the wele of me, my Reaume, and of you alle .I. 12
 had leuer she had one of the iij. straungers, that is to sey, Le Sur-
 nome, Ector, or Athis / if they were of roialle blode / than the moost
 riche kynge that at this day is livynge" / with thies wordes, alle
 they of his counselle were right wele content / for they sawe wele it 16
 meued of grete honour / and of his corage / and moche they thought
 here vpon / for they thought it right straunge to knowe the corage
 of folkes / Natheles, one of them auised hym, & saide thus / "hou
 be it, that to many folkes it shold be right harde to knowe the 20
 corage and noblesse of suche princes as shalle desire youre doughtir
 in mariage / yit it semeth to me right light to vndirstande / and y
 shalt sey you hou / Me thinkith that alle that be here, are agreed
 to take long trewes / for the causes that haue be shewed / this 24
 trewes enduryng / if the Emperour do make crye an high and
 myghty Tournay / wherin noon shalle tournay, but if he be de-
 scendid from a roialle lyne / and that he make to declare the
 1 mariage of his doughtir / and that who that shalt wynne the price 28
 thre daies, shalt haue hir / whiche shalt be a grete payne to any one
 man, to haue the Renomee by iij. dayes ouir alle worthy / thus
 shalbe knowen the moost victorious & noble / And if so be that one
 man wynne not the price alle the iij. daies, then shalt the Emperour 32
 be at his choise / to chese for hir whiche of them pleasith him
 best" / And whan they had herde this opinione, they lough / hou
 be it, they thought it right wele, saide / But among alle othir, the
 Emperour was pleased wele therwith / and was vtirly concluded to 36
 shewe it bifore the iij. estates of his Reaume / and what causes
 meued hym / As he concluded, so he did / and shewed it vnto them /
 with the iij. othir poyntes bi-fore rehersed / wherof they were alle
 right wele content / And as for the Tournay that shold be for his 40

wants a brave
man, tho'
poor, for his
son-in-law.

One of the
Council

suggests a
3-days' Tour-
ney, by men
of royal blood
only, for
Iolante.

[1 lf. 93, bk.]

The Emperor
adopts this
plan.

doughtir / they thought there shold none be there / but if he were
of Roialle blode / and nere vnto the crowne / And than was it saide
amonges them / that it was pite that Surnome & his ij. felawes
4 were not of the roialle blode / and wisshed that Surnome had be so /
and had hir to his wif / Such conclusion as the Emperour had
taken bifore, was affermed amonges them. On the morowe, the
Emperour sent for the Ambassatoures to come bifore hym / and
8 there they purposed for the deliuerance of Orkais and thise othir
prisoners, and in like wise for the deliuerance of kynge firabrace ;
and there were they longe tyme / and coude in no wise accorde /
and often tyme they withdrew them, & went to Orkais, that so
12 moche desired his deliuerance / that he rought not wele what he
did / And atte laste they brought this worde, if that the iij. estates
wold so assente, that if Orkais, and kynge firabrace, and alle the
prisoners of their partie might be delyuered / they wolde in like
16 wise deliuer alle the prisoners of themperours partie, if any there
were / & also gif vj. walled Townes & Castelles, suche as the
Emperour wold chese *withyn* the Turkes land, Reseruyng the
chief Citees / and pay at one payment Vc. Mt. florences / and to
20 haue trewes for iij. yere / and here they to go in-to Turkey, and
bringe answeere agein *withyn* iij. monethes / and than to deliuer
hostage / at their comynge agein, to pay this money at one payment
withyn the yere / and the Townes and Castells to be deliuered in-
24 to the Emperours Handes *withyn* ij. monethes aftir / Hereto, at
the last, agreed the Emperour & the iij. estates / than departid
the Ambassatours / and sped them so, that *withyn* litil while
they came into their contre / where as, sone were alle the nobles
28 assembled / and there made they reporte, whiche was to them no
thyng harde nor straunge, sauff yn one poynte / whiche was, the
deliuerance of their Townes and places in-to their enemyes handes.
Neuertheles, kynge firabrace was there, and put him in suche
32 deuoir amonges them / and made them suche exortacions, that, in
conclusion, they were accorded / and whan it was thus concluded
& accorded / they that hadde the charge, therwith departed / &
withyn litil while came ther the Emperour was / and by his licence
36 spake *with* Orkais / their yong lord, whiche asked them hou they
had spedde, and they tolde him alle / and howe grete payne they
hadde for the places that shold be deliuerd / He was right ioifull
to here of his deliuerance / and prayed them, assone as they might /
40 to make their report / Than required they to speke *with* them-

The Emperor
sends for the
Turkish Amb-
assadors,

who propose
to ransom
Orcays,
K. Ferabras,
and other
Turks, by
releasing
all their
Christian
prisoners,
giving up
6 Turkish
walled towns,
and paying
500,000
florins, and
making a 3-
years' truce.

[1 leaf 91]

K. Ferabras
gets the
Turks to
agree to these
hard terms.

The Emperor
holds a Feast
and Tourney
in honour of
the Truce.

Princes
Philip,
David, and
Humphrey,

[1 ff. 94, bk.]

don't show
their arms,
but have
their shields
all of one
colour.

They take an
oath that
they are
Gentlemen.

perour; and he graunted, and made them to be brought biforn him
and his counselle / & there made relacione, & offred to delyuere their
hostage at the pleasir of themperour / themperour was content to
holde his promys / and puruaide, for the honour of the Turke, to 4
holde a feste duryng iij. dayes / and made a grete tournay, and
made to assemble the most parte of the ladies & gentilwomen of
his Reaume / Orkais, knowyng certainly that his delyueraunce was
concluded, was ioifulle / He knewe also of the feste that the Emperour 8
had ordeyned for his sake / wherfore he was the more leef to abide
that day / trustyng, for the loue of faire Iolant, to do so that day /
to be somewhat the more in hir grace / hopyng to haue hir to his
wif; and made request to the Emperour to haue hors & harneys & 12
habillmentes for him / and xx^{ti} of his folkes / Aftir this tournay
was cried / euery man desired to be ther-at / but among alle
othir, Surnome and his ij. felawes put them in deuoir to be wele
apointed there; and so were they, as if they had ben knowen kynges 16
sones / as they were / and though it were vnknownen to other
folkes, yit echone of them knewe in them-self / what he was, whiche
made their hertes the more highly coraged to be habiled ther¹-aftir /
Thoroughout the Reaume was ther none othir speche but of ioie of 20
the fest / for biforn, had they hadde but warres and trouble / Thus
passed the tyme, euery man in ioie & disport, til the ceason came
that the Tournay shold be. the night afore the tournay, euery man
made his musters / as in suche cas bilongith / Than were the 24
knightes and squiers departed / suche as shold tournay, by notable
auncient knightes & kynges of armes, & heraudes that ther-to were
commytted / and they made euery man sette their kageys at their
wyndowes / or at their gates; and at a wyndowe were hanged the 28
sheldes of the iij. felawes / but their propre armes were not knowen
therby, for in their sheldes had they nothyng but alle of one colour,
& writen thereon their names / euery man meruailed herof, and sup-
posed therby that they were no gentilmen. Thise wordes came 32
biforn the ladies, whiche were right sory to here suche speche / for
wele they Iugid, without grete noblesse of blood, there might not be
in them suche honour & vertu / and wele thei thought that they
did it by-cause they wolde not be knowen / Eche of them had in 36
colour the felde of the armes they to-bere. whan the tournay was
thus ordeyned / and thies iij. had noon armes vpon their sheldes /
they were constreyned to swere biforn many noble men, if they
were gentilmen or not; and toke an othe that they were gentilmen / 40

and than seide they that herde it, their werkes shewed it wele to be
 so / and eche one of them trustid in him self, that the Emperour
 and alle his Reaume shold knowe that he was a gentilman / Thus
 4 was enery man wele content. On the morowe, bigan the tournay / At the
Tourney
 the ladies and gentilwomen were at the wyndowes / and they that
 shold tournay, came yn / every man on his side, as they were
 apoynted ouir even. then was the corde cut; and the trumpetes
 8 blewe up; and euery man put him yn payne to do wele. At this
 tournay, were so many dedes of armes, and so grete strokes, that it
 were to longe to write them. It were to long, to reherce the grete
 noblesse and prowesse that Le Surnome and his ij. ffelawes did; also the Princes
Philip,
David, and
Humphrey
 12 Orkais, the yonge turke, it were moche to reherce the grete actes
 that he did, as he that was thorough thrilled with the nedle of loue /
 Neuirtheles, that side where the thre ffelawes were on, made alle
 othir to resort bfore them / ffor their 'mighty strokes and high [1 leaf 95]
 16 prowes, no man myght endure / and so wele thei did that day, that
 ouir alle othir they were renomd; & next them, Orkais had the get the
highest
renown.
Prince
Orcays
comes next.
 name; but he might not compare with noon of the ij. That day
 had Surnome the price / and whan he came to daunce with the
 20 ladies & gentilwomen, he and his ij. ffelawes were so richely and so
 wele apointed / that as the sonne in clerenesse passith the mone &
 the sterres, so they ij. ouir alle othir bare the brute of that feste /
 Aftir them, as y seyde bfore, Orkais in alle thing passid alle othir /
 24 this ffeste endured ij. dayes, & enery day bare Surnome the price / Prince Philip
is first of all.
 Neuirtheles, he wold right fayne that eche of his ffelawes had hadde
 the price of that day / Nowe is this last day accomplisht / and the
 grettist soper ordeyned, that bfore had be sene / In the halle was
 28 no crie, not speche, but of thies iiij. Aftir soper, the daunees began /
 and the prices were youen / euery man spake of Surnome / at euery
 price were gyuen grete giftes and grete larges / a litil bfore the
 Emperour shold be taken vp, a notable kyng of armes went vpone
 32 a Cupbord on high / & made crie "pees" thre tymes; and than was The Truce
between the
Emperor and
the Turks is
proclaimed.
 the trewes publishid bitwene the Emperour and the Turke for ij.
 yere / Aftir this, made the kyng of armes an other crie, whiche was
 this / that for asmoche as the Emperour had in his tyme grete for-
 36 tunes / and that Reaume was next vnto the enemyes of the feith,
 whiche hath caused him meruailous and huge warres / wherfore it
 was nedefulle vnto him and to his Reaume to haue one that sholde
 enherite aftir his daies / of grete nobles and vertu / seyng that he
 40 had but one only doughtir. Therefore it was necessarie vnto him

The Emperor
announces
the 3-days'
Tourney for
Iolante, in
May twelve-
month.
The First
man on all
3 days will
win her.

for to allie hym with som man of grete corage / wherfore he did alle
men to wite, that at May, come twelue month, the xv. day, shold
begynne a tourney / and shold endure iij. daies / and that he wold
giff his doughtir, with grete part of his Reaume, to him that best
shold do tho .iij. dayes duryng / so that there shold noon tourney
ther, but if he were of roialle blode, nigh vnto kynges. Moreour,
doyng them to wite / that if by one man the iij. dayes were not
acheued and wonne / he shold not be bounde to gif his doughtir, 8
but if it pleasid him / and also ther might noon tourney there, but
if he were cristened. This crie publisht / the kyng of armes
descended / the dannces bigan agein / and eche man thanked god
in his hert, of ¹the trewes and good pees that nowe is in the 12
Reaume. This faire yonge lady, heryng the crie of hir mariage, vexed
alle rede & shamefast / and also it forthought hir moche, that noon
might tourney without he were come of roialle blode / for she sup-
posed wele, that noon of hir iij. seruantes might be resceyued at 16
that tourney. among alle othir, was noon more ioyfult herof than
Orkais was / for that he thought wele / that thies iij. that passid
him, might not be at the tourney / wherfore he trusted to haue the
price bfore alle othir / wherby he thought him self sure to haue 20
that fair lady to his wif, that he loued so moche / thus concludid
he in him self to rennaye his feith and lawe / and take him to
cristen feith / where it shewed wele, loue, of more strength than
lawe. On the tothir side, Le Surnome, þat herde this crie, was no 24
thing sory therof / for he thought wele to haue leiser y-nough to go
vnto his ffadir, and retourne agein by that tyme, where he wolde
not faile to be for alle the worlde / for there trusted he to wyne hir
that his hert moost desired / In like wise thought his .ij. felawes / 28
for eche of them trusted that day to haue goode aventure / think-
yng that noon of the tothir shold tourney. This thought, egal and
like, had eche of them / the night passed / and the disportes endid /
eueri man went til his reste / til on the morow, that many folkes 32
toke their leue / aftir their departyng / Orkais made alle his assur-
aunce with the Emperour, and fulfilled alle that he had promysed /
and than toke his leue of him / of the Emperesse / and of their
doughtir / to whom he seide, "I truste to se you agein at this 36
Tourney / and I promyse you, on my trouthe, if y may haue suche
fortune as y desire / ther can nothyng be so peynfult vnto me /
but y wold do for your sake / and if the Emperour your ffadir had
not do make the crie that he did / y wolde haue spoken with him 40

[1 ff. 95, bk.]

Orkais thinks
he'll be the
man.

Prince Phillip
will go home
to France,

and then re-
turn and win
Iolante.

Orkais takes
leave of
Iolante, and
hopes to win
her.

before my departyng, in suche wise as y trust he shold haue ben
content *with* my request / but I wote wele, sith he hath made this
ordynauce / he may in no wise breke it" / This faire lady was
4 alle shamefast, and no thing answerd him / thus toke he leve of hir
and of alle the tothir ladies and gentilwomen / the Emperour con-
veyed him, and did him grete honour / than toke their leve / &
many of the Emperours folkes conveyed hym forth / but ferthist of
8 alle othir, the iij. ffelawes conveyed hym / for they were moche of
an age / and alle of roialle blode / and moost comonly men seke
<sup>Orkays
departs,
and the 3
Princes
escort him
far.</sup>
^[1 leaf 96]
their semblable / when tyme came they sholde departe, Orkais
saide vnto them / "my faire frendes, fareweft / and y purpose to be
12 here agein at this ffeste, at the whiche y thynke my self right wele
vryd, that noon of you may that day tournay / Neuirtheles, if any
fortune or wele than bifalle me, y shalbe glad of youre company
before alle othir" / eche of them thankid him ; hou be it, there was
16 noon of them but thought to endure grete payne / or that he came
to that he wende / thus they departed from him, and returned to
the Emperour / and so passed forth tyme, til on a day Le Surnome,
Ector, & Athis, were gon to the felde to disport them ; and Surnome
20 talkid to them of many thinges ; and amonges othir, he seide thus /
"my frendes, whan I departed out of my contre, and fro my pore
fadirs hous / my principall cause was for the renome of the warres
of this Reaume / and specially to the wele of my soule, whiche
24 euery good man ought to desire / nowe is it, thankid be god, that
this Reaume is recouerd, and grete & a long trews taken ; wherfore
y purpose nowe no lenger to abide in this Reaume, but to go home
to my ffrendes / whiche, y doute not, haue grete desire to knowe hou
<sup>that he
means to go
home.</sup>
28 it is *with* me ; ffor y am sure they wote not whethir y be ded or on
lyue. and for this cause most y nedes leue your companyes, whiche
sore forthinketh me / but that y may noon othir do." Than seide
Athis, "by my trouthe, my maister and felawe, youre departyng
32 sorowith me, and shalt sorowe me more than any erthly thing ; but,
daies of my lif, where so euer I be, I shalbe alle youre / and yit
may happe to come the houre that y shalt nowe deserue that ye
haue don for me, whiche y neither haue, nor can deserue yit / and sory
36 y am that youre contre and myn be no nerre to-gedir. Neuirtheles,
y shalt put me in denoir to se you fulle ofte, so that y knewe where
ye dwellid, or of what folkes ye were come : and nowe y haue herd
your entent, I shalt shewe you myn / ffor, like as seide to-fore, and
40 for the same entent, I put me in the Arme of Scotland, for the

Prince Philip
tells David
and Hum-
phrey

Prince David

socour of this Reaume, with othir / and now y se it in pees, my
 purpose is to drawe me in-to the Cuntre fro whens I came / ffor
 now, thanked be god, the Emperour hath litil nede of my seruice." 4
 "Nowe forsothe," seid Ector to Surnome, "if your departyng
 aught to sorowe any body, it aught sorowe me / for by you haue y
 ben ¹saued / and ye haue accepted me in-to your company, wherof
 y thought me right happy / and so wold thinke, if in alle my lif I
 might do thing that might be your pleasir / and as long as ye had 8
 abiden here, I thought not to departe. But sith your pleasir is
 nowe to departe, I wold no lenger abide here / but go agein in-to
 the Reaume of England, of whens y am ; and there shalbe neuir day
 of my lyf, but my body & goodes shalbe alle youre. [Illumination.] 12

IN this wise, take the thre felawes, and diuised the maner of
 their departyng / and howe they might haue leue / and arguyd
 sore amonges them / whethir was bettir to take leue to-gedre /
 or ellis eche one by hym self / But at the last, they concluded alle iij. 16
 to-gedre to take leue at their maister at ones / whan they might se
 him best at leiser. Thus withyn a day or ij. aftir, they waited on
 their maister at a soper / and aftir he had soped, they thre to-gedre
 besought him that they might speke with hym / and he, as abasshed, 20
 toke them a-part / thinkyng ther was som matier of displeasir / for
 neuir bifore had they desired to speke with him in suche wise.
 Le Surnome spake for them alle, seyng in this wise / "My lorde!
 it is longe that we haue ben in your seruice, wherein we haue had 24
 suche wele, and so grete honour, that we can neuir suffice to deserue
 it / Natheles, in the mooste humble wise that we can, we thanko
 you," and therewith they kneled downe / and he made hem to rise
 vp agein / and Surnome tolde forth his tale, seyng, "my lorde, ye se 28
 nowe the estat of this Reaume in suche cace / thankid be oure lord,
 that there is no werre, to the grete honour of the Emperour / and
 his Recommendacion is spredde through the world / ye knowe wele
 the long ²trewes that he hath taken / wherby he hath litil nede of 32
 folkes / And we be pore gentilmen straungers, whiche gladly wille
 drawe to oure pore frendes / for euery man aught to haue naturalle
 loue to fadir & modir / and thies thinges considered, we be affermed
 & constreyned, by reasone & honour, to drawe vs home, and departe 36
 out of this cuntre / wherfore, humbly we beseche you, to licence vs
 to departe with the fauour of your good lordshippe / whiche we
 moost desire, next the Emperour" / It is not to be doutid that this
 desire was as greuous at fierauntes hert / as he had felt him sore 40

says he shall
return to
Scotland:

and Prince
Humphrey
says he shall

[1 ff. 96, bk.]

go to Eng-
land.

They resolve
to take leave
of Ferant all
together;

and Prince
Philip

[2 leaf 97]

tells Ferant,

and asks his
leave for
them to go.

hurt with a spere / and not without cause / alle his honour was by
 them iij., ffor he knewe wele at this day he was the moost renomel
 knyght of the world / and forthwith felle the water in his yeen /
 4 and seide / "my dere frendes, wille ye leue me nowe / haue y done
 any thing that shold myscontent you *with* me / no, to my knowlage /
 and as for the warres of this Reaume, they ar not yet ended / trouthle
 it is that there is a trews / but that shalt not long endure / and
 8 whan the warres shal begynne agein / y wold not haue lost your
 company, for no good. and also whan the werres begynne / we shalle
 entre in-to their Reaume, where men shalle se many grete dedes of
 armes / and allas! so moche as y haue loued you / and so glad as
 12 y haue ben to encrece your honoures / hou be ye now content to
 departe fro me?" Le Surnome answerd, "my lord, we may haue
 leiser y-nough to be with oure frendes / and come agein or the
 warres begynne" / whan fferaunt herd his wordes & conclusion, he
 16 departed fro them, and seide, "that on the morowe he wolde speke
 more *with* them." It is no question if he were that night pensif
 and fult of sorow. his folkes that were aboute him, sawe wele by
 him, that he hadde herd som thing that pleased him not / fferaunt
 20 toke his hors, and rode to the Emperour / and tolde him fulle sorrow-
 fully thentent of his sernautes / wherof the Emperour toke right
 grete sorowe & displeasir / and askid if any remedy were to with-
 olde them / "trewly," said fferaunt, "nay" / "Than," seide the
 24 Emperour, "I shall make them to be required be my wif, my
 doughter, and alle my ladies" / "fforsothe," seide fferaunt, "alle that
 botith not. But y auise me of one thing / It is so, that for the
 grete honour ye haue don them / they be gretly bounden vnto you ;
 28 wherfor ye may wille them, seyng the mariage of your doughter
 shalbe yn May come tweluemoneth, that eche of theim promyse
 you to do your pleasir to be here at that tyme ; for they be your
 sernautes / and every sernaunt aught to honour his maister / and
 32 so may ye require them that they do at that tyme / and whan they
 come agein, perauenture ye may so entrete them that they wille
 abide stille *with* you" / To this counselle agreed the Emperour / and
 yn this purpose departed fferaunt fro him / and went to his loggyng /
 36 and made that night as goode chere as he might / al-though his
 hert were right sorowfull / and on the morow, aftir he had dyed,
 came his thre sernautes to him agein, to know his pleasir vpon the
 request they had made him the day bifore / fferaunt answerd them
 40 in this wise / "my frendes, notwithstanding / that of your grete

Ferant weeps,
 tries to per-
 suade the
 three Princes
 to stay,

and promises
 his answer
 next day.

[1 f. 97, bk.]
 He advises
 the Emperour
 to urge the
 Princes to
 return for
 the lotante
 Tourney next
 May.

Ferant refers
the 3 Princes
to the Em-
peror.

goode wille and curtesy, ye haue done me such honour as to repute
you my seruauntes / Natheles ye be not so, for y neuir held my self
worthy, nor of suche honour, to haue the seruice of so noble men /
hou be it, your company hath ben to me moost ioie / and fulle fayne 4
wold y haue done you more honour / if it wold haue pleased you to
take it. Neuirtheles, ye be nowe with the Emperour; and he had
you in suche chierte, that he hath put you vnto his daughter /
whiche is the thing in the worlde that he loueth moost / and hath 8
grete cause so to do; for she is one *pat* can deserue loue, and the
thanke of euery creature / and of thies two most ye take leue / and
whan ye haue leue of them, ye and y shalle agree weH y-nough" /
they ansverd that they "purposed so to do / and that on the morowe, 12
with the pleasir of god, they wold go to him; and as they had
grete cause to thanke his grace of his grete honour and curtesie that
he had shewed them / whiche was impossible for them euir to
deserue" / so on the morowe they for-gate not, whan tyme was, to 16
come to do their seruice to their maistresse as they were accustomed,
whiche had herde of this matier / wherfore she was in grete trouble
and annoye / and when she sawe them bifore hir at the table, she
coude no[t] withholde the teres from hir yeen / In this dyner tyme, 20
ete she nothing that did hir good / for wondrely wele loued she
them. whan the Emperour had dynded, they iij. came to-gedre be-
fore him / and, as humbly as thei coude, thankid him of the grete
wele and honour that, of his ¹grace, he had done them / and aftir 24
shewed him, hou "by the grace of god, and of high and good
prowesse, and of his suggetes, he had his hole Reaume peasibly;
and for that cause they alle were concluded, by his licence, nowe to
drawe agein to their cuntrees; for it was longe sith they sawe their 28
frendes, or herd of them / whiche euery man of right aught to desire /
wherfore they besought the Emperour that it might please him to
gif them leue." The Emperour made them many grete desires to
abide / and grete and large offres / but by no meane coude he 32
remeue them from their purpose; and he sawe that / and in con-
clusion, he desired them to come agein to the tournay / that shold
be made for the mariage of his daughter / and seide vnto them / "al-
though that none of you iij. may tournay there, I shall make othir 36
tournays and ffeestes, where your worthynes shalbe showed with
many othir noble men / and also ye know wele it is the custome,
euery man to be redy with his seruice to his maister and maistresse
at any suche ffeest, and ye be reteyned with hir / wherfore ye aught 40

Iolante weeps
at their in-
tended going.

[¹ leaf 98]

The Emperour
begs them to
stay;

and if not,
to return for
the Tournay
for Iolante.

- in no wise than to faile hir" / Alle thre of one wille made hym
 promyse & othe, that if they were in helth and at their large, they
 wold not faile to be there agein at that day. On this condicioun the
 4 Emperour licenced them to departe. Thus toke they leve of him /
 and went to the Emperesse to take their leve; wherof she was right
 sory / & ther toke they their leve / and went to their maistres / and
 tolde hir hou they had taken leve bothe of the Emperour and of
 8 themperesse / and eueriche of them offred him-self to aventure body,
 liffe, and goodes in hir service, for hir pleasir and honour / This
 yong lady answerd them *with fulle sorowfulle hert* / " I pray god,
 my frendes, conduyte you, & sende you asmoche ioye and honour as
 12 eche of you is worthy to haue; and then shalle ye be largely sped /
 and that shalle alway be my prier" / and thus departed they out of
 the chambre / [alle folkes] when they herd here-of, wepte full sore,
 and sorowed / for wondrely wele were thies iij. felawes belouid *with*
 16 every creature; neuirtheles it might noon othirwise be / Thies iij.
 felawes went to their loggynges til on the morowe / Themperour sent
 eche of them iij. M.[†] scutes and ij. coursers / and the faire lady, his
 doughter, sent eche of them a purs & a dyamant. In the mornying
 20 toke they leve of alle their company / and eche of them toke leve
 of othir / whiche departynge was ¹right sorowfull, for eche of them
 loued othir as bretheren. Thus leue y them, every man takyng his
 way / and retourne agein to the Emperour. [*Illumin.: Emperor's reception.*]
 24 **Y**E haue herd bifore, hou the Emperour was concluded to go
 to Rome & to othir places / where he shold resceyue the
 Crownes of the Empire; and as he had concluded, so he
 did, and departed toward them assone as he might, where he was
 28 resceyued of alle the lordes of the Empyre / ffor his renome was so
 spred ouir alle the worlde, that every man desired to se him, and
 knowe who he was / they had him in grettir fauour than they had
 bifore. and the lordes askid him of the demeanyng of his warres /
 32 and he tolde them the trouthe, & forgate not to reherce the noblesse
 of Le Surnome and his ij. felawes / Aftir his coronacion, he toke his
 way to millayne, and was crowned ther agein / & from thens departed
 and went to Rome, and helde there a grete court, and there sojourned
 36 a long while, where he was resceyued of the Pope and alle the Car-
 dynalls *with grete ioye* / and whan he had contynued there as long as
 it pleased him, he returned agein in-to his contre / where he made
 grete purueaunce ageinst the tournay / whiche began fast to approche.
 40 & he made thorough alle the Towne, the loggynges to be apointed, and

The 3 Princes
agree to come
back in a
year.

Princess In-
lante wishes
them well.

[1 ff. 98, bk.]
Each of them
starts for his
home.

The Emperor

is crown'd at
Milan,

and is wel-
com'd at
Rome by the
Pope.

He goes
home, and
prepares for
the Tournay.

dressid in the best wise / and euery man applied him so wele / that
 alle thing was sure & redy. Euery prince & lord that was of roialle
 blode, that had herd the crye of this Tournay, and knewe also the
 grete renoun of this ffaire lady for whom the tournay shold be / 4
 aredyed them the moost richely that they coude, to be ther at that
 [1 leaf 99] day. But ouir alle othir, Orkais, the ¹yonge Turke, had desire and
 Sultan Orkais so loves Iolante, wille to shewe him self at this ffeste. he was so sore taken *with* the
 loue of this faire lady / that he was yn fulle wille to bileue in the 8
 lawe of Ihesu crist / the gretist drede he had, was, hou he might
 bringe this aboute by the agrement of alle his suggettes / whan he
 was comen in-to this contre, he was resceyued as to his estate
 belonged / and euery man had grete trust in his persone / for that 12
 they sawe him alle othirwise in his maner and condicio^{ns} than his
 ffadir had ben bi-fore. Alle thestates of his Reaume came vnto him /
 for eche of them desired gladly to se him / he was right large &
 courtaise / and moche *conuersaunt* with the noble men of his 16
 Reaume / and many tymes they asked him of the warres, and of
 the maner of the cristen folkes, in whos handes he had long tyme
 bene. Orkais tolde hem the trouthe / and rathir seid more of
 that he praises the Christians honour, than lesse, to thentent to drawe the hertes of his people the 20
 more to that bileve / and seide verrily, "that he bileued, that if the
 god that the cristen folkes worshipped, had not ben their helpe / it
 had ben impossible for them euir to haue recouered." Than tolde he
 them in what caas the Cezilians were / and of their pore corage / 24
 and howe that, by one only man, they were sodeinlye transmuted in
 and Prince Philip highly, to the moost valiaunt nacion that at this houre was cristen / and
 hou aftir that, ij. othir were comen, by whom, *with* the helpe of the
 first, was the destruccion of his ffader, & dethe of alle them of his 28
 lawe, whiche thought him a thing ouir meruailous / and so moche
 preised he the cristen feith, that his folkes thought wele he had some
 pleasir therin / and some of them seide that "the cristen god was
 more worthi than their god that they bileued on" / and so moche did 32
 the yonge Turke by his wordes, *with* contynuaunce of tyme, that he
 sawe & knewe verrily that, suche part as he toke, the most part of
 his reaume wold take / wherof he was as ioifull as he might be /
 and thervpone ordeyned his habilementes, the moost riche *pat* had 36
 and hopes the Turks will turn Christians with him, be seen in that reaume / & thought to take *with* him the grettist
 parte of princes & Barons of his reaume, to thentent that they shold
 and thus win him Iolante. be cristened *with* him / and he trusted verrily by this dede to con-
 quere this faire lady / whiche in hir tyme was very mirroure of alle 40

othir fair ladies / Many men askid him whider he wold go, and he
 seide, his entent was to go the ffeest of themperour, with whom he
 had ben prisoner, & was in his Daunger by the places that he helde
 4 in his contre. wherfore he wolde do him honour and pleisir, to
 thentent he might haue his places the sonner agein / and to take a [1 ff. 92, bk.]
 Lenger trewes with him / "for I propose nomore to Warre with him.
 They that herde him, were right ioifulle of thies tidynges. they that
 8 had apointed to go with him / habiled them-self as richely as they
 coude, and so wele, that the yong Turke thought him-self there
 sholde come neither kynge ne prince at that day bettir appointed
 than he and alle his people shold be / he puruaide so that alle thing
 12 was redy longe before the day of his departyng; and in his mynde
 he dred noman; sith that he knewe wele the iij. seruantes of
 fferaunt might not turnay, he thought him verily assured that the
 faire Iolant shold be his wiff. Thus passed forth the tyme alle in
 16 ioie, trustyng in goode auenture. And thus shalle we leue a while
 of hym, and speke of the iij. ffelawes that were departed eche fro
 othir / and euery man hielde his way with grete sorowe and payne,
 contynuelly remembryng the faire Iolant / whiche eche of them
 20 trusted to haue to his wif, Remembryng also the bounte of the
 Emperour and of the Emperesse / and aftir, they thought on their
 curtaise maister, and of the fortunes they had there / and aftir,
 remembred hou they shold come agein in-to that Reaume, and hon
 24 the Emperour shold meruaile to se them come agein, like kynges
 sones / and in esspeciall, fferaunt, whiche hadde reteyned them so
 long in seruice / and so shold their ij. ffelawes that most be there
 that day, whan they shalle saye how long they haue ben ffelawes
 28 vnto a kynges sone / and euerich of them had his thought bie his
 two ffelawes. [Illumination: a King, or Noble, receiving and embracing a young Man.]

Orkais's com-
 panions dress
 grandly for
 their visit to
 Sicily.

The 3 Princes
 journey
 homeward,
 each wishing
 for Iolante.

32 **N**Owe shall y telle you of eche of them, hou they arryed in
 their marches. and first shalt y speke of Surnome, for he
 was the first, that departed & lefte his fadir for the seruice of
 god, and also was the first that came agein in-to his cowntre. whan
 Surnome was passed out of the Reaume of Sizile, he called a yonge
 gentilman vnto him, that was ²with hym / and saide vnto hym / [2 leaf 100]
 36 "my frende, I shaH perauenture be ashamed if ye sawe the pere
 place of whens y am comen / wherfore ye shalle departe home agein
 in-to your contre; and y gif you my horses, sauf only that y ride
 on, & my harneys, and ij. C. scutes, that yit are bilefte me; & I
 40 pray you that ye abide in the Reaume of Sizile til tyme of the

Prince Phi-
 lip

sends back
 his attendant
 with horses
 and money.

tourney / at whiche tyme y trust to be ther, with the mercy of god.
 neurtheles, if ye may haue any bettir maister, or othir good fortune
 in the meane tyme, y pray you leue it not for me" / This yong
 gentilman, that herd his maister thus speke, thought wele it came 4
 him of noble corage / and sory was to departe out of his company /
 and seide vnto him / "sir, for goddes sake be not a-shamed of me /
 for whoos sone that euir ye be, y had leuer be in your company
 than in the company of the grettist man of the world." Surnome 8
 thanked him, and saide / "I shaß discouer me now to you / I am
 a gentilman of roialle lyne; and that y trust shall be knowen or the
 but is refuse'. Tourney be ended / But y most go now in-to suche places where as
 I will no company" / his seruaunt than departed / and thanked 12
 him of his grete gestes, and retourned agein in-to Sizile / Nowe is
 Le Surnome alle alone, and kepith forth his way in-to ffrance / and
 within fulle litil while knewe certainly that his ffadir was ded /
 wherof he was fulle sorrowfulle. also he was ascerteyned that pe 16
 quene his moder was alyue, and his vnkle, the Duc of Burgoigne
 was Regent of ffrance; with whom he thought to speke vnknownen /
 and so rode he forth to Parys, with a visour bifore his face, and
 acqueinted him with a seruaunt of his vnkells / and besought him 20
 to fynde the meane that he might speke with him vsayne / This
 seruaunt came vnto the Regent, and seide vnto him / "my Lord,
 here is a yong man in this towne that wiß not shewe his visage,
 whiche hath desired me that he might speke with you secretly" / 24
 The Regent, vpon thies wordes, thought moche what it might be,
 and asked, of what fassion he was / "fforsothe," seid [the] seruaunt /
 "the moost goodly persone that euir y sawe" / "I shall telle the
 what thou shalt do," said the Regent, "Soone in the evenyng, brynge 28
 hym in-to myn Inner chambre, & there bere him company til y
 may be at leysen to speke with him" / Like as he commaundid, was
 it done. and at the houre apointed, this yong man was brought yn /
 [1 lf. 100, bk.] and the 1chambre avoided / and whan the Regent knewe therof / he 32
 made his seruaunt to take a light / and nomoo went in with him /
 And assone as Le Surnome sawe him, he did him reuerence, kepyng
 alway stille the visour bifore his face / and whan he came nere
 him / he tolde him the cause of his comyng was to put him in 36
 knowlagge that "the kynges sone of fraunce, that departed out of
 the londe suche a tyme, was not ded, but in good helth / and
 that he trusted for trouthe he shold withyn short tyme here
 tidynges of him / and to disclose the trouthe vnto him, he came 40

Prince Philip's attendant begs for leave to stay with him,

but is refuse'.

Prince Philip hears of his father's death,

and, unknown at first, has an interview with his Uncle, the Duke of Burgundy.

- him-self from the place that he was yn." whan the Regent herde
thies tidynges, he shewde not the high chere of a prince, but streyned
le Surnome in his Armes, and saide / "A, my frende! ye haue
4 brought me grete ioie! sith the sorowfull losse, herd y neur so
ioifulle tidynges, whiche is more than iiij. yere passed" / and with
thies wordes, the teeres ranne from his yen / bothe for ioie and pite.
and saide, "my frende, if it please you, I pray you telle me the
8 trouthe, hou it is with him?" Le Surnome hadde pite of his vnkelt,
and coude no lenger kepe his visage conerd, but toke his visour Prince Philip
takes off his
visor.
away / and whan the Regent had auised him, and remembered the
age of his Nevewe, and the fetures of his face / and than knewe
12 verily that it was he / And for the ioie therof, so sodeinly he vn-
closed his hert, that he was almoost in a swoone / so that he might
not speke / and whan his hert came to him agein / he kneled downe His Uncle,
the Duke of
Burgundy,
kisses him
and weeps for
joy.
• before him, and toke him in his armes and kissed him, so that he
16 wette all the visage of his nevewe with teeres that felle fro his yen,
and sith saide vnto hym, "allas, my lorde, and alle my ioie! where
haue ye be so longe? / allas, myn owne lord! your sorowfull fadir
had neur ioie sith your departyng / grete synne haue ye for his
20 dethe / The sorowes of this Reaume that hath ben for you, ben ouir
moche to reherce / But now shalle alle tho sorowes be chaunged into
Ioy. Allas! how shalt my lady your modir knowe of this ioifuft
recouere? / I trowe, whan she shalle first knowe it / the chaunge
24 shalbe so sodeyn that hir hert shalt breke for ioy / My lord, y
wote not what y shalt say / or how y shalt auise yon of your demeanyng
/ Wille ye that y calle yn the company that is yonder in my
chambre, whiche, whan they se you, shalle haue more ioy / than alle
28 the re-menaunt of your Reaume haue had sith your departyng." [1 leaf 101]
"ffaire vnkle," saide Le Surnome, "I shalle telle you alle my demeanyng
sith my departir hens / and whan ye haue herd my tale / ye
shalles auise me as ye thinke best / and by your counselle wiH I do" /
32 After thies wordes, began he to telle of his departyng / and of his
comyng in-to the Reaume of Sizile, and lefte no thing vntolde, sauf He tells his
Uncle all his
adventures,
only that he had done with his owne handes / and saide / "myn
vnkle, my departyng oute of this Reaume was for this cause / my
36 lord my ffadir, (whoos soule god pardone!) wold do noon helpe nor
soccours to the Reaume of Sizile, whiche was in way to be lost,
whiche caused me to departe so allone" / and tolde his vnkle so forth,
by & by, forgate not specially the ij. seruantes that were with his
40 maister, to reherce the worthynesse of them / and howe the warres

and about
Princess Io-
lante,

were ended a grete parte by their prowesse / and howe the trewes
holdith yit for ij. yere / and half / and howe the kynge of Sizile, for
his noblesse, was chosen to be Emperour / and how he hath the
fairest lady of the world to his doughtir / and the best / and of the 4
age of xvij. or xxⁱⁱ yeres / “and the Emperours desire is, aboue alle
thinges, that she be accompayned with a noble man / wherfore, to be
the more certayne, he hath made crie a tournay, whiche shalbe kepte
in may next comyng / and but yif one man may venquyssh the 8
Tournay iij. dayes / the Emperour shalbe at his liberte to chose the
best of them, and ther may noon tournay, but if he be borne of
roialle lyne, knowen & named / and forasmoche as y haue long tyme
serued there vnknewen, I haue the more desire to be ther at that 12
day / ffor y shaft put me in as grete deuoir and payne as y may
endure with lif / but I come to that wele / ffor it is she that hath
my hert assured in hir seruice / and long hath ben / for she is
incomparable ; Wherfore I haue affermed my self to be there / And 16
nowe, sith y vndirstond the dethe of my lord my fadir, ye shalle here
myn auisse. The terme is short, and but litille vnto that day /
wherfore me thinkith best to be vnknewen / ye are your self yit of
resonable age / and haue neither wif nor childe / and men hokle 20

Prince Philip
asks his Uncle
to go to the
Tourney,
as if for Io-
lante,

you heyre of this Reaume / wherfore I wolde, if it pleased you, to do
so moche for me as to be at this Tournay / and to make alle folkes of
this Reaume to beleue / that ye entende to haue this faire lady to
your wif / if your fortune be suche / and, y pray you, were suche 24

[¹ ff. 101, bk.]

deuises as y shaft desire you ; ¹and in the meane while, y shaft kepe
me in suche places as ye thinke best y may be vnknewen ; and ye
shalle go in suche astate as bilongeth vnto a kyng ; and my harneys
and abyementes for my body shalbe trussid forth as yours / And 28
the dayes of the tournay / y shal arme me in your pavilione / and
ye shalle put a visour ouir your face, and serue me at the tournay.
and at the ende therof, If I do any thing wele, alle be tymes y shaft
make me to be knowen, whiche shalbe the grettir ioie to suche as 32
wold y wele did / and y trust there be none othir there that knowe
me, but wold be glad to wite me do wele” / The duc of Burgoigne,
heryng alle his tale, herkened him fulle gladly, remembryng wele hou
he had herde that by iij. yong men, straungers, the Reaume of Sizile 36
was gretly holpen / wherfore he thought wele, by the tale of his
Nevewe, that he shold be one, wherof he was right ioifyull / and the
bettir willed to go. hou be it, he thought alle folkes wold iuge his
age was nothing accordyng to haue that fair lady / wherfore he 40

and to wear
armour like
his.

The Duke
consents.

praide his Nevewe to take thaduisse of vj. or vij. moo of his preuy
 counselle, whiche shold be nedefulle, aswele for the purveaunce of
 their going forth, as for any othir cause. wherto Le Surnome was
 4 agreable / and at night wold haue departed / but his vnkle wold
 in no wise lete him / but made the chambre to be avoided; & þat
 nyght lay ther to-gedir / and the Regent slepte not moche, he was
 so ioyfulle / he thought it shold be but a dreame / it was so Newe
 8 vnto him, that he coude not wele bileue that he sawe & herd / He
 rose be tymes in the mornynge / and so did the kynge / and than
 was called yn to the chambre alle suche as the Regent wolde name.
 and there was discoverd vnto them alle the matier vpone grete othes
 12 & charge. there may noman thinke of more ioy than was at that
 tyme in that chambre. This ioy was bydewed with teeres of pite /
 And after, whan they vndirstode the pleasir of their yong kynge,
 they were alle concluded to his avise & pleasir, and made the duc of
 16 Burgoigne to be published thorough the Reaume, that his entent was
 to go to this tournay / in asmoche he had neither wif ne childe,
 nor coude here no tidynge of the kynges sone / wherby the Reaume
 might falle in-to othir lynage, wherof many inconueniences might
 20 growe / wherfore he purposed, in eschuyng of suche Inconuenience,
 to dispose him to be maryed. ¹ Many men saide that he did wele; [¹ leaf 102]
 and som saide “ nay / for he might haue ben maried to lesse charge
 of his Reaume & lesse iubardie of himself: what nedeth him, of his
 24 age, to put him in a tournay? The kynge of Ingland had ij. faire
 ladies to his doughters; and withouten any iubardy he might chose
 whiche of them that pleased him” / suche argumentes were amonges
 the people / Natheles, the Duc of Burgoigne toke litelle hede to suche
 28 wordes / but put him in deuoir and diligence, that alle thinge was
 redy longe before the day / The yong kynge made to ordeyne
 richesses y-nough / so that he might kepe estate incomparable there
 to any othir / for he trusted his fortune shold be to haue that /
 32 that alle othir shold faile of / ffor his hert was highly and surely
 set, &c. Now shalle we leue of him a while / and speke of Ector,
 how he did affir his departyng from his ij. ffelawes. [*Illumination.*]

36 **H**E rode fulle pensif and soroufulle yn his hert, for their depart-
 yng / Also fel in remembraunce of his owne departyng out
 of his cuntre, & how many noble mennes sones had be lost
 for his cause / wherfore he thought / the ffadirs wold dedly hate
 hym, whiche brought him in grete drede and annoye / and con-
 40 cluded in him-self that he wold not be knowen til he vndirstode

Prince Philip
and his Uncle
sleep to-
gether.

The Duke of
Burgundy
proclaims
that he will
go to the
Tourney, for
a wife.

Humphrey,
Prince of
England,

resolves to
keep un-
known till

he can judge
of his wel-
come home.

He consults
a Sicilian
friend,

[¹ If. 102, bk.]

who says
'Wait till
you get to
England, to
hear tidings.'

They reach
England,

and are told
of the King's
mortal ill-
ness.

The Realm is
in trouble,

how they toke his departyng / and how they wold be content with
his comynge / So fortunede, that he had a gentilman of Sizile in his
company / whiche was right wise, as he had founde in his right
goode counselle in diuerse thinges bfore / wherfore he thought to 4
discouere vnto him alle his matiers / and tolde him what he was,
and how he was departed oute of his Reaume, & xiiij. ¹of the
grettist Lordes sones of the Reaume with him / "wherfore," saide
Ector, "y am gretly in drede of the hate of their ffadirs / But what 8
so euir befall me, I most nedes be knowen there." The gentilman
of Sizile was gretly abasshed whan he vndirstode his maister / he
was also right glad to knowe his maister of so noble birth / sayng
vnto him / "my lord, y thanke god that he hath youen me grace 12
to be nowe in your seruice, & .I. shalt say you what y thinke best /
that ye conclude you in no thinge til ye be entred in to the Reaume
of Inglonde. By than shal ye here suche tidynges, as ye shalle more
surely take youre aulse vpone / and, in the meane while, pluk vp 16
your herte, and take no thought; ffor y trust, at your comyng, the
kyng and alle the Reaume shalle be so reioysed / that they shalle sette
litol by the losse of the Remenaunt that were in youre company /
for perauenture the kyng and the lordes shalle Iuge that they were 20
the cause and meovers of your going" / "The thing," saide Ector,
"that y haue moost yn drede, ys, lest that the kynge haue taken
suche displeasir with my departyng / that he wold not se me nowe /
whan y come / nor no thinge departe with me, to appoint my self 24
like his honour, to be at yondir Tournay / whiche is the place of
the worlde that y desire moost to be at" / "fforsothe," saide the
gentilman, "ye haue right" / And with suche talkyng passed they
forth the wey, til they came in-to the Reaume of Ingland; and the 28
first Towne they came to / they mette with a grete procession /
euery man goyng barfoot in their prayers, with grete deuocione, as
it semed / Ector asked the cause of this procession / and they saide
for the kynge, that was so sore seke, that noman coude promyse 32
him liff / wherfore there was made generall procession thoroughout
the Reaume / for of his dethe, the Reaume shold haue to grete a
losse / seyng he had noon yssue a lyue but ij. doughters / wherby
the Reaume shold stande in grete trouble / and likly to falle in the 36
handes of straungers / whiche was grete pite / ffor the kynge had a
sone, as goodly a prince toward, as any was o where / and right
gretly biloued / & right wele coude deserue it, as any man a lyue of 39
his youthe, and a iiij. yere passed he departed from hens / and 40

many a Grete Princes sone of this Reaume with him / and neur sith
 was ¹herd no tidinges of them / wherfore the Reaume is in grete
 trouble / and neur sith had ioie / and many suche processions haue
 4 ben made sith that tyme for him / and the kyng himself had neur
 good day sith" / Ector askid his hoste, of what age he supposed the
 kynges sone was. "Be my faith, sir," saide he, "I suppose of
 youre age, if he be a lyue; me thinkith y coude not bettir liken
 8 hym, bothe in length and resemblaunce" / "how trowe ye," saide
 Ector, "wold not the kyng be glad, and the Reaume, of his comyng
 agein, if he were a lyue?" / "yis, y dare sey," saide his hoste. "The
 hole Reaume wold make a fyne of half they are worth, to haue him
 12 agein." Thies wordes pleased Ector moche, and caused him to ride
 the remenaunt of his iournay more ioyfully than he did afore / and
 spedde him so, that withyn litil while he came to london / & loggid
 hym yn an Inne / his visour alway bfore his face / and enquired
 16 tidynges of the kyng: it was saide he was so seke that noman
 coude promyse him liff / than sent he his man in-to the Towne to
 enquire ferther / and made him to go vnto one of the lordes, that
 had lost one of his sones with hym, & telle hym that "he was of the
 20 Reaume of Sizile / and that he had late spoken with folkes that
 had seen the kyng of Inglandes sone a lyue / and hole, but he is
 yit prisoner" / This gentilman went forth, and did his message to
 the Erle of Warrewik / and the Erle askid hym / "my ffrende, say
 24 ye trouthe? may any man speke with him that hath tolde you
 this?" / "fforsothe," saide the gentilman, "y trowe y wote where he
 is / and I am sure he wold iubarde his hede of that y haue saide" /
 "If this be trewe," saide therle, "no fors of alle the remenaunt of
 28 his company / for they were cause of his goyng" / than toke he
 him by the hande, and brought him in-to a chambre nye to the
 kyng / & made him tary there; and went him self in-to the kynges
 chambre, and tolde the kyng hou he had founde a gentilman of
 32 Sizile; and tolde him what tidinges he had brought. The kyng
 made calle him yn / and herde his tale to an ende / and than he
 helde vp his handes to god, sayng / "A, my blissed creatour! y
 haue alway requyred thy grace, that y might se him er y dide / and
 36 right so, y biseche the that y may." whan the gentilman sawe the
 kyng so desirous for to se him / he toke the Erle a-part, and saide
 vnto him / "sir, y shal tel you tidynges that yit shalle please you
 bettir / ²sir, he is in good Helthe, for y sawe him but late, and
 40 spake with him, and I am his man / and he sent me hider to

as its Prince
has not been
heard of for
4 years.
[1 leaf 103]

England
would give
half its wealth
to have its
Prince again.

Prince Hum-
phrey sends
news of him-
self to the
Earl of War-
wick,

who tells it
to the sick
King.

He prays that
he may see
his Son again
before he
dies.

[2 ff. 103, bk.]

The King
bids Lord
Warwick
fetch Prince
Humphrey
to him.

Lord War-
wick goes to
Humphrey,

and blesses
the hour of
his return.

knowe what men saide of him / and he hath grete desire to come
hider agein / but he knoweth not wethir his ffelawes be dede or
a lyue / wherfore he is in grete drede of the kynges displeasir / and
of the evil wiſſ of you, and of othir grete Lordes of this lande / 4
whoos childe went with hym" / And whan the Erl herd this, he
was so glad, he coude not sey a worde to the gentilman, but went
streight to the kyng / and tolde it hym, wherof the kyng was
ioyfuſſ as he might be, sayng vnto hym, "ffaire Cosyn, y pray you 8
make suche *purveaunce* as ye thinke may be moost for his honour;
and dispose your-self with suche company as ye thinke best to go
for him, in what Reaume so euir he be, and brynge him vnto me
assone as euir ye may" / Than departed therle vnto his loggyng / 12
& this gentilman with him / and whan they were there, the gentil-
man seid vnto him / "sir, ye nede make no grete *purveaunce* / for ye
haue not right ferre to go / ye shalle nede to sadelle no hors therfore,
but it please you, for y can bringe you thider on foote with youre 16
ease / the fewer that come with you, y suppose, the gladder woll he
be" / Therle herd that, and taried not, but toke this gentilman by
the arme / and went forth, without other company, streight to his
loggyng / and whan he came in-to the chambre where Ector was / 20
he knewe him anone / and knelede downe, and toke him in his
armes without sayng any worde / and whan he might speke, he
saide / "A, sir! blessed be the houre of youre comyng now in-to
this Reaume" / then he asked him hou it was with him, and of his 24
auentures that felle him sith his departyng. Ector was in suche
drede, that he durst say no thyng as than, sauf only that he saide,
"I shall with right good will telle you at leyser of alle my fortunes /
but first, y pray you, telle me som of your tidynges." Therle tolde 28
him suche as he knewe, and what sorowe the kyng had, and alle the
Reaume, for his departyng / seyng / "thanked be god! now, by your
comyng, this Reaume shalbe revied in gladnesse" / thus passed
forth the tyme; til at the last, therle saide, "sir, and it please you, 32
y shal go to the kyng / whiche shalbe as ioyfuſſ as any man erthly,
whan he knowith how it is with you; and sone y shaſſ brynge you
worde of aſſ his pleasir, hou he woll haue you demeaned / and toke
his leue & departed." The gen^tilman of Sizile brought therle agein 36
to his Loggyng / & went agein to his maister / and tolde him alle
hou he had don that day, and howe he had ben with the kyng /
and what he saide; wherof he was right ioifuſſ. On the tothir
side, whan therle of Warrewik came to his loggyng / he sent for the 40

[1 leaf 104]

- kynges counsell^e, to whom he shewed, without hidyng of anythyng, the maner of comyng of their yong prince, to the intent that they might take aise how they shold telle it to the kyng / and so they
- 4 concluded alle togeder to go to the kyng, and telle it him / thus departed they to the kyng as ioyfull as they coude / and whan they came to him, they tolde him how his sone was in the Towne, in grete drede / for that / that he wist for trouthe, he had deserued
- 8 his grete displeasir. whan the kyng herd this, he was so ioyfull that he coude not speke a worde / and whan he might speke, he saide, "assone as it is possible, I pray you bryng him to me, for y fele that dethe approachet fast / whiche y shal rescyue more ioy-
- 12 fully for alle your sake / whiche haue this daie recouered an heire male to gouerne you aftir my dethe; I pray god graunte him wele to do." Than departed alle the lordes, with suche company, that alle the stretes were fulle of men / and whan they came nere at Ectours
- 16 loggyng / his hoste aspiid so moche people comyng toward his hous, and had grete drede, and came to Ector in grete haste, sayng, "sir, yf ye haue done any offence to the kyng or to his lawes saue your self be tymes / for here cometh grete number of people, I
- 20 suppose to take you" / Ector, hering thies wordes, wist not wele what to say or to thinke, but abode stille, til the lordes came vp into his chambre, whiche did him suche reuerences as longed to his estate / and whan he sawe them, he knewe the moost part of them,
- 24 and welcomed them right curteisly. There was that tyme more ioy in that chambre than y can reherce to you / than tolde they Ector the sekenesse of his ffadir / and how he sent for him to come hastely to him, for he desired moche to se him bifore his dethe.
- 28 Of thies tidynges was Ector right soroufult, and departed out of his loggyng, and toke one of the lordes by the arme / and went forth toward the kyng. The prease was so grete, that vnnethe he might passe, for euery man desired to se hym / and whan ¹he came to the
- 32 Court, he went streight in-to the Kynges chambre, & kneled downe by the beddes side / & whan he sawe the grete payne and sekenesse he was yn / he was in suche sorowe that he coude not speke a worde a grete while / And on the tothir side, the kyng was so glad that he
- 36 coude not speke / At the last, whan the yong prince might speke, he saide, "My lord, y biseche you, *but* of youre grace it please you to pardon me the displeasir that y haue done you; for y haue to gretly offendid you, whiche me sore repenteth / I am redy to obey
- 40 what punisshment it wolt please you to put me to" / The kyng

He then sends
for the King's
Council, and
tells them the
good news.

The Earl and
Council tell
the King,

who prays
them to bring
his Son to
him at once.

They go to
Prince Hum-
phrey,

who starts,

[1 ff. 104, bk.]

enters his
Father's
room, kneels
by his bed,

and asks his
forgiveness.

The King
grants it.

Prince Hum-
phrey tells his
sick Father
all his ad-
ventures,

and about
his 2 fellow-
Princes,

[leaf 105]
and the com-
ing Tournay
for Princess
Iolante.

Humphrey
begs forgive-
ness of the
Nobles whose
sons he took
with him.

toke his sone by the hande, saynge, "my sone, y pray god forgif it the; and for my part, y forgif the *with* alle my hert / and thanke god / that hath youen me grace, bifore my dethe, to recouere the / ye se thise noble men of whom ye had the children *with* you, 4 whiche yit be not retourned agein, as y vndirstande / I committe them vnto you / and so do y alle thestates of my Reaume. and, how be it, y am feble, and not like to lyue, yet haue .I. grete desire to knowe of your auentures sith your *departyng*" / Than Ector tolde 8 him of his *departyng*, not charyng any othir ther-*with* but him-self / than tolde hou he and his company were taken / and hou forthwith they were departed eche from othir / saue it fortun'd a child of his chambre to be lefte *with* hym, whiche lyued but a 12 while aftir / and than tolde he the maner of his Delyueraunce / whiche was caused by a yong cristen esquier, the moost goodly man, and the best assured, and the moost noble man of his handes, that euir y knewe or herd telle of / and by his prowesse he toke 16 the kyng of Perce, the Soudans Brother, by whom he was delyuered / and tolde the maner hou, as is bifore reherced / and hou that, aftir his deliueraunce, he came in-to the Reaume of Sizile / and there, was in the company of two the worshipfulle men of the 20 worlde; of their degre / of the whiche, one was the same gentilman by whoos meanes y was deliuered; and a-nothir one that was escaped of the armee of Scottes, whiche is an yngoodly man, and a worthy / ffor thise ij. men haue doon more hurt to the Turkes, than alle the 24 Reaume of Sizile / And aftir, he tolde the destruccion of the Turke, and hou the kyng of Sizile was chosen Emperour, and what terme of trewes was taken bytwene themperour and the yonge Turke / and than he forgate not ¹to telle of the Tournay that was cried for 28 the Emperours doughtir, and tolde the grete beaunte and bounte she was of / and noon aenture he vntolde, sauf his oune prowesse / and of his ij. ffelawes reherced he so moche worship / that enery man meruailed, that herd it / and whan he had ended his tale / he 32 behelde the grete princes and lordes ther / of whom he had away the sones of / and than went he vnto them & seid / "My Frendes & Cousins, y crie you *mercy*! for by me are ye differred from your children; for y wolt not, nor can, denye it, but that oure *departyng* 36 came of me, & not of them / and y trust verily in god that they be alyue / and if they so be, y promyse you *without* faile, their Raunsone shalbe no charge to none of you / and y trust to haue suche acqueyntaunce ther, to haue them delyuerd *without* fyne or 40

Raunsom, if they lyue" / whom they forgaff / with right good wille / The King of England dies, it.
sayng / that nowe god had sent them hym, it was but litil change of
the remenaunt." Than departed he and they alle from the kyng /
4 and within litil while aftir, he decesed, and yeldid his soule to god / The King of England dies,
ffor his dethe, was alle the Reaume heuy and right sory ; but they
were gretly recomforted by the comyng of the yonge prince / and
wele they might be / for in his tyme he gouerned the Reaume fulle
8 wele & rightwisly. The obsequyes for the kynge were done as and is buried.
belonged to his estate. And after, his sone was crowned, as of dewte Prince Hum-
he aught / and aftir his coronacion, he sent for his counselle / and phrey is
shewed them what wille he hadde to go in-to the Reaume of Sizile / crown'd,
12 to put him in denoir to haue this faire lady, trustyng to accomplish
wele his desire, for he was sure that his ij. felawes might not be
ther-at / In asmoche as noon might tournay there, but he were
descended of roialle blode right nygh ; and that were not they /
16 whiche were the men of the word that he moost dred at that
point / if they might haue ben there / Thise lordes, when they
vndirstode his pleasir, contraried him in no-thinge, but thought it
was right wele to do, though it were only but for to lete him to be
20 knowen in the Reaume of Sizile, where he had ben so long bi-fore /
when they were thus concluded, he purueide for his estate / and his and makes
abilementes to be made aswele and as richely as was possible for ready for the
him / and in this meane while, the gentilman of Sizile that was lolante Tour-
24 comen with him, reherced contynuelly the vertues and the grete ney in Sicily.
worthy^hnesse that was in his maister / and seide that he might not
faile to haue the Emperours doughtir / seyng / the tothir ij. of whom
ye haue herd, might not be there-at / and in esspecialt one that was
28 called Le Surnome, whiche was nounpareilt of the world / The
kynge's purueaunce was alle redy, and abode no-thing but the tyme
of his departyng / Now is it tyme that we retourne to speke of
Athlis.

[*Illumination: a King receives Messengers: a Cavalcade rides forth.*]

32 **Y**T is no doute he was right heuy when he was allone, departed Prince David of Scotland
from his company, whom he loued so moche / but his
thought was not like the tothir two, for he was not departed
against the pleasir of his fadir / but by his licence & commaunde-
36 ment ; wherfore he was assured to be right welcome / Thus rode he
forth more ioyfully, and nought discouerd to noon of his men, of
his estate, nor what he was. and whan he came in-to Scotland / reaches his native land,
he askid tidynges of the kynge and of his children / and where he
40 shold fynde the kynge / men tolde him where the kynge was, and

and hears
of his own
death.

Prince David
rides to where
his Father is.

[¹ leaf 106]

The King
sends his 2
other sons for
their brother,

and when
David comes,
the King em-
braces him,

and bids him
tell his ad-
ventures.

This David
does.

alle his children in good helthe / sauf only for the dethe of his
eldest sone, that died in the cristen armee, that went in-to the
Reaume of Sizile / Than rode he forth til he came to the Towne
where the kynge was, & loggid him yn an Inne, vnknownen what 4
he was, of any body / than enquired he what folkes there were
aboute the kynge of his counselle / Than sent he for two or thre of
them / and whan they came to his loggyng, and knewe him / they
had as grete ioye as coude be thought / And than said he to them / 8
“My frendes, the cause that y sent for you, is this / I drede the
grete ioie that the kynge shaH haue, if he here sodeinly of my
comyng / shold do him to grete an hurt / wherfore me thinketh
best that it be tolde him at ¹diuerse tymes and by leyser / first, to 12
telle hym that y am a lyve / and in prisone / and aftir to telle him
that y am escaped, and than to telle him that y am comen” / and
as it was deuised, it was done. And by processe of tyme the kyng
had knowlage of the comyng of his sone, wherof he was as ioyfuH 16
as he might be / for he neuir loked to haue seen him a-lyue / than
he sent his ij. brethern for him / and alle the lordes, knightes, and
Squiers of the Court / grete was the ioy amonges them whan they
were mette / so that no sorowe was thought on. They that were 20
comen out of Sizile with him, were sore abasshed whanne they
knewe their maister was the kynges sone / hou-be-it they thought
altwey he was of som noble blode, he was so fult of all goodly
maners / Athis, accompanied with his two brethern, and grete 24
nombre of princes and lordes, departed from his loggyng, and went
to the kynge / whom he founde in a grete halle: and whan he sawe
him he kneled doune; and assone as the kynge sawe him, he ranne
to hym a grete paas, and toke him in his armes without speche; & 28
whan he might speke, he welcomed him in his best maner, and
asked him of his Auenturys, & that he sholde telle it openly / he
began his tale thus / “My lord, here be many yn your presence
that can telle you of the grete fortune that befell at the port where 32
we were / and of my self y shaH telle you / for y wote not what
befelle of the remenaunt. The vesselt where y was, smot on land
bifore the Turkes baner; and alle that were theryn were drowned,
sauff vj., wherof y was one / and the Erle Douglas an othir / & 36
othir iiij. that y remembre not / and we purposed verily to haue
yolden vs to the Turke / but he charged his men to sle vs / and
there was the Erle Douglas slayne at my feet / and y withdrew
me / and set my bak to a Roche / and the Turkes sone espied me / 40

and hadde pite on me, and commaunded alle men to come fro me,
and toke me with his owne handes, and promysed to saue my lif /
wherof the Turke was not pleased / and wold haue sleyne me in his
4 handes / but he defendid me right valiauntly / and for cause he was
a kynges sone / and y was his first prisoner, he delyuerd me frely /
and brought me surely in-to a cristen place, whiche was beseged
within two daies aftir / and the Captayne of the place was right a
8 a noble man & a knyght / and had in his company a man that
hight Le Surnome, whiche was the floure and surmountour of alle
othir: with hym haue y bene alle the while sith the tyme of my
takyng / and he deliuered out of the Turkes handes a yong man
12 that was named Ector, whiche dayly did so wele, that within litil
while his renome was fer knowen. Thise ij. and I had but one
purse & one wille; for debate was neuir amonges vs." Than tolde
he hou, by the worthynesse of his ij. felawes, the Reaume of Sizile
16 was recouerd; & told of the batailes & grete adventures that were
duryng the werres / than tolde he of the long trewes that was
taken / & forgate not to telle of the Tournay that shold be, & for
whoos sake; & hou noon might tournay there, but if he were of
20 blode roialle / whan the kyng hadde herde all his tale, he was right
wele content therwith / and toke him by the hande, & drewe him
apart with v. or vj. othir that he called to him, & askid his sone, by
his feith, if he had not grete desire to be at this Tournay; & he
24 saide, "yis, if it pleased him." & besought him at his first comyng
to graunt him that request / "forsothe," seide the kyng / "& ye
shalle go as wele acompanyed & appointed as y can make you, what
so euir it cost me" / Than made the kyng grete purveaunce for his
28 goyng forth / and appointed the moost part of his noble men, &
lusty knyghtes of his Reaume, to accompany him. In this besy
tyme, such sekenesse toke the kyng, that he died. his sone was
right sorowfull, as of reason he aught / but he might not be
32 recouerd / The tyme passed, & his sorowe wele appeased / the yonge
kyng was crowned / & than ordeyned he his abilementes moche
more riche than bifore. And purposed him to departe, so that he
might be ther .x. or .xj. daies bifore the Tournay / trustyng to come
36 to this high wele, and mariage of this faire lady / and thought, whan
he came there, to enquire alle aboute aftir his two felawes / and to
kepe them in his company. [Illumination: Meeting of Emperor and King, &c.]

40 **F**Or to abregge my matier, the tyme came that it semed the
kyng of Scottes ceason to departe; and he departed out of
THREE KINGS' SONS.

[1 ff. 106, bk.]
Prince David
tells his
Father about
Prince Philip
of France

and Prince
Humphrey of
England,

and about
the Iolante
Tourney,

to which he
wants to go.

His Father
makes pre-
parations
for him,

and dies.

David is
crown'd King
of Scotland,

[¹ leaf 107]
and starts
for Sicily,
with a grand
retinue.

his contre in grete ¹estate, alle his folkes in a lyuere / and so
many lordes & knyghtes with him, that it was meruaile to se ; he had
to the nombre of a M^t horses with him, or moo / he sent his her-
begeours in-to Sizile before, to take vp his quarter for his loggyng / 4
more than a moneth bifore his comyng / and men meruailed moche
that he came with so moche people / and delyuerd him suche log-
ging / as was accordyng to the nombre / whan tyme came, the kynge
of Scottes approched, and lay but viij. myle from the Emperour. 8
and whan themperour hadde dyned, he toke his hors, with grete and
noble company of princes and lordes, for alle the floure of Sizile was
ther / thus departed he oute of the Towne, & mette the kynge of
Scottes more then a myle thens / and whan he sawe the kynge of 12
Scottes, he thought it shold be Athis / and asked “where was the
kynge” / and whan he knewe for trouthe that it was he / he toke
hym in his armes, and seide / “A, sir ! ye haue done grete wrong,
that thus longe ye haue hidde you from me ; for, and y had knowen 16
you to my power, y wold haue honoured you accordyng to your
estate / y coude neuir haue thought, that the sone of so mighti a
kynge, shold haue ben seruauant to my Senesshalle” / fferaunt,
whan he knewe Athis, that so long had ben in his seruice / and 20
sawe him nowe a kynge, humbly came to salewe him / seyng /
“sir, y aught gretly to thanke god that hath youen me suche grace,
to haue the seruice of a kynge / hou be it / ye aught not to blame
me, though y haue not honoured you as me aught / for fulle gladly 24
y wold, if y hadde knowen you” / Thus rode forth the knightes of
Sizile and they of Scotland ; and ther was not forgotten amonges
them the grete worthynesse of the kynge of Scottes, and how
valiauntly he acqyte him at the takyng of the yonge Turke, & in 28
what maner he had deliuerd hym / Anone the tidynges came vnto
the Emperesse, and to his doughtir, that the kyng of Scottes, that
was now come, was Athis / that so long had ben in seruice there,
whiche was to them grete meruaile / anone themperour and the 32
kyng approched the palaice / But themperour in no wise wold lete
him alight there / but brought him to his owne loggyng / and assone
as he was a-light there / he chaunged him / and came in to them-
peresse, that abode him in the halle, and hir fair doughtir, with 36
grete company of ladies & gentil²wommen / & lordes, knightes, &
squyers / and whan He came in-to the halle, the Emperesse wel-
comed him ioyfully / seyng vnto him / that “he was moche to blame
to hide him thus long fro them / for they had done him moche 40

met by the
Emperor
and the
Nobles of
Sicily,

is reproacht
for so long
hiding his
name,

and is taken
to his lodg-
ings.
He goes to
the Palace,

[² lf. 107, bk.]

and is wel-
comed by the
Empress,

wrong / & alle by his owne cause" / he excused him, seying, "that
 he had made his auowe to be vnknowne duryng the werres, sith god
 had youen him that grace to escape with his lif so wele as he did" /
 4 than went he to this faire lady, the Emperours doughtir, & talkid and by Prin-
cess Iolante.
 with hir, seying / he shold put him in deuoir more to deserue hir
 grace than he had done, if god wold sende him that grace & fortune /
 This faire lady answerd nothyng / but was alle abasshed, for there
 8 was no man in the world she was so leef to haue, as one of the iij.
 seruauntes. But our alle othir, she loued best Le Surnome, if he
 were of birthe accordyng vnto hers / The kynge of Scottes excused
 him that tyme for sopyng with themperour / and desired his maister,
 12 fferaunt, & many othir noble men of Sizile, to suppe with him at his
 loggyng / thus went they forth with him / Alle they of the Towne
 that sawe Athis in his estate, preised god, wisshing amonges them
 that his ij. felawes were of as noble birth and grete power as he
 16 was. Aftir soper, the kyng of Scottes went agein to the ladies / and then goes
back to the
Court, to
dance.
 whiche he founde redy to the daunces / the daunces and the sportes
 were there right grete / and whanne tyme was, spices & wyne were
 sette / and than went alle folkes to rest / and thus contynued the
 20 tyme in disportes & pleasir, and the ffeeste kepte in grete estate &
 nobley til aftir the mariage; and euery man lyued yn hope and
 desire to haue this faire lady. ¶ Now shalle we leue a while, &
 speke of Orkais, the yong Turke. *[Illumination: Emperor and Sultan meet.]*
 24 **Y**E haue wele herde here before, how he was determyned to be Sultan
Orcays
 at this Tournay / and whan he sawe his tyme coueneble, he
 departed, so richely arayed and so wele accompanied, ¹that [leaf 108]
 euery man thought that he was right wele appointed accordyng to
 28 his highe estate / and lital while he spedde him so wele, he came in- lands in
Sicily,
 to the Reaume of Sizile / his herbegeours were afore, and hadde
 taken vp his loggyng / whan the Emperour knewe of his comyng /
 he had grete meruaile / and thought werrily he shold not tournay
 32 without he were first cristened; and so he supposed the Turke
 entendid to be / Than went he and the kynge of Scottes to mette and is wel-
comed by the
Emperor and
Prince David.
 with him / and mette him almost at the Towne. There was
 amonges them grete ioye / and eche did othir grete honour. and
 36 when the Turke behelde the kynge of Scottes, he knew certainly
 it was the same that he had taken prisoner to-fore; and whan he
 remembred his worthynesse, he loste anone moche of his hope of
 the Tournay / wisshing that he hadde slayne hym whan he toke
 40 him prisoner / but in asmoche as it was to late / he salewed the

The Sultan
and King
David talk
over their
freeing one
another.

kynges, saynge vnto him / "fforsothe, sir, whan y deliuered you, y
wende fulle litil to haue hadde in myn handes the chief of the
cristen armee" / "By my feith, sir," seide the kyng of Scottes, "y
holde my lif of you" / Than seide the Turke, "y deliuered you / 4
not knowyng what ye were / and ye deliuered me, knowyng for
certaine that y was the Turkes sone / by this, was ther gretter
bounte yn you than in me; and y am more bounden to you than ye
to me" / "trewly," seide the kyng of Scottes, "sauf your grace / 8
ffor y did nought for you, but that y was bounden bifore for to do /
and moche more, and y coude / and ye did for me without desert of
me or any othir, for my sake" / In suche *communicacion* rode they
vnto the Towne / and the Emperour hadde grete pleasir to here 12
them / Aftir soper, the Turke and the kyng of Scottes came to se the
Ladies / and so did alle othir straungers, wherof there were so many,
that euery man was ameruailed / for there was no cristen nacion
almoost, but there were som folkes therof / The ladies and gentil- 16
women made grete chere to the Turke / The Turke made it secretly
be broken to the Emperour, that if he wolde breke of this Tournay /
and gif hym his doughtir in mariage / he wolde become cristen for
hir sake / but his entente was, not to be cristened vpon none 20
certaynte / and if themperour had knowen bifore his desire, *with*
right good wille he wold haue agreed therto / for by that meane
his Reaume, for alwey sholde haue bene in peas / neuirtheles, he

They go to
see the
Ladies.

Orcays tells
the Emper
that if he
can have
Iolante, he'll
turn Chris-
tian.

[1 ff. 108, bk.]

The Emperour
says he can't
stop the
Tourney for
her.

praied ¹him now to remembre that the ffesst of the Tournay was alle 24
redy / wherfore it was now to late to breke it / ffor the loggyng
was taken vp by the herbeiours for x. kynges and C.C. princes, and
grete lordes of blode Roialle, wherfore he neither might, nor wolde,
abuse so many grete princes & lordes / for he coude not do it 28
without grete maugre and a shame / But, and he hadde shewed
him this whan he was prisoner, Themperour wold haue had grete
ioie therof / whan the Turke herd this answeere, he thought wele
themperour saide trouthe / and content him with the answeere, 32
tha[n]kyng moche themperour; and so taried ther stille, abidyng
the ffeste / and euery day the kyng of Scottes and he, *with* many
othir grete princes, came to disporte them with the ladies & gentil-
women / Now leue we them, & retourne to the kyng of England.² 36

King Hum-
phrey of
England

THe kyng of England had wele herde in what aray & grete
estate the kyng of Scottes was departed to this Tournay;
wherfore he accompanied him self the bettir / and appointed

² Illumination: Meeting of the Emperor and the King of England, on horseback.

- him self aswele as he coude, like as ye hane herde bifore / and whan he thought hys tyme best, departed, & within litil while came in-to the Reaume of Sizile / and whan themperour was assertayned he
- 4 was nere / he toke his hors / and in his company, the Turke & the kynge of Scottes, and many othir grete princes and Lordes / and whan they mette with the kynge of England / and was assertayned it was Ector, The Emperour was neuir so ameruailed / The Turke & 8 the kynge of Scottes were sore abasshed / Natheles, eche one made othir grete chere / and in esspecialle the kynge of England made Athis grete chere, no thing wenyng he had ben kyng, nor of blode Roialle; but whan he knewe he was a kynge, as wele as he & the 12 next¹ neighbour that he had / eche of them made meruailous Ioie of othir / But our alle men / fferaunt had grete ioie / and helde him self moost vrous man that lyued in his tyme / seyng two so grete kynges that had so long contynued in his seruyce / and than came 16 he to salewe the kyng of England / and he did him alt the honour that he coude / sayng / “myne owne maister / Lo, here your seruauant / that neuir shaß faile you, daies of his lif / Here may ye se two of your seruantes: wold oure lord, the thridde were in suche 20 condicion!” than asked he if any tidinges were of him / “Trewly,” saide themperour, “nay / and therof haue y grete meruaile” / whan the two kynges herd that / they were right sory / thinkyng eche in him self / they wolde gif the third part of their Reaume to haue 24 him in their company / The kynge of England thought verily, that if he coude gete him, he wolde marye him to one of his susters / and gif him grete possessiouns. thinkyng he coude nowhere so wele bistowe hir with that he were a gentilman / In suche thoughtes & 28 wordes, rode they to the Towne. And like as the tidynges of the kynge of Scottes came to themperesse and to hir doughtir, came tidynges of the kynge of England, how for trouthe it was Ector, that so longe had be in service there. The Emperesse & hir doughtir, & 32 alle the ladies & gentilwomen, gretly reioised it, and thought it was half a miracle, for the meruaile they had therof / Themperour went to his loggyng / and the kynge of England went to his / by the commaundement and ordynaunce of the Emperour; and the Turke, 36 & the kynge of Scottes, brought him there / and went agein to their owne loggyng / and taried not there scantly til they had half soped / but went agein to the kynge of England, and founde him yet stille at soper / and fferaunt with him / than sate thei downe with hem / 40 and than talkid they of Le Surnome. a man might haue had ioie
- ^{reaches Sicily.}
- ^{King Humphrey is met by the Emperour, King David, and Sultan Orcays.}
- ^[1 leaf 109]
- ^{No tidings have been heard of King Philip of France.}
- ^{King Humphrey,}
- ^{King David, and Sultan Orcays talk about King Philip.}

and meruaile, to haue herd them reherca the grete noblesse & bountees of him / and for his grete renome, euery man loued him / On the tothir side was themperesse in the halle, accompayned with ladies & gentilwomen / and ther was noone othir talkyng, but of 4 the kynge of Englund, and the kyng of Scottes, hou long they had be amonges them vnknownen / and there was Le Surnome complayned / and somme saide that yet he might come to this Tournay tyme y-nough / and if it were possible to him, ¹so wold he accord- 8 yng to his promys / The ladies had grete desir to se him ; but ouir alle other, themperours doughter had grete sorowe that he was not come ; and praied god, Le Surnome might be of as grete blode & power as any of the ij. kynges. Aftir soper, the kynge of Englund 12 & of Scottes, & the Turke, & alle the princes, came to se the ladies / the kynge of Englund was fulle wele receyued amonges them / and questioned, wherfore he kepte him self so long vnknownen. he answerd & saide, that in his emprisonment, & at his deliuerance, 16 he made suche promesse / Than saide he, “y pray god comfort Le Surnome, and sende him good auenture, where so euer he be ; for, next god, y may thanke him of my lif.” and sayng thies wordes, the teeres fille from his yeen / for sorow þat he hadde þat he coude 20 here no tydynges of hym / The ladies gaf him a grete preise, seyng that “ Le Surnome had wele bistowed his seruice, that it was so wele remembred ” / anoon the mynstralls playde / and the daunces began on alle partes / there knyghtes, ladies, & gentilwomen dauncyng ; and 24 euer amonges was Surnome remembred / moost of any thing / In this festing & pleasir, abode they til the day of Tournay / Now is it tyme to speke of the kynge of ffrance, and of his vncl the Duc of Burgoigne. [Illumination: Meeting of the Emperor and the King of France.] 28

King Philip
is expected at
the Tournay.

[¹ If. 109, bk.]

King Hum-
phrey justi-
fies himself
for formerly
keeping
unknown.

Dancing
begins.

Festivities go
on till the
Tournay.

King Philip
of France

THe kynge of ffrance, þat wold be vnknownen, wolde not departe so sone as the tothir did / hou-be-it he knewe of the departyng of many kynges and princes / and in what estate and riches the kynge of Englund & the kynge of Scottes were 32 departed yn. and many tymes was his vncl and he in communicacion for his purueance ; and the kynge was the best diuiser that any man coude fynde : he devised ²not as a pore caitif, but as a kynge / so that there was noon, of what estate and condic'ion he 36 was of / to be compared to him. Thre daies bifore, he had sent his seruantes to take vp loggyng for the Duc of Burgoigne / enheritour and Regent of ffrance, whiche hath in his company v. or vj. M^t horses, wherof there be vj. Dukes and xiiij. Erles, beside grete Barons 40

[² leaf 110]

sends ser-
vants to
Sicily, to
get lodgings
for the Duke
of Burgundy
and his large
retinue.

and noble knightes, that were in his company. He ordeyned than his
vnele to take vpon him the playne armes of ffraunce, seyng, "that
it ought to be so / for it shold be to him reпреef to tournay in any
4 other cote armour than in his owne" / The duc of Burgoigne, whiche The Duke of Burgundy agrees to all that K. Philip proposes.
entended no-thing so moche as the pleasir of his newew, was content
with alle that he wold ordeyne / how-be-it, he tolde him that folkes
wolde speke moche therof / inasmoche as he was not crowned kynge,
8 nor bare the name therof / Neuirtheles, in conclusioun, thus it was
apointed / and thus it was done / And ther was noman in alle ffraunce
that [wold] contrary the Dukes pleasir / hou-be-it, his day was not
come, by a yere and more, of the vij. yere / and alle such murmur &
12 wordes, dred the Duc. But it was sure at the ende, what-som-euir
was saide, shold be to his grete honour / and alle thinge was arredied
thus as y haue tolde you / and the kynge departed at suche tyme
as he might come to the Emperour a ij. nightes before the Tournay / King Philip starts from France.
16 and whan his herbegours came afore / and asked loggyng for so
grete a nombre / themperour was abasshed, and meruailed moche /
Than they tolde him how he was Regent of ffraunce, and enheritour /
and noon but he apparaunt to be kynge / and so toke he him self /
20 Of alle this, themperour had grete meruaile / & specially, sith he was
so nere vnto him, that he had not before tyme sent noon embassat
for the mariage of his doughtir. ¶ Now cometh the tyme of the
Dukes departyng / no mā may thinke the richesse that that tyme
24 was at Parys, of the grete princes that were come thider / whos
abilementes and purueaunce were to long to reherce / when alle was
redy, the Duke departed / and they that he had in his conduyte /
The kynge went alwey before or behinde / euery man praied god to
28 sende the Duc good auenture, for moche was he biloued ¹amonges [1 ff. 110, bk.]
them ; hou-be-it they had a litil grugge vnto him now / for this,
that he bare the playne armes of ffraunce / and they praied god
they might ones se the kynges sone a lyue amonges them / for than
32 sholde he be fayne to leue thoos armes / Thus departed he, as y
telle you. The Duc spedde his Iournay so, that he came in-to the
Reaume of Sizile / and whan he ffirst entred in-to the Reaume, he
was asseyntayned what kynges & prynces were there / and how the
36 kynge of England was Ector ; and the kynge of Scottes was Athis /
that so longe had be in service there. The Duc knewe thies names
wele, by reporte of his Neuewe / and had right grete ioie of them /
and assone as he might, he made relacion vnto the kynge, whiche
40 had therof a meruailous gla'nesse / thinkyng in himself / that suche

The Duke follows him.

They reach Sicily,

and hear of Kings Humphrey and David.

auenture had neur be seen / that iij. kynges sones vnknown shold
 be daily seruauntes yn one house to a knyght / Than thought he that
 this entent might not be had / for he thought before to haue had
 them bothe yn his house / though they had coste him the half of his 4
 Reaume / whiche now might not be / Than saide he to his vnclé,
 “now shalt y ride ioyfully / for y shalt se the moost part of them that y
 lone” / Thus rode they til they came nere vnto the place where them-
 perour was / and at the towne that he logged / next vnto themperour / 8
 there mette *with* him many noble men / that themperour had sent
 vnto him; and there dyned they *with* hym / and the Duc asked
 them many questions of the werres that had ben amonges them /
 and they tolde him, and also of the fortune of fferaunt, “whiche had 12
 ij. kynges in his seruice / whiche were the moost noble men of the
 worlde sauf one, whiche was in their company, that was named Le
 Surnome, whiche was the floure, and surmounted alle othir” / &
 there they reherced his persone, his worthynesse, and bounte / and 16
 alle the wele that conde be seid of any man / yit knewe not the Duc
 that it was his nevewe that was called Le Surnome. But assone as
 he might departe from them of Sizile / he came to his nevewe / &
 besought him on his feith to telle him how he was named whan he 20
 was in Sizile. and the kynge, that wold not displease his vnclé,
 tolde him that his first name was Le Despurueu / but the Emperours
 doughtir had chaungid it, and named hym Le Surnome. And whan
 the Duc herde this / and knewe for trouth it was he ¹of whom the 24
 grete renome sprange so ferre / he embraced him *with* grete ioie.
 and the kyng asked him what meved him so to do; and he tolde
 him the grete honour that he had herd spoken of him; and seid so
 moche, that the kynge wax alle rede & shamefast / and saide, “faire 28
 vnclé, they that haue made this report, y suppose be my grete
 frendes; but parauenture ye shalle here suche tidynges, or ye go
 oute of this cuntre, that happily shalle not please you so moche.”
 The Duc in his mynde praised him moche for that answere, & saide / 32
 “now wille ye go bifore or behinde” / “forsothe,” saide the kynge,
 “y wolt go bifore / and not fer from you, but as a gentilman of
 yours” / The Duc was content with his pleasir / The Emperour
 had alwey hope to here som tidynges of Le Surnome. The ladies 36
 that had herd speke of the grete richesse, and of the grete lordes
 that shold come to the towne, besought themperour they might be
 at the wyndowes to se them come / Themperour was agreable.
 Themperesse, & hir doughtir, and alle the ladies, went forth / whan 40

The Emperor
 sends his
 Nobles to
 meet the
 Duke of
 Burgundy.

King Philip
 tells the Duke
 his assumed
 names,

[1 leaf 111]

which the
 Duke rejoices
 to hear.

King Philip
 will now act
 as a gentle-
 man of his
 uncle's.

they that were in the towne herd thies tidynges / euery man
 appointed him self in the best wise they coude / to ride forth and
 mete the Duc of Burgoigne. The kynge of ffrancee was araied as
 4 a squier, and set on the best hors that was in alle the company / and
 iij. or iiij. moo that knewe of his counselle, were araied in sute with
 him / and eche one a visour before his face / Themperour, and the yong
 Turke, & alle the kynges & princes that were in the towne, rode
 8 oute to mete the Duc of Burgoigne / and within litil way of the
 towne, they mette with hym; and there was neither knight nor
 squyer in his company, but he had outhr trapoures or horsharneys
 of clothe of gold / or velewet embrowdird / there was neur so grete
 12 richessee seen in Sizile bifore in one day / whan the yong kynge
 saw the kyng of Englund and the kyng of Scottes, he salewed them
 a ferre; & the hors wheron he rode was so plesaunt, that his maister
 might guyde him as he wold / and he made ij. or iij. lepes fulle
 16 manerly / the hors was plesaunt, and the man that was on hym
 moche more / he was loked on of many folkes / but noon knewe hym
 [as] he passed forthe. The Emperour came to the Duc, and salued
 him as perteyned to his estate / aftir acqueyntaunce, they rode alle
 20 togedir to the towne; and the yong kynge and his company was
 alway nere vnto ¹ the Duc / At their comyng in-to the Towne, was not
 seen suche estate of richessee sith the worlde began / the wyndowes
 and the stretes were alle hanged with riche clothes / and alle the
 24 wyndowes fulle of ladies & gentilwomen / and whan they shold
 passe by themperesse & hir faire doughtir, the yonge kynge knewe
 them wele y-nough, ye may wele thinke / the cawcy was to litil for
 his hors & him / for alle that was possible for hym or his hors to do /
 28 was done bifore the ladies ther; and it semed to as many as bihelde
 him / that he sate as easely as he had ben vpon a litil amblyng
 nagge / and the ladies & gentilwomen gaff their beholdyng moost
 vnto him / but the prese was suche, they lost the sight of him longe
 32 or they wold. and whan themperour came there as the ladies lay /
 he alight, and made to conduyte the Duc of Burgoigne vnto his log-
 ging, with many kynges & princis; & whan they had brought hym
 there, [. . . .] Than the Duc knewe that themperour had supped /
 36 and that it was tyme to se the ladies, he departed from his loggyng /
 so accompanied, that it was mernaile to se / he came to themperours
 paleis, where he founde themperesse accompanied with grete nombre
 of ladies and gentilwomen / and so many faire, that it was a paradis
 40 to biholde them / but as the sonne passeth in beaute the sterres / so,

The Duke of Burgundy is met by the Emperor and his kingly guests, &c.

[1 H. III, bk.]

The Sicilian town is magnificently adorn'd.

The Duke visits the Empress,

and the
lovely
Iolante,

in beaute & behaving, passeth alle othir, the faire & good Iolant. The
duc salued the ladies, as to their estate belonged ; and than he felle
in talkyng with this faire lady / whom he founde so wele assured in
alle hir behauyng that he thought his nevewe wele fortunèd to haue 4
such choise / if his fortune might folow the remenaunt of his wille /
for as him thought, she was nounpareilt of the world / The daunces
began ; the kynges and princes came to se the daunces / the halt
was newe, made so grete and so plenteuous / that suche a-nothir 8
was neuir seyen / The yong kyng of ffrance was behinde alle othir,
holdyng a knight of his by the arme / and bihelde the daunces,
and specially his faire lady / and besought god his fortune might be
as good as his wille ; and biheld his ij. felawes disportyng them / & 12
dauncyng among the ladies / trustyng / or long to / to be knowen
there, asmoche to his hertes ease / as was to any of them / There

whom he
thinks the
Nonpareil of
the world.

King Philip
looks on at
the daunces.

[1 leaf 112]
His supposed
absence is
lamented.

was many of themperours court that com^{pleyned} sore Le Surnome,
whiche he him-self might here / seyng, " that they were nowe alle out 16
of hope / and that they thought wele that he was outhere dede or
seke, seyng the promys that he had made to be there at that day /
and if he were dede / it were the grettist pite of his dethe that euir
was of any so pore a man in alle this worlde." Thise wordes herde 20
many of the frenshmen ; and tolde vnto the Duc their maister, the
grete lawde that this man had, whiche was named Le Surnome.
and themperour him-self spake of him, and had for him right grete
sorowe / & so had alle the ladies and gentilwomen. The kyng of 24
ffrance, knowyng alle this / saide vnto suche as knewe his entente /
" if euer he had hert to do wele / it was now tyme to shewe it at
this tournay / and also he wist wele, without grete paine & trauaile
this grete conqueste might not be made wele" / they smyled & seide / 28
" they of this Reaume sey so euell of you / that we ar half in drede
of your spede." " Truly," seide the kyng, " y shalt do aswele as
y can" / Themperour praid the Duc of Burgoigne, on the morowe
to suppe with hym and alle the princes of his company / ffor he had 32
fested alle other straungers bfore / and this was the even of the
tournay. The Duc graunted hym / and toke leue of him and of
the ladies / and went to his loggyng / many were there that wold
haue conueyed hym, but he wold not suffre them / and assone as he 36
came to his loggyng / he founde leiser to speke with his Nevewe,
saing vnto him / " that wele he had chosen / and yf there were any
provesse in him / he shold put him in payne now to do wele ; for
if in his defaute he lost suche a wele / he might be sure neuer to 40

He resolves
to do his
best at the
Tourney,

- recouere the semblable" / if the kyng were amorous to-fore / his
vukells wordes made him more; sayng vnto him / "ffaire vncle,
myn armes shalle faile me, outhir y shalt dye in the payne / or y
4 shalt haue hir." The Duc began to laugh, and tolde him how
themperour had praied him to soper on the next day / and alle the
princes of his company / this nyght they went to rest. The kyng
of ffraunce thought euery houre a yere / til the day of the tournay /
8 and yit was there but one day therto. The ffelde was ordeyned by
themperours commaundement, where the Tournay shold be / and
placis apointed, & deliuerd to euery kyng and prince, to hang vp
¹theire tentes and pauilions. I had forgotten to reherce, howe that [1 ff. 112, bk.]
12 very [? MS.] night was shewed vnto the yong Turke / that, but if he
were cristened / he might not be receyued vnto the tournay / He made
many grete doutes, lest his suggetes wold destroie him, or chase him
out of his Realme / and than the Emperour and alle the kynges and
16 princis that were there, promised him aide, and to take his part, if
any suche cause were / and in trust of their promesse, he bicame
cristened on the morow / the kyng of Englund and the kyng of
Scottes cristened him / and eche of them put othir to such worship,
20 that they wold not gyue the Turke their owne name / so that he
hight aftir neither of them, but was named Charles / also a grete
part of his company bicame cristened. On the morow, did euery
man set vp his Tentes & Pauylions / euery man in his owne quarter /
24 But our alle othir, the Duc of Burgoignes Tente bare the brute /
whiche was of the playne armes of ffraunce / and was valued at
CCC Mt. scutes. that night came the Duc to soper to themperour /
and the Emperour and the ladies made him grete chere; and at
28 that soper, was speche of le Surnome, and was asmoche complayned
as any man might be / The Emperour seide asmoche good of him
as coude be thought / and tolde the Duc that he was cause of alle
his honour / and rehersed his persone, maner, and condicions / and
32 than wisshed him as mighti a kyng as any of his ij. ffelawes / and
than saide he / "he promysed me to haue ben here agein at this
day, if he had ben a lyve and at his liberte / wherfore y thinke verily
he ys dede" / and in sayng these wordes, the teeres felle from his
36 yen. whan this faire lady herde speke of the dethe of Le Surnome,
she coude not kepe hir from wepyng; and alle othir that there were,
hemoned him moche. And whan the Duc saugh the grete loue
that alle folkes had to his newew / and herde his grete vertues
40 rehersed, ye may be sure he had grete ioie / and saide to the

and win
Iolante,
or die.

The field
of Tournay
is settled.

Sultan
Orcays,

being promist
help by the
Christian
Sovereigns,
turns Chris-
tian,

and is
baptised
"Charles."

At the Em-
peror's
supper, the
supposed
absence of
King Philip
is again
lamented.

Folk think
he is dead.

Iolante weeps
for him.

The Duke of
Burgundy
[1 leaf 113]
talks to
Iolante about
his Nephew,

and thinks
her heart is
toucht.

King Philip
prays for
success.

Ten other
kings and
K. Philip,

with 205 men
of Royal
blood, make
108 on each
side in the
Tournay.

Emperour, "truly, sir, he hath wele employde his seruyse / and
peraventure he may be seke *without* dethe; and if god wille, ye shal
fulle wele se him hereaftir" / Thus, and in suche wordes, passid
forth the soper / and aftir soper, the Duc, as though he were a litil 4
envious of the preise that he herde of Le Surnome, saide vnto the
faire Iolante, "Madame, me thinketh / Le Surnome wele vred / for
whan he was spoken of this night / ye coude not kepe you ¹from
wepyng / wherfore y suppose he be more in your grace than many 8
othir" / "In good feith," quod she, "y loue him right wele; and so
haue y grete cause / yf ye had in your company one that had done
asmoche for you, as Le Surnome hath done for my lord my fadir, &
for me / ye had an hard hert, if ye herde speke of his dethe / and 12
were not sory" / The Duc sawe wele she was not pleased with his
wordes. he was not sory, for he thought it touchid hir hert som-
what, & trustid *within* iij. daies after / the peas shold be made.
anoon aftir, he toke his leve, saing, he most that night attende to 16
his besinesse / that night came noon of the tothir Princis to the
Emperour / for eche of them attendid that he had to do on the
morow. The duc came to his loggyng; and assone as he might,
went to the kynge his Nevewe, and tolde him what wordes he had 20
herde of him that night / and what speche was bitwene him and
the Emperours doughtir, saing, "sir, now do so, that this preyse and
recommendacion may contynue." he answerd, "I pray god graunt
me that grace." That night went he to rest / and on the morow 24
rose vp be tymes, and went & herd masse, and than apointed them
to be redy. [*Illumination: the Tournay; Knights charging; Iolante, &c. looking on.*]

THe Princis were departed by the knightes and kynges of
Armies, one ageinst a nothir / and were nombred, of kynges 28
x, beside the kynge of ffrance, whiche was vnknown; and
of othir princes & lordes of Roialle blode, CC. and vj.; so that they
were in all CC. & xvj. and on eche side,² C. & viij.; on that one side
the kynge of England and the Duc of Burgoigne / & on that othir 32
side, the yonge Turke and the kyng of Scottes / The scaffold on the
tothir side was where the ladies were; and this faire lady was set
vp allone on hight, because euery man shold se hir. Themperour
3 was on an scaffold, accompayned with many noble men / and 36
fferaunt the Seneshall was *with* him. At the houre that the
Tournay shold be, the Trumpetes blew vp / The kynges & princes
came out of their pavilions, euery man armed *with* his helme on

² MS. on eche side and

[¹ If. 113, bk.] ³ was on an scaffold, accompayned with many noble men / and 36

his hede / his Cotearmour on him, his baner a-fore him, and alle
 their horses couerd *with* their armes. The yonge Turke and the
 kynge of Scottes came on the tone side / the kynge of Englund /
 4 and he that men helde the Duc of Burgoigne, on the tothir side /
 and whan the kynge of ffraunce came out of his paulyon / eueri
 man beheld him *with* grete meruaile, wenyng he had ben the Duc
 of Burgoigne / by cause he ware the playne armes; and there was
 8 leyde grete charge vnto him in many folkes mouthis, for weryng
 thies armes, he not beyng kynge. Alle thise thinges done / thei
 were embatailed eche ageinst othir, the corde drawn before eche
 partie / and whan tyme was, the cordes were cutt / and the Trumpetis
 12 blew vp, for euery man to do his deuoir / And for to assertayne you
 more of the Tournay, there was on eche side a stake / and at eche
 stake two kynges of armes, *with* penne and Inke and paper, to
 write the names of alle them that were yolden / for they shold nomore
 16 Tournay / The Duc of Burgoigne was on horsbak, accompanied *with*
 them *with* the visours / and had a visour alwey bifore his visage; and
 they kepte them to-geder alway nere the kynge; for grete desire had
 the Duc to se his worthynesse. Suche an assemble was neur noon
 20 seen bifore / nor so many noble armes to-gedir / euery man payned
 him to haue the price / The kynge of ffraunce saw where his lady
 stode / and so did alle the remenaunt, whiche doubled their corage
 and worthynesse. This Tournay dured longe tyme; so moche / that
 24 it was meruaile that any man might endure that / that eche of theym
 did / Ouir alle othir, the kynge of ffraunce did meruailously: he ouir-
 threwe men & horses, so that there was vnnethes any that durst
 abide his strokes. the Emperour, and they that were in the scaffoldes,
 28 were alle abasshed of the prowess of the Duc of Burgoigne / there
 was noon to be compared with him / In like wise seide the ladies,
 and were ameruailed and sory that the kynge of Englund¹ and the
 kynge of Scottes were of no bettir power to encountre the Duc. It
 32 is to thinke, the Duc of Burgoigne had grete ioie to se the worthy-
 nesse of his Nevewe; and so had the Frensshemen, wenyng it were
 the Duc / saing amonges them / "oure maister is a meruailous noble
 man" / and so seide alle othir nacions that were there / and meruailed
 36 alle of him. So long endured this Tournay, til, by the Emperours
 ordenaunce, the Trumpetes blewe the retrayte, that euery man shold
*with*drawe him / there were not xxx^{ti} men on the Turkes side that
 might feight / but alie were sent to the stake. There were double the
 40 feighters on the kynges side of ffraunce; for, by the seide kynge,

Sultan
Charles and
K. David are
against K.
Humphrey
and King
Philip.

The Tourney
begins.

On each side
is a stake for
the beaten
men.

King Philip
of France
does best
of all.

[¹ leaf 114]

When the
cease is
sounded,
not 30 men
are left on
the Sultan's
side.

were sent to the stake vj. kynges and viij. Dukes, & xxij Erles,
 wherof the yonge Turke was one / whiche at that tyme had leuer
 haue dyued than lyued / The kynge of Englonde and the kynge of
 Scottes sawe wele they coude not wynne the pryce alle daies, ffor the 4
 first day the pryce was wonne fro them bothe; wherof they were
 right sorowfulle / than euery man drewe to his Pavilion, trist &
 pensiff as they might be / But the kynge of ffrance was alle in a
 nother thought / for he departed with good hope, as glad and ioi- 8
 fulle as he might be / and made him to be vnarmed / and his vncl
 coude not kepe him for takyng him in his armes / whan he remem-
 brid his grete noblesse that he had seen him do that day. Than
 went euery man to soper / and ouir alle the towne ranne the brute 12
 on the Duc of Burgoigne / euery man seid that, sauf Le Surnome,
 he was the moost valiaunt man that euer they sawe / Aftir soper
 the ladies came in-to the halle to the daunces / and there they seide
 to this faire lady / "By my feith, madame, and the Duc contynue 16
 thus worthyly, ye be his / wold oure lorde he were xxⁱⁱ yere yonger
 than he is!" Some seid that, "to-morow he shalbe so wery, that he
 shal not mowe contynue / and if he do not, the Emperour may chose
 whiche of them best pleasith him / and if it so be / I suppose he 20
 wilt knowe your wilt or he make any graunt of you" / "By my
 feithe," seid the faire lady, "my wilt shal be as pleasith him / and
 neur other-wise shal y thynke" / As they were in such talkyng
 came the kynges and the princis to Courte / but ouir alle othir was 24
 the Duc of Burgoigne beholden of alle folkes; & moche murmour
 [1 ff. 114, bk.] was ther of him / somme saide "he made a nothir to tournay ¹in his
 place; for certain it was not He that was to day yn the felde / it
 sheweth nothing in his face; for he ys as fressh as he was yester 28
 even this tyme." Thise wordes multiplied so moche, that the
 knightes and ladies had noon othir talkyng but of him / In so
 moche that men spake vnto themperour therof / and saide, that
 "by this meane the kynges and princes might be deceyued." Wher- 32
 fore they besought the Emperour / that on the morow, to put alle
 thing oute of suspecion, euery sholde departe oute of the felde
 vnhelmed / The Dukes folkes herde wele thise wordes that were
 spoken of their maister / for alle the halle was ful therof / and somme 36
 of them went and tolde the Duc therof; and how alle folkes shold go
 vnhelmed out of the felde / and he made countenaunce of grete
 displeasir / but he had right grete ioie in his thought, hou-be-it he
 wold telle his neuwe no thing therof. Than remembered he / how 40

King Philip
is full of
hope.

Iolante is
told that she
will be his.

The Emperour
is askt to
order that,
next day, all
Tourneyers
shall unhelm.

euery kynge bare a crowne on his helme / sauyng the kynge of
 ffrance / than toke he leue, & went home to him / and tolde him
 how many folkes spake that he bare the playne armes of ffrance
 4 that day / and was not crowned / "wherefore it behoueth you to bere
 the crowne, or ellis to bere myne armes" / Than seid the kynge, "I am King Philip
agrees to
wear his
Crown.
 content to bere the crowne to-morowe" / Thus concludid, they went
 to bedde til on the morow / That mornynge, alle the princis besought
 8 the Emperour that eche one of them shold come vnhelmed before
 the ladies; and so forth euery man go streight forth to his pavilion /
 Themperour agreed therto. The Duc was ware therof be tymes in
 the mornynge / and appointed him-self right richely / and sat vpone
 12 a stately Courser / his visour stille on / and whan tyme came, as the
 ordenaunce was the day bfore / euery prince came out of his pavil-
 ion aftir the blowynge of the Trumpetes; and euery man shold haue
 come out vnhelmed / But the kynge of ffrance came out alle armed /
 16 his helme on his hed / and his crowne theron / whan men saw him
 bere the crowne / euery man meruailed, & saide that "he aught not
 to bere it / sith he toke not on him the name of kynge"; euery man
 spake herof / the cordes were cutte as they were the day bfore. The Second
day's Tour-
ney begins.
 20 The tourney dured long, wele foughten / & grete armes that day
 were seen / wher-thorough some dyed. Ouir alle othir, the Duc of [1 leaf 115]
King Philip
again outdoes
all other men.
 Burgoigne bare the brute / the dedes of alle the tothir that were in
 the tourney, were not to be compared with his / notwithstanding
 24 the moost worshipfulle of the world were ther / he ouirthrewe man
 and horses, he racyd of helmes fro hedes / and finally he did so in
 armes, that euery man fled him; ther was not of them that were
 ageinst him whan the Trumpetis blew the retraite, passing x. that
 28 might defende them; and if the Trumpetes had taried a litil lenger,
 alle they on his side sholde haue founde noon to feight with. The
 kynge of Scottes was not brought to the stake that day, nor the
 Turke nother / the trumpetis sowned, the listes were closed. The
 32 kynge of fraunce wende to haue passid as he did the day before /
 but fferaunt came bfore him / and tolde him the crye & orden-
 aunce of themperour. The Duc of Burgoigne knewe of thies
 werkes, and was entred withyn the listes alle allone, wherof many
 36 folkes meruailed / The kynge of ffrance, feling thus taken, had King Philip
is unhelmed
by Ferant.
 grete displeasir in his herte; hou-be-it, he most nedes obeye, &
 came bfore the scaffold, where as the Emperour and the ladies
 were / The Duc of Burgoigne alwey folowing him / Now cometh
 40 fferaunt as nere to the scaffold as he coude, and vulacid the helme

of him that he had in charge ; and assone as it was of his hede,
 that he knewe it was Le Surnome, he coude not refrayne him to
 kisse him / and whan the Emperour and the ladies knewe him /
 they made ioie out of mesure / whan the kyng of Scottes and the 4
 kynge of Englund knewe that their felaw was there, they embraced
 him *with* as grete ioie as coude be thought. The Emperour coude
 no lenger kepe him on his scaffold, but came downe, and lepe an
 hors bak, and came to embrace Le Surnome, his special frende & 8
 seruaunt. There was the preas aboute him out of nombre. Somme
 saide, " beholde the outrage of this Duc ! This man is of ffraunce /
 and the Duc knoweth his worthynesse, and hath made him tournay
 in his place, wenyng therby to haue the faire Iolant." The Duc of 12
 Burgoigne toke of his visour / and required to speke with the
 Emperour in the presence of alle his ladies. Than came he before
 the Emperour, and spake so high that alle might here him / " sir,
 this same that hath tournaide, is the Kynge of Fraunce" / and tolde 16
 [1 ll. 115, bk.] he how he ¹departid out of ffraunce / and of the dethe of his
 ffadir / seing that alle that he had done was by his commaunde-
 ment / wherfore he bisought the Emperour of pardone. whan the
 Emperour knewe that he was kynge of ffraunce, he saide that god 20
 was Iuste. This was anon known our alle men / and in esspecialle
 amonge them of ffraunce / that knewe nothinge thereof afore. But
 than they cried with a high voice, " Nowell !" clappyng their handes /
 The Emperour and ladies wepte bothe for ioie & pite ; and aboue alle 24
 othir, made faire Iolant grete ioie / thinking in hir-self there was
 neuer womman more bounde to god / trustyng to be accompanied
with him / that hir hert moost desired / Aftir this grete, ioie euery
 prince went to his pavilione. Themperour coude not wele leue of 28
 embracyng and kissing the kynge of ffraunce. grete was the ioie
 amonges them / and fferaunt, whan he hadde beholde his iij.
 seruauntes saide that, " neuer man of his power was so mightily
 serued as he had ben" / whan the Emperour behelde the Duc of 32
 Burgoigne, he thought he was a passing goodly man of his yeres,
 sayng, " that god had wele ioyned so grete truthe and comlynesse
 in o persone ; for honorably and truly he had acyute him to his
 Nevewe." the kynge seid then, that " of long tyme had he knownen 36
 his vncles trouthe ; for there was neuer fadir kynder to his childe /
 than he had alway founde his vncle to him." The kynge of Eng-
 land & of Scottes, the more they thought on their fortune, the more
 were they abasshed & ameruailed ; for they had neuer redde in 40

The Emperour
embraces
King Philip.

His French-
men cheer
him.

The Emperour
praises the
Duke of
Burgundy.

romans nor in Cronicles, noon like vnto theirs. The Turke, when he
sawe this, wondird also gretly in hym-self / and thought wele, by
the kynge of ffraunce, the Realme of Sizile had be recouerd / ther-
4 fore it was moost conuenient, & best right, that his fortune shold be
to enioie it. Themperour thought this fortune a miracle¹; wherefore
he made alle the belles of the towne to be rongen / and toke the
kynge by the hande, & brought him to the chirche / and euery man
8 thankid god, that by his grace he had sent thise iij. kynges to their
recouere, and releef of the cristen feith / and alle the straungers that
herd therof, yaued god a grete lawde, holdyng it for a very miracle /
Frensshmen, that had recouerd their kyng / and knewe for trouthe
12 it was the same ²that was named Le Surnome, that had done so
grete a wele to the realme of Sizile, of whom the renome spred
thorough alle the world / thankid god as hertly, and with a grete ioie,
as was possible / Than brought themperour the kynge of ffraunce to
16 se the ladies / whiche coude not refrayne their lokes fro him while
he was there, sauf the faire and good Iolant, whiche was so wele
assured in euery manere, whiche bihelde him with suche womman-
hode and wisdom, that neither he nor noon othir shold perceyue hir
20 thought, al-be-it she had not leste pleasir to behold him / In like
wise was he as wele assured, for he thought than no place nor tyme
couenable to shewe that moost touchid his hert / But whan he
might, he toke leue of themperour to chaunge him, and aftir soper
24 to come agein to se the ladies. The Emperour made to speke vnto
him secretly / that he and his vnckle shold come suppe with the
ladies / In like wise warned he the kynge of England and of
Scottes. The kynge of ffraunce agreed to his commaundement
28 without any grugge / for there was no-thing that he desired so
moche, as to be in the company of somme that shold be ther. Thus
departed he, and toke ffraunt by the arme, wold he or not / and
so went with him, arme in arme, thorough the towne, til he came to
32 his logging / where as they made grete ioie / and talked of many
thinges passed / and so drave forth, til tyme came they shold go to
soper to the Emperour / than departed they fro his loggyng til he
came to themperour, whiche was accompanied with the kynges
36 afore rehersed. There were set at his boorde, himself, his wif, &
his doughtir, and ij. othir grete ladies / The kynge of ffraunce, of
England, and of Scottes, and the duc of Burgoigne; and fieraunt,
maugre his wille, was set there at the request of the thre kynges.
40 At the soper, was rehersed the gouernaunce of them / how they iij.

[¹ MS. mir-
ache]
The Emperor
has all the
bells in the
town rung.

[² leaf 116]

He takes
King Philip
to see Iolante,

but she will
not show her
love for him.

King Philip
and his
friends

go to sup
with the
Emperor.

had ben seruauntes to fferaunt / and how they shewed them self at
 this tournay in suche fourme, that their first noblesse might not be
 forgotten in this Realme. thus passed forth the soper / And the
 Emperour saide to fferaunt, "that there might no mysauenture 4
 befall hym, seyng such iij. seruauntes had seruid him" / & they
 seid, "god had sent hem grete grace to serue so good a maister as
 [1 If. 116, bk.] he was / that, next themperour, there was no man lyving they¹ wolde
 be gladder to do honour and pleasir vnto." The soper passed forth 8
 ioifully / litil was eten there, for they were alle fedde with ioie.
 The Emperour behelde the kynge of ffraunce, that his faire sone
 The Emperour's guests
 are too full
 of Joy to eat.
 shold be, and thought wele that god had accomplisshed alle weles
 in him. Themperesse thought accordyng to the same. This faire 12
 lady, how moche so euer she was reioised in hir thought, hir
 maner was suche that no man coude perceyue it; on the tothir side,
 the kynge of ffraunce, in beholdyng hir, trustid as wele to performe
 the iij^{de}. day as he had begone; wherthorugh he was so ravisht 16
 with ioie, that he neither eete ne dranke / Aftir soper, before the
 comynge of othir kynges and princeis / the kynge of ffraunce talked
 King Philip
 talks to his
 love, Iolante.
 with the faire Iolante / and askid hir, by hir feith, so many noble
 Princeis as were at this assemble / if there were not one more than a- 20
 nothir in hir grace / for any thyng that he coude do / he coude
 perceyue by no wordes of hir / but that alle hir hert & wille was at
 the pleasir of hir ffadir / seyng also she was right ioifulle of the
 grete estate that he was yn, prayng god to sende him asmoche 24
 honour & ioie as he coude wisse / he thankid hir ful humbly /
 and askid hir / if god gaf him that fortune to come to the
 mariage of / if she wold not so be aswele content as with a-nothir /
 she chaunged colour, & saide, "God gif hir grace to lyue no lenger 28
 than she be content with hym / that pleasith hir fadir to yene hir,
 were it be he, or any othir." with thisse wordes came yn many othir
 kynges and princes to themperours Court. The kynge of ffraunce,
 of Englund, and of Scottes, went to mette them / and brought them 32
 yn to the ladies; the mynstralles pleide so many / that alle the halle
 resounded / the daunces began / The kynge of ffraunce toke this
 faire lady, his maistresse, by the hande, and daunced with hir /
 euey body behelde them gladly / And themperour and the Duc of 36
 Burgoigne talked togedir / and behelde this goodly couple daunc-
 yng: "fforsothe," seid the Emperour / "here is a mete couple /
 god, by his grace, preserue them long" / "fforsothe" / said the Duc /
 He dances
 with her;
 and they are
 thought a fit
 couple.
 [2 MS. dis-
 pleasen]
 "If it please you to make the mariage, I trowe ye shalle displeasen² 40

them neither" / "fforsothe," seid themperour, "if it please the kynge
to take my doughtir / noon shall haue hir but he / By the orden-
aunce of this Tournay, no mañ [can] clayme hir of right / but if he
4 wyne alle the iij. daies / ¹and that can noman do but he / and ^[1 leaf 117]
though he do not / if it please him to haue hir, I woñ be right
ioyfull, ffor he hath deserved a grettir rewarde / yif it were in me
to yeue it him; for y holde myn honour and this Realme, only by
8 god and him" / euery man that was in the halle spake of this matier /
and in their mynde gaf this faire lady to the kynge of ffrance. Aftir
the daunces, euery man lay downe by the ladies, and talked to-gedir /
the night came & departed them / and alle folkes went to rest / and
12 on the morow, at the houre apointed, the kynges and princes came <sup>The Third
day's Tour-
ney begins.</sup>
to the tournay / as they did the dayes bifore / The kynge of ffrance
was wele loked on / that day / & if he had done meruailes the ij.
daies bifore / it semed to alle folkes it was nothing in comparison
16 to that he did the last day; for at that day there was none that <sup>King Philip
surpasses
himself.</sup>
might abide his strokes; so that by than the Trumpetes blewe the
retraite, there was not one on that othir side to feight with-alle.
Thus venguished he the Tournay by alle iij. daies / and our alle
20 othir next him / the kynge of Englund & the kynge of Scottes had <sup>He is the
First;
the Kings
of Englund
and Scotland
next.</sup>
the preyse / At the departyng of the Tournay, the Emperour sent
to alle the kynges & princes to suppe with him that night / and their
had he ordeyned the most noble and riche soper that euer had be
24 seen there bifore / thider came all folkes; and euery man set in
ordre / a prince alwey, and a princesse, or a grete lady / Aftir soper,
the Emperour called the moost part of the noble men that were in the
halle, reseruyng them that had tournaide / and also toke vnto hym
28 the kynges of Armes / and the notable heraldes of euery prince that
there was, and went in-to another halle in Counselle, and made the <sup>The grand
Council</sup>
Daunces to begynne, to disport the princes the meane while / and
whan he was in his counselle, accompanied as y haue seid you / he
32 asked what he shold do / and deliuerd the ordre of the tournay; and
asked if "they knewe any man that had accomplished the trye of
this, he wold holde his promesse, without makyng lenger tale" / It
was so clere matier, that alle, of one accorde, gaf the price of alle iij.
36 daies to the kynge of ffrance. The Emperour wolde haue the witte
& thause of the ladies, and sent for the emperesse, & for the moost
part of the ladies / and the remenaunt abode stille at the Daunces
with his doughtir. Than asked he ²their auisse, as he had done of ^[2 ff. 117, bk.]
40 the men / and anone they gaf their iugement to the kynge of

ffraunce. Themperour herynge this, toke the Emperesse by the hande, & came in-to the halle, and toke their daughtir as she was dauncyng / bitwene them bothe, and came toward the kynge of ffraunce; and whan he saw them, he came to them. Than said 4
themperour, "Right noble & valiaunt kyng! this Tournay was ordeyned like as ye knowe / wherof the price ys youen vnto you by alle iij. daies / hou-be-it, this Tournay compellith you not to take my doughtir, but if it please you. ¶ Natheles, here y presente hir to 8
you, in kepyng my promesse / and gif you the price / & hir, if it please you to take hir." [Illumination: 1. Iolante offerd to K. Philip; 2. married to him.]

The Emperor
offers his
daughter
Iolante to
King Philip,

WHan the kynge of ffraunce sawe this present that he moost desired, he kneled donne, & saide, "my lord! of the grete 12
honour and curtesie that ye do me / of hir that is so moche worth,—first, y thanke almighty god / and right humbly y thanke your grace & the Emperesse / and to outrageous & ferrest ourseyen shold he be, that suche a present refused / and as for me, 16
I am redy to take hir / and moost glad therof of any thinge" / Than toke he the faire maide, & kissed hir / and euery man preide god to sende them long lif to-gedir, with moche honour and ioie / fforthwith was an Archebisshop called, and he ensured them / and 20
the day of mariage was apointed the thrid day / and agein that day were cried Iustes of .xx. helmes against alle comers / at whiche day the kynge of ffraunce and alle his company apointed them as richely as was possible / The moost part of kynges & princis came to his 24
loggyng, to do him honour & company that day / than went they to the Emperours loggyng / where they fonde ¹themperesse and hir faire doughtir / accompanied with many ladies and gentilwomen redy to go to chirche. I can not reherce the grete richesse that was 28
that day shewed, in aray and in Iewels, amonge the princes and princesses / for eche was araied as riche as they coude / ye may wele thinke, the kynge of ffraunce & his company were not the werst; for, ful sory wold he haue ben to a wist any othir nacion to haue 32
passed him that day / But he and his vncle exceded in richesse, that day, alle othir princis that were there. whan he had seen the faire Iolant, he went to chirche, accompanied with many a grete
prince. and after was she brought to chirche; where they were 36
married with grete ioie / and than retourned home agein to dyner / whiche was as grete and as roialle, as to such folkes belonged / The kynge of ffraunce gaf to the heraldes grete richesse, whervpone they cried "largesse" thorough the halle, as was accustomed / after the 40

who gladly
takes her,

is plighted
to her,

and 3 days
alter

[leaf 118]

marries her.

boordes were taken vp / the daunces endured but a while, be cause of
the Iustes / At the Iustes, for the loue of the kynge of ffraunce and
of his wif, Themperour was on the vttir party, and the Duc of Bur-
4 goigne was on the Inne side, *with* the kynge of ffraunce / This
Iustes dured til it was euen / and torche light / There were iij. C.
helmes / and there were so many ladies & gentilwommen, that there
were Scaffoldes for them on eche side the felde / there had not be
8 seen bifore, grettir Iustes than tho. That day, was many an high &
noble crye of mighti kynges and princes & grete lordes. Thus
passed the day til soper tyme / & aftir soper, began the Daunces /
And there were riche monnaynges of grete princes / & many
12 riche presentes brought to this faire lady / Thus passed forth the
night, til it was tyme to go to rest / Than was the faire Iolant
brought to bed / The kyng of ffraunce taried not long aftir. Now
were there togedirs tho persones of the world that moost were to
16 be preysed / the night passed / the day came / the kynge arose /
and the quene bothe, and were araied so richely that it was meruaile
to beholde. The lordes came to se the kynge / the ladies & gentil-
women came to se the quene / what shalt I make lenger tale / this
20 fest endured xv. daies hole ; and euery day, newe Iustes & Tournay /
But ¹there was neur ffeite in this worlde / but onys it must haue
an ende.

Dances
follow ;
then Jousts.
The Jousts
in honour of
K. Philip's
marriage.

The Feast
lasts 15 days.
[1 ff. 118, bk.]

24 **Y**N an Euenyng, at a grete assemble, the Turke came to
themperour, and to the tothir kynges and Princes that were
there, seying vnto them / “ My lordes, ye knowe wele that,
in trust of you / y haue lefte the lawe that I held of / and toke me
to the lawes of Ihesu crist / eche of you hath promysed me aide /
28 and *withoute* helpe I can not abide in myn onne Cuntre / wherupon
I require you nowe of counselle and aide ” / The princes there pre-
sent, knewe that he seid trouthe ; [&] remembryng their promesse /
aduised them to sende, euery prince, [a lettre] vndir his seale, to alle
32 thestates of the Turkes lande, certifying them by the same, to take his
part, if it so were that they wold rebelle ageinst him / Thus concluded
they to sende messangers forth / In the meane tyme, auised him the
kynge of Englund / how he had ij. Sisters of grete beaute, and of
36 resonable age to be maried ; wherfore he thought he conde not bettir
bestowe the one of theym, than on the kynge of Scottes, his next
neighbour, for the grete loue, and long acqueyntaunce and familiarite
that had ben bitwene them. And the tothir Suster, he thought to
40 mary to the Duc of Burgoigne / But he seid, “ verily he wold neuer

The Emperor
and kings
notify to the
Turks that
they will
help him if
his subjects
rebel against
him.

The Duke of
Burgundy
declines to
marry.

Sultan
Charles's
beautiful
Sister

[1 leaf 119]

refuses, at
first, to give
up her Faith
and marry
King Hum-
phrey of
England,

who is very
much in love
with her,

be married / nor in his youthe entendid no mariage" / And whan
the kynge vndirstode the answeere of the Duc, he thought to mary
hir vnto the Turke / for he herd say the Turke had a Sustir of high
beaute, & she wold become cristen / he thought it were a metely 4
mariage for him to mary the Turkes suster, and the Turke to mary
his / Suche wordes were cast forth amonges the Princes; so that the
Emperour, and the kynge of ffraunce, and the Duc of Burgoigne,
that was an inly wise man, toke the besinesse vpon them / and 8
conduyte it so that thise mariages were accorded, and a messanger
sent forth for the Turkes suster / And assone as she might, she
came / at the commaundement of hir brothir / and whan they
knewe of hir comyng / The kynge of ffraunce, the kynge of Eng- 12
lond, and the kynge of Scottes, mette with hir, & brought hir to hir
logging. And whan she was alight, and they departed / the Turke
shewed vnto hir the cause of hir sendyng for / and howe he ¹was
bicomme cristen / and How, if she wold Bicomme cristen, he had 16
married hir to right a goodly Prince, & a mighti, whiche was the
kynge of England / But the first day, the seconde, & the third after,
coude he neuer turne his suster / and whan he sawe it wold no
bettir be, he came to the Emperour and to the kyng of ffraunce, the 20
kynge of Englonde & the kynge of Scottes, and tolde them / 'how
in no wise his suster and he coude accorde'; & tolde them what
answers she made him / The kynge of England,—that be this tyme
was right amorous, & supprised with hir grete beaute,—whan he 24
herd thise tidynges was right sorowfull / and chaunged colour &
countenaunce so fer forth, that he had not a word to speke. This
espied wele bothe themperour and the kynge of ffraunce / and than
seide the kynge of ffraunce / "brynge hir to the Emperesse, to be 28
accompanied with the ladies here, to se if they be of any grettir
power to chaunge hir than ye / and by this meane, may she haue
some acqueyntaunce of my brother, the kyng of England; whiche,
peraventure, may so turne hir hert, that she shal pray you of that 32
ye now pray hir." Themperour and alle they lough / The Turke
saide, 'and he might by any meane, he wolde bringe hir to the
Daunces to the ladies' / he did so moche, that aftir soper he brought
hir. And whan she sawe so grete assemble of Princis & princesses, 36
she meruailed gretly, thinkyng she sawe neuer so good a sight /
She salewed the Emperour and themperesse / and alle the ladies /
and alle the kynges and princis / than began the daunces / where
she avised wele the kynge of England, & thought him right a 40

- goodly knight / and a wele assured ; and there herd she y-nough the' she
thinks him
a goodly
man.
reherd of his noblesse & good maners. The ladies escorted hir a-
part to leue hir lawe / & eche seide the best they coude / but in no
4 wise coude they conuerte hir / Thus departed she to hir logging,
whan tyme was / sone aftir, came hir brothir vnto hir / and asked hir
' how she liked the company that she had seen that night.' she said,
" right wele " / he asked hir ' how she liked the kynge of England ' /
8 and her hert serued hir vnto him / she saide ' right wele, if she The Sultan's
Sister wants
to keep her
own Faith.
might kepe hir owne feith ' / othir answere coude he noon gete of
hir / Thus departed they ; and she went to bedde that night ; [then]
thought she of this goodly company she had seyne. ¹The kynge [1 H. 1:9, 10.]
12 of England was not forgotten / the more she remembrid him, the
bettir she liked him / hou-be-it her herte coude not agree for him,
nor noon othir, to leue hir feith / The kynge of England, on the
tothir side, the oftener he sawe hir, the more he loued hir / and
16 supposed wele in his mynde that he coude not bringe his purpose
about / wherfore he thought best / to depart. And on the morowe, Then the
King of Eng-
land says
he'll go home.
came vn-to the kynge of ffraunce, and tolde him his entent / The
kynge of ffraunce counseld him yit to abide / and went him self to
20 the Turke, and tolde him / " ye ar likly to lese here the kynge of
England, for he wil departe / for he thinkith his abidyng here
serueth him of nought / and so thinke y also / ffor thinke ye he is
a man to be kepte so long in speche? me semeth it is wele doo, ye
24 go to your suster to vnderstonde hir wille / and to take of hir this
night a ferme answere / ffor it is tyme that he be answerd one way
or othir " / " By my trouthe," seide the Turke, " it is not in my
defaute / that he is so long vnanswerd ; but to-morowe y shalt telle
28 you vttyrly hir will " / Aftir this, the Turke departed, and came to
his suster, and tolde hir, " I most this night telle a playne answere
of your entent / The kynge of ffraunce, the kynge of England, and
othir princis that be in this towne, wille departe / for the good wille
32 they haue vnto you and me / they haue longe kepte them here ;
wherfore me thinkith ye deale meruailously / But y pray you now, The Sultan
Charles
presses his
Sister for a
favourable
answer to K.
Humphrey.
say at ones howe ye wille be demeaned / whethir ye wille be agreable
to their desire and myne ; or ellis y shaft lete them departe / and
36 thanke them of their good wille they haue shewed me / how be it, if
they thus departe / by you shalt y lese the moost suro & specialle
frendes y haue in this world." whan his Suster herd him thus sey /
she knewe wele of force she most discouere hir entente touchyng
40 his alliaunce / and was so supprised that she wist not what to say /

The Sultan's
Sister is in
great doubt.

She thought, 'if she renaide not hir feith, she shold displease hir brother / and also put him in grete daunger, & losse of his frendes' / She thought also, 'if she shold leve hir feith / and take a newe, what iubarde that shold be vnto hir soule.' Thus was she a grete while 4 without speche. hir brothir presyd sore on hir alway to haue an

[1 leaf 120]

answere / And at the laste she 'said, "y am in a sorowfulle case / ffor ye, that be my souerain Lorde and brother, say / if y accomplissh not your pleasir / y shalt cause your grete iubarde / and perauenture 8 your destruccïon / and on that othir side / yf y renounce my feithe / what shal than befall of my soule" / "Be my feith," seide the Turke, "I take the perell therof on me" / "Than," quoth she,

She asks for 2
days' grace.

"y pray you respite me for ij. daies" / The Turke in no wise durst 12 graunte hit, til he hadde spoken with the kynge of ffrance / Than went the kynge of ffrance and he, to the kynge of England for this respite / and he was therto agreable, trustyng vpon a good answeare. On the morowe, the Turke toke ij. or iij. notable clerkis, & went to 16 his suster, and made them to shewe hir oure feith / and they exorted hir in suche wise that she was agreable to be cristened / and the same night was she cristened by the Emperesse and the quene of ffrance. Aftir that she was cristened, she came to se the Emperour, 20 & was there with the ladies til she was married / and the thridde day after, was the kynge of England and she married to-gedir with grete solempnite and Ioie.

She is con-
verted by
Christian
Clerks,

and marries
K. Hun-
pley of
England.

NOw shaH y telle you of the messangers that were sent in-to 24 the Turkes land: they did their deuoirs, so that thestates were assembled, and redde the letters of alle the Princes.

The Sultan's
subjects

and whan they knewe the tidynges, that their lord had taken the cristen feith / they were right sory / how-be-it they durst not make 28 no besinesse against him / for the drede they had of the promyses that alle thise princes had made vnto him / wherfore, of comon assent, they made a lettir to the Emperour and to the Turke, & to alle the princes that were there / puttyng them in knowlache / that, 'as for 32 the chaunge of his feith, they remitted that [to] his conscience; they were content to obey him on suche condicion, that noon shold be constreyned to leve his feith / for that wold they neuer do' / whan the messangers came agein, the Emperour and alle the kynges and 36 princis were wele content with their message. The suretees were taken bitwene them / Alle this done & performed, euery prince toke hede to his owne besinesse / The kynge of ffrance desired moche to go in-to his Realme. The Turke desired to mary his wif / The 40

require only
that they
may keep
their old
Faith.

kyng of Scottes in like wise / wherfore euery man wold departe
 from the Emperour / On a day, at good leiser, they came to the
 1 Emperour / and shewed him their desire; wherfore he was right ^[1 If. 120, bk.]
 4 sory / but he knewe wele it most nedes be so. Than asked he
 what they wold do. The kyng of Englund spake first, & seid <sup>The large
Sicilian
gathering is
to break up.</sup>
 he had promysed his ij. Sustres in mariage, as he knewe wele /
 whiche he wold fayne perfourme. Themperour desired the kyng
 8 of Englund & the kyng of Scottes, to pray the kyng of ffraunce to
 abide stille with him / "fforsothe," saide the kyng, "sith my first
 departyng oute of ffraunce to come in-to the werres of Sizile, sawe
 y not my lady my moder" / "forsothe," saide themperour, "ye
 12 haue grete reason than to se hir" / The kyng of Englund than
 besought the kyng of ffraunce to be at the mariage of his ij.
 Sustirs / "fforsothe," seide the kyng of ffraunce, "I shall, with right
 good wille." Themperour, hering alle thise apointementes, saide :
 16 "trewly, y hold my lond by god & you ij.; and therefore, my sone,
 y wille first go with you in-to your Realme / & fro thens in-to the
 Realme of Englund, to the mariage of the kinges Susters; & so come
 home thorough the Realme of Scotland, & conduyte the yong Quene;
 20 & fro thens come hider agein, where y shalt ende the remenaunt of
 my daies." This conclusion was taken bitwene him, the Turke, &
 the kynges, & the Duc of Burgoigne. Than euery man aredied
 him to departe; and alle on a day departed they. The kyng of
 24 Englund, his wif, & the Turke, departid to Englund / The king of
 Scottes in-to Scotland / Themperour, & the kyng of ffraunce & their
 wives, went in-to ffraunce / Now behoueth it to reherce how euery
 man sped his Iournay. ^[Illumination: Emperor, French King, &c. riding off.]
 28 **F**irst shalle we speke of the kyng of ffraunce / At his depart-
 ing, he sent to assertayne the Realme of ffraunce, & specially
 vnto his moder, of his comyng, & the trouthe of alle his for-
 tune / And whan the messangers came there / it can not be writen,
 32 the ioie that was than in the Realme of ffraunce. But ouir alle othir
 this disconsolate moder, the Quene of ffraunce, was glad whan she
 herd tidynges of hir right dere sone / Hou-be-it, she toke displeisir
 that he had be in ffraunce, & not spoken with hir. And whan she
 36 first herd ²tidynges of his comyng, she said / "Allas, my childe! if
 thi good ffather had knowen the alyve, he had yit lyued / or ellis
 departid out of this world more at his ease / But now, do god by
 me his pleasir; so that ones I might se the or y dye" / Suche
 40 wordes saide the good olde Quene of ffraunce, moder to the kyng /

The King
and Queen
of Englund,
and the
Sultan, go
to Englund;
K. David to
Scotland;
the rest to
France.

The Queen
Dowager of
France

[2 leaf 121]

longs to see
her Son be-
fore she dies.

Ouir alle the realme they range belles & made processions, thankyn
 god of his grete grace ; for thei neuer trusted to haue hadde the ioie
 of presence of their yong king / fulle grete ioie had thei also of his
 mariage, & of the good renoune of their yong Quene / This meane 4
 tyme, came themperour & the kinge of ffraunce into the Realme / &
 at their first entryng, ther mette them many estates & moche people.
 & whan he came amonges the people, they cried "Nowelt" with an
 high voice, yelding thank to god on their knees, ioynyn their 8
 handes to hevinwarde / whan the Emperour & his wif sawe in his
 Realme suche people in suche estate, their hertes were alle renewed
 with ioie. Aftir, came the nobles, in the moost & best biseyn com-
 pany that was seen there bifore. There was the clergie without 12
 nombre, solempnely & honourably set in ordre, whiche, next the
 comon people, salewed the kyng, preysyn god of his agein-comynge,
 whiche was not without wepyng / Than came the noble folkes,
 accompanied as is bifore reherced / and did vnto him their 16
 reuerences / and by one of them were the wordes saide bifore them
 alle, a grete processe / preysyn god of his retourne / grete was the
 preise there. And at thentryng of the Towne, the stretes were
 hanged / before their houses were the ladies & gentilwommen / 20
 burgeises & maydens ; grete was the ioie there. The processions
 were alwey bifore the kyng / And the Emperour and he alighted
 at the chief chirche / and so did the ladies, to praise and thanke
 god. Aftirwarde the kyng conueyed themperour to his loggyng / 24
 and than retourned to his owne. The towne made to the kyng &
 the Quene grete presentes ; & so they did to themperour & them-
 presse. Thus was the kinge & themperour receyued in euery place
 they came to in the Realme / and whan the Emperour came to 28
 Paryce, he and his folkes alle meruailed of the gret Richesse they
 sawe there / the kyng brought him to the palice / where as the
 Quene his moder, gretly accompanied with ladies & gentilwommen,
 mette with themperour & themperesse. But whan she sawe hir 32
 sone, she had no power to susteyne hir-self / for the ioie she had /
 and forthwith felt in swoune, wherof themperour & themperesse
 were right so^lrowfulle / but ouir alle othir, the king was moost sory /
 & brought þe Themperour to his chambre, & forthwith went to his 36
 moder, whiche he fonde somewhat recouerd. & whan he saw hir, he
 kneled downe, and fulle humbly axed hir mercy / and besought hir /
 that it pleased hir to take som payne to make chere to themperesse
 & to hir doughtir / The quene, that was right feble, saide vnto him / 40

King Philip,
 with his
 Queen and
 the Em-
 peror, enters
 France,

to his folkes'
 joy.

The clergy

and nobles
 greet them;

so do the
 burgesses
 and maidens.

They give
 presents to
 the King.

His Mother
 swoons for
 joy on seeing
 him.

[1 ff. 121, bk.]

- “ my sone, sith that y haue seen you a lyve bifore my dethe, I am
now content that god do by me as it pleasith him / Neuirtheles, I
shal make the best chere y can ; but trewly my lymmes may not
4 yit susteyne me ; wherfore y pray you sende for my faire doughtir,
your wif, that y may se hir ” / and whan she behelde hir, she thought
hir the fairest creature that euir she sawe / & made as moche of hir
as she coude / At night, the Emperour and themperesse supped in
8 their chambre. The king & the Quene supped *with* his modir / whiche King Philip
might not ete that soper tyme, for ioie she had of them bothe / Queen sup
That night, were brought grete presentes by them of Parice / bothe *with his*
to the Themperour & to Themperesse / & to the kynge & to the Mother.
12 Quene / &, whan tyme was, alle men went to rest / til on the morow /
they rose vp at good tyme, & herd diuine seruice / and than went
to dyner / And whan they had dyled / the Iustes began / It semed Jousts begin.
that tyme that alle the world was in ioie / This feste endured the The Festival
16 space of an hole moneth. The olde Quene reioysed hir so now, that lasts a
she put oute of mynde alle passed sorowes / Now came the tyme month,
that they most depart, to to go the mariage in England. The kinge
led *with* him his moder, to cause hir take som disport & ioie / for
20 longe tyme had she be *without* any / Themperour, thoroughout alle
the Realme, was fested in euery Cite, and in euery grete princes
house / that lay in his way / til he came to the departyng out of
ffraunce / where as he was as honourably conduyted, as he was
24 receyued at his first comyng. Now passeth he the see / & landid The King
at Dover / where as the kynge of Englonde, and his wif, and the and Queen
Turke, reseceyued them *with* grete honour ; & with the Quene were of France land
the kynges ij. Susters / that were right faire / The kyng of Scottes at Dover,
28 was not yit come / but he taried not long aftir / ffor the day of his
mariage was set or he went out of Sizile. There reseceyued the
kyng of Englonde, Themperour and Themperesse, the kynge of
ffraunce, & the ij. Quenes *with* grete honour / and, as long as they
32 were in the Realme, wold suffre them, nor noon of them, to pay for
no thing that they spent / Then rode ¹they til they came to [1 leaf 122]
London ; and in euery place Themperour and his company wel- and ride to
comed, as belonged to their estates. And whan they came to London.
36 London, The kynge of ffraunce was inly glad to se the richesse and
estate that he sawe there / & how nobly & honourably Themperour
was reseceyued ther. Sone aftir their comyng, came the kyng of
Scottes, whiche was mette *with* / by the kynges & princes that were
40 in the Towne, and was right highly & honourably reseceyued. The

K. Hum-
phrey's
Sisters marry
the Sultan
and the King
of Scotland.
The Marriage
Festival lasts
15 days.

day came, that the Turke and the kynge of Scottes shold be maried
to the kynge of Englonde's susters / A meruailous grete feste there
was, and a riche & a wele serued / The Iustes & festes were grete by
many daies. The feste endured xv. daies / Than departed them- 4
perour & the kyng of ffrance. The princes & the lordes of
Englond, that had lefte their childre with the kynge whan he
departid fro his fadir / made a grete request vnto the Turke / that
there might be a serche thorough his land, if any of their childre 8
were lyving / sayng that they wold with right good wille pay their
fynaunce / The kyng of Englond required him right hertly for the
same. The Turke promysed him to do asmoche as was possible
therin / The Emperour, that knewe wele that alle his conquest and 12
good fortune was comen him, next goddes helpe, by the thre kynges
present, and for the loue that he had to the kyng of Englond, he
saide to the Turke / "the aliaunce that ye haue with the kyng of
Englond, shalt make you now to recouere the places that y haue 16
within your land / ffor now ye be his brothir, y yelde and yeue
vnto you them frely agein / wherfore say gramercy to your brothir."
The Turke right humbly thankid the Emperour, and so did the
kyng of Englond also / Nowe cometh the tyme of Themperours 20
departyng / The kyng of Scottes besought him to take his way
thorough Scotland / and besought his ij. felawes that they wold
conduyte the Emperour thider / and desired the Turke in like wise.
Themperour and alle these kynges agreed to the kynges of Scottes 24
request / Thus departed they fro londone / and til they were out of
the Realme / the kinge of Englond wold not lete them be chargid
with nothing that they toke / And whan they came in-to Scotland,
they were there right wele and honourably resceyued, & gretly 28
fested ouir alle the Realme / Thus were they thre wekis in passing
thorough the Realme. And many grete festis & Tournais / And
whan the Emperour saw these iij. seruantes, that so long had
serued ¹him / he was right ioifult of their estate & puissaunce / and 32
thought his doughter wele vred / so did he the Realme of Sizile, &
desired no thinge so moche / as to se some childre of his doughtir
bifore his dethe / god graunted his request / for he sawe y-nough
come of hir, as faire childre as euer were borne / whiche did aftir, 36
grete thinges, as men may finde in Stories of ffrance. There
departed he & his ioifult company / at whiche departyng was
remembred more sorow than ioie / whan the Emperour shold say
fare wele, he coude not speke of a grete while ; but at last, whan 40

The Emperor
promises to

give back to
the Sultan
the Turkish
towns he
took (p. 155).

The Emperor
and the Kings
of France and
England visit
Scotland.

[1 ff. 122, bk.]

The Empe-
ror's daugh-
ter, Queen
Isolante, bears
many fair
children.

- he might speke, he saide that, daies of his lyve, had he neuer be so long to-gedir in ioie & wele / euery man toke leve of him / And whan his faire doughtir sholde take hir leve of him / he toke hir
 4 in his armes, and stode so a long while, & nouthur of them coude speke a worde / And whan the kynge of ffrance saw that / he made the departyng / and said to themperour / that at any tyme that it pleasid him, she shold come se him / than brought he hir to
 8 the Emperesse / and nouthur of them coude wele loke on othir for wepyng. Than departed the kyng them, like as he had done themperour and hir. Than went she in-to hir chambre, accompanied with many ladies & gentilwomen / Then the Emperour & them-
 12 peresse departed / and the Turke and his wif in his company / The king of ffrance, Englund, and of Scottes, conveied Themperour, & than toke their leve / at whiche departyng was grete sorowe; and eche embraced othir ful louyngly. Whan they were departed,
 16 Themperour, the Turke, and fferaunt, kepte their streight course in-to Sizile / and passed forth the tyme with talkyng of suche adventures as they had seen in their daies / & sped so wele that they came in-to Sizile / the Turke taried there but litil / but went home in-to
 20 his owne Cuntre, and his wif with him / where he was right worshipfully reseceyued, for dred of the two kynges that he was alied with / Than made he grete serche thorugh alle the Realme for the childre of Englund, and founde the moost parte of them, so that ther
 24 lakked not passyng two / Than made he them to be bayned, and kepte aswele as they coude / til they were agein in their strengthe and colour. than horsed he eche one of them, and apointed them in the best wise, and sent them in-to Englund, without payng of any
 28 raunsom / and sent letters vnto his brother of Englund, & ¹this present withall / wherof the kynge was ioifult as he might be / and gretely thanked the Turke / and sent him agein grete giftes. Now were the ffadirs & the modirs in grete ioie, that hadde agein their
 32 children.

The Emperor and Emperess

return to Sicily.

The Sultan and his English wife go back to Turkey,

set free all the English children there, and send them home.

[1 leaf 123]

- T**He kynge of ffrance, aftr the departyng of Themperour, abode there but a while / and the night before his departyng, supped alle thise iij. kynges to-gedre, & there made assur-
 36 aunce & promesse, eche to othir / that neuer noon of them shold faile othir; but that eche shold loue othir as brethern, and eche take othirs quarelt as his owne. On the morowe, departed the kynge of ffrance / the kyng of Englund & the kynge of Scottes conueied
 40 him / and at the departing there was many a sorowfull embrac-

The Kings of France and England quit Scotland.

yng / for ful glad wold they haue ben to haue contynued the
 remenaunt of their lyves to-gedre, if it might so be / but eche of
 them was of suche estate / that their besinesse and charge was
 suche / that thei might not contynue to gedre, which sore for- 4
 thought them alle / whan the kynge of ffrance, the Quene, & their
 company were shipped / the wynde serued them so wele / that
 within litil while they landed at Seluse. The Erle of fflaundres
 herd of his comyng, and met with him there / and made him grete 8
 chere & feest / and so forth brought him to Bruggys / and there
 made him alle the chere that was possible vnto him / The kynge, at
 his departyng, gaf him grete giftes / And whan the kynge came in
 to ffrance / he forgate not his good Hoste at Tolet in Spayne / nor 12
 his Nevewe, nor his wif, that longe had logged him / for he thought
 it was reason, now he was of suche estate & power, to remembre
 them that had so moche done for him / Wherefore he sent vnto them,
 assertaynyng them who he was that they had logged, praing them 16
 alle to come vnto him / And whan they spake with the messenger /
 & had verrily vnderstande his message / they were alle supprised
 with ioie / and in alle haste possible arriedied them to go vnto the
 kinge / whiche, at their comyng, made them passing grete chere / 20
 and thanked them of the grete goodnesse they had shewed him in
 his disease / and gaf vnto eche of them / of land / possessions and
 offices, y-nough for them, and those that shold come of them, to lyve
 [1 ff. 123, bk.] alway in honour / Afir thise tidynges thus done, ¹the olde Quene 24
 of ffrance contynued the remenaunt of her daies with grete ioie in
 goode & perfit lif. The Duc of Burgoigne coude not departe from
 his Nevewe / The kinge, & the Quene his wif, contynued to-gedre
 many yeres / & eche loued othir aswele as was possible / and serued, 28
 loued, & dred god, helde the Realme alle their lif in grete Iustice,
 peas, & tranquillite, and had children to their pleasir / The kynge of
 Scottes departed from the kynge of Englonde, and brought his wif
 home in-to Scotland / and bothe the king of Englonde, and he, & 32
 their wyues, contynued in many yeres to-geder / & had children,
 eche of them, suche as they were afir right ioyfulle of / and helde
 their Reaume in grete Iustice & peas / and their children contynued
 in the same afir their daies, hauyng moo Reaumes to gouerne than 36
 their fadirs had / wherof this storie makith noo mencion. But y
 suppose the Cronykells of the Reaume reherceth the noblesse of
 them / Themperour lyved but a while afir / Than felle the Reaume
 of Sizile to the kynge of ffrance, by reason of his wif / wherof he 40

The King
and Queen
of France go

thro' Bruges

to France.

K. Philip
rewards his
old Host at
Toledo.

King David
and his
English
Queen go
home to
Scotland,
have chil-
dren, and
live happily.

The Emperor
dies, and
Sicily falls

toke the possession. The Turke helde fermely the lawes of Ihesu
 eriste / and many of his Reaume / But the moost part wold neuir
 leve their feith / but he lyued not long aftir / nor neuer hadde childe
 4 by his wif / & aftir his dethe, was neuer goddis [lawe] kepte nor
 dred in that Cuntre / wherfore she went in-to Englund agein / and
 contynued the Remenaunt of hir lif with hir brothir.

to King
Philip of
France.

The Sultan's
English
widow comes
home to
Englund.

Thus endith this Boke, whiche hath ben translated with peyne,
 8 for the length of tyme sith alle thise thinges felle. And vndir the
 Boke was written,

Si fortuna tonat, caueto mergi.
 Si fortuna iuuat, caueto tolli.¹

¹ A much later hand has written above these 2 verses, 4 others as prose :—

“by faith, we please the lord /
 by faith, we are set free /
 by faith we work the will of god,
 faith will not idell bee.”

Note to page 136, line 5.

Poo or *Peacock*.—In the 14th century *Chanson de geste* of the *Vœux du Paon* (MS. Addit. Brit. Mus. 16,956, copied from a MS. No. 6985 (?) in the National Library at Paris: P. Paris *Manuscripts Français* iii. 106, A.D. 1840), “Porrus shoots the peacock (73 b.); it is served up at table, and Cassamus calls on all the knights to make their vows upon it (f. 74 b). ‘Elyot,’ a damsel of high degree, in the service of Fezomé (daughter of Godifer), carries it round; the vows are made, and the peacock is eaten (ff. 75-82 b).” Ward’s *Catalog of Romances in Brit. Mus.* i. 147.

GLOSSARY.

BY MR. THOMAS AUSTIN.

- A, *interj.* ah! 8/18, 34.
A, *pron.* he, 63/6, 109/7, 111/9.
A, *rb.* have, 4/6, 69/28.
Abielde, *rb. t.* habiled, dressed, 38/22;
abiled, *pp.* 50/28; abile, *inf.* 38/22.
Abused, *rb.* ill-used, 16/34.
Accompany, *rb.* take associates to, 180/
39.
Amated, *pp.* dismayed, overcome, 66/
34. See *Mate*.
Amegred, *pp.* emaciated, 9/36. Fr.
amaigrir.
Amenyssht, *pp.* diminished, 4/9.
Amonest, *rb.* admonish, warn, 5/12.
O.Fr. *admonester*.
And, *conj.* if, 7/7, 64/14.
Anoon, *adv.* anon, 75/30.
Armee, *sb.* army, 40/5. Fr. *armée*.
See *Navee*.
Armes, *sb.* do arms, fight, 61/11, 62/5.
Fr. *faire armes*.
Arowblast, *sb.* arblast, cross-bow, 42/
30.
Artrye, *sb.* artillery, 40/38; Arthery,
76/30.
Aryuail, *sb.* arrival, landing-place, 41/
10.
As and, as if, 13/37.
Asried, *rb.* challenged, 97/21.
Asserteyne, *rb.* inform, 4/11, 38/3.
Assured, *pp.* trained, 34/24, 193/18, 199/
1. Comp. Fr. *assurer un oiseau*, i. e.
a hawk, and also see *Ensured*. As-
surance is a *sine quâ non* of breeding:
—'Be bold, be bold, in everything be
bold, Be not too bold.'
Aventure, *sb.* hazard, peril, 3/9, 66/12.
Aught, *rb.* owed, 94/4.
Ayeust, *prep.* a. hym, before him, on his
entry, 19/14.
- Bargette, *sb.* small barge, 41/16. O.Fr.
bargette.
Be, *prep.* by, be than = by the time that,
68/27.
Beaumes, *sb.* trumpets, 75/8.
Belil, *rb.* befell, 2/23.
Behelde, *rb.* looked, desired, 33/38.
Belefte, *pp.* left, 13/31; bilefte, 165/39.
Bien venu, *sb.* welcome, 131/35. Fr.
bien-venue.
Boorde, *sb.* table, 128/34, 132/13.
Brake, *rb.* b. their embusshementes,
comp. break cover, 30/37.
Brayng, *sb.* groaning, 12/15.
But, unless, 168/14; but yif, but if, un-
less, 168/8.
By & hy, at once, 167/39.
- Castell, *sb.* somer Castells, 44/30. Per-
haps read 'fore C.'
Ceason, *sb.* season, 14/26, 21/20.
Chapelet, *sb.* chaplet of beads: comp.
Le chapelet se défile (of people falling
away), 25/1.
Chase, *rb.* chose, 68/3.
Chaunge, *rb. t.* he chaunged him,
changed his clothes, 178/35.
Chesse, *sb.* chess, 10/19.
Chierte, *sb.* affection, 162/7. O.Fr. *chiereté*.
Cloos, *adj.* close, 30/6.
Condite, *pp.* conducted, 94/23; condited,
94/14: condynte, *rb.* conduct, manage,
9/5; *pp.* 72/9.
Conduyt, *sb.* conduct, charge, 7/12.
Costeyde, *rb.* ? directed themselves, as
mariners did by the coast, 49/1.
Costeyrg, steering, 48/39. Fr. *côtoyer*.
O.Fr. *costeier*.
Credence, *sb.* credentials, 22/18, 24/12,
98/31.

- Cure, *sb.* yn e., careful, 16/7.
 Cured, *pp.* cared for, 8/26.
 Currou, *sb.* scout, 15/9, 21/26. Fr. *coureur*.
 Daies of my lif, all the days of my life, 159/33.
 Damageons, *adj.* injurious, 77/19. O.Fr. *damajos*.
 Daunger, *sb.* hane him . . in d. = have him at his mercy, 102/5, 128/31.
 Dedly, *adv.* in a deadly way, 169/38.
 Demaunde, *vb.* it is no d. = it is no question, 72/14.
 Departir, *sb.* departure, 27/37.
 Depnesse, *sb.* deepness, depth, 41/17.
 Despense, *sb.* expense, 26/21; dispence, 89/33.
 Despurneu, ill off (translated dispurveyed on p. 19), 9/24, 19/11. Fr. *dépourneu*.
 Diffended, *vb.* prevented, 146/11.
 Differred, *pp.* parted from, 102/5.
 Diligence, *sb.* pains, duty, 43/9, 14.
 Discomfortable, *adj.* uncomfortable, 31/38.
 Discomfortid, *pp.* afflicted, 11/38. Fr. *déconforté*.
 Disherite, *pp.* deprived of his inheritance, 1/17.
 Dispende, *vb.* spend, 101/23.
 Dispuraunce, *sb.* dispurveyance, destitution, lack (of children), 25/34.
 Dispuruaide, *adj.* dispurveyed, unprovided, 4/19, 19/9.
 Doket, *sb.* ducat, six shillings and eightpence, 108/6.
 Doule, *sb.* dole, grief, 77/37. Fr. *deuil*.
 Draught, *sb.* shot, range of a weapon, 42/30, 44/33.
 Dredefulle, *adj.* dreadful, full of fear, 152/24.
 Dressid, *pp.* prepared, 164/1.
 Dressith, *vb.* applieth, turneth, 81/3.
 Dyamant, *sb.* diamond, 163/19. Fr. *diamant*.
 Elegged, *pp.* alleged, 100/22.
 Embandon, *vb.* abandon, 88/13.
 Emploiede, *vb.* applied to, continued, 13/40.
 Enclosed, *pp.* shut up, straitened, 151/11.
 Enewred, *pp.* inured, hardened, 2/30.
 Enlargissing, *sb.* enlargement, release, 102/1.
 Enquerre, *sb.* enquiry, 63/22. O.Fr. *enquerre*.
 Ensured, *pp.* trained, 10/18. See *Assured*.
 Entend, *vb.* listen to, attend to, 12/12. Fr. *entendre*.
 Entremete, *vb.* meddle, 7/3. Fr. *s'entremettre*.
 Entreprise, *vb.* undertake, 9/10; entreprynse, 4/22, 6/38.
 Erste, *adv.* noon erste, not sooner, 19/18.
 Escape, *vb.* escaped, 46/9, 58/27.
 Eurons, *adj.* fortunate, happy, 35/4, 38/26; ewrous, 101/2. Fr. *heureux*.
 Ewred, *adj.* destined, fortuné, 62/23.
 Feliship, *sb.* escort, company of troops, band, 28/23, 31/33, 45/6.
 Feuyrer, *sb.* February, 9/20, 27/37. Fr. *février*.
 Fille, *vb.* fell, 143/40.
 Fleer, *sb.* fugitive, 149/7.
 Florence, *sb.* florin (Sicilian florin is 2s. 6d.), 155/19.
 Forerider, *sb.* advanced rider, 14/33; forrider, 31/34.
 Fors, no fors = no matter, 171/27. Fr. *force*.
 Fortrauailed, *adj.* tired out, 31/19.
 Fote, *sb.* foot (Proverb), 29/5.
 Fronters, *sb.* frontiers, 28/32.
 Frussh, *sb.* burst, 15/27. O.Fr. *froisser*.
 Fynaunce, *sb.* ransom (used also in Romance of *Partenay*, l. 1853), 20/39, 93/13, 94/6, 95/11.
 Fyne, *sb.* end, 8/17. Fr. *fin*.
 Gabbid, *pp.* talked idly, lied, 32/12. Comp. Fr. *gaber*.
 Golde, *sb.* gold, 18/24; goold, 13/21.
 Gonne shotte, gunshot, 42/33; gownes, guns, 75/34.
 Grehounde, *sb.* greyhound, 30/30.
 Gressith, *vb.* grazeth, 112/13.
 Half, *sb.* at the lest li. = at least, 92/26. Before 'half' (92/8), words were probably left out by the MS. copyist.
 Hardies, *sb.* boldness, 23/30. Fr. *hardiesse*.
 Herbegeour, *sb.* harbinger, marshal, 178/3; herbeior, 53/31.
 Hoolde, *vb.* hold, 51/10.
 Hou . . . someuer, howsoever, 8/15.
 Humbles, *sb.* humblesse, humility, 35/39.

- Induce, *vb.* introduce, induct, 2/16.
 Infortune, *sb.* misfortune, 1/23, 45/37.
 Fr. *infortune*.
 Journey, *sb.* battle, fight, 15/31, 32/29.
 Fr. *journée*.
 Inbarde, *sb.* jeopardy, 78/13; inbardy, 169/25.
 Inbarde, *vb.* jeopard, 171/26.
 Labores, *sb.* labourers, ? 'laboreres,' 97/33, 102/15.
 Large, *adj.* bountiful, free-handed, 164/15; a large half heure = a full h. h., 33/27.
 Large, at their = at large, 163/2.
 Lawe, *sb.* faith, 132/9.
 Leest, *adv.* least, 17/29.
 Lette, *vb.* hinder, prevent, 70/18.
 Lene, *sb.* leave, haue l. = have taken l., 162/11; liberty to go, 162/31.
 Lene, *vb.* leave, 29/27; leneth, *imp.* leave off, 119/16; leue of, leave off, 119/32.
 Lene, *vb.* live, 29/28; lenyth, liiveth, 11/39.
 Leve, *vb.* believe, 151/22.
 Loos, *sb.* praise, 17/23, 117/36. *Fr.* *los*.
 Lynerey, *sb.* delivery, 53/6.
 Make, *sb.* mate, 63/8.
 Male-enrus, *adj.* unhappy, unlucky, 60/17. *Fr.* *malheureux*, O.*Fr.* *malenreus*.
 Malyncolious, *adj.* melancholy, 79/16. O.*Fr.* *melancolieus*.
 Maner, *sb.* manner (manners), politeness, 33/8; manere, 29/1; the manere, 36/18. *Fr.* *manière*.
 Marchers, *sb.* lords of the marches, 6/9.
 Marches, *sb.* borders, 6/37, 9/26.
 Mate, *adj.* mortified, downcast, 79/22. *Fr.* *maté*.
 Maugre, *sb.* ill-will, 81/12, 180/29. *Fr.* *maugré*, *mal gré*.
 Mette, *vb.* meet, 179/33; met, 179/34.
 Meyne, *sb.* attendants, household, 88/7. O.*Fr.* *maînuée*, *meyné*.
 Mischief, *sb.* mishap, at a m., in evil plight, 52/28. O.*Fr.* *meschief*.
 Moorning, *vb.* mourning, 7/26.
 Moost, *adv.* most, 13/28, 30.
 Most, *vb.* must, 21/19.
 Muster, *sb.* make his musters (of knights), watch his arms, 156/24.
 Mysbeleue, *sb.* misbelief, heresy, 13/7.
 Navee, *sb.* navy, 40/13. O.*Fr.* *navie*.
 Neuirles, nevertheless, 65/40.
 Noblè, nobley, *sb.* magnificence, dignity, 68/5, 179/21.
 Non, *sb.* noon, 92/5.
 Nonpareil, nonpareil, matchless, 55/28.
 Nowell, cry (Nowell is also used by Chaucer), 192/23. *Fr.* *crier Noël*, cry Christmas (used for a wished-for thing), and much like 'Hurrah.'
 Obesaunce, *sb.* obedience, 4/22.
 Of, *adv.* off, 2/36, 53/2.
 Of, *prep.* for, like *Fr.* *de*, 35/33.
 On, *prep.* used like *Fr.* *sur*, conquer on . . ., 72/11.
 Ordeyned, *pp.* cared, prescribed for, looked to, 19/12.
 Othe, *vb.* swear, 163/2.
 Ouirthrewe, *vb.* was overthrown, 16/18. See also *Conquest of Ireland*, 62/21.
 Out, *vb.* get out, 6/22.
 Pame, *sb.* tennis, 37/25. *Fr.* *pauue*.
 Party, *sb.* game, match, 67/7. *Fr.* *partie*, *tenir la partie*.
 Pavis, *sb.* *pl.* large shields for covering body, 52/12. *Fr.* *parois*.
 Pens, *sb.* peace, 4/3; pees, 1/7. O.*Fr.* *pais*.
 Peisaunt, *adj.* weighty, 25/8. *Fr.* *pesant*.
 Perdition, *sb.* destruction, 68/32.
 Perdurable, *adj.* everlasting, eternal, 7/32. *Fr.* *perdurable*.
 Peyne, *sb.* pain, trouble, work, 69/7.
 Pleasir, *sb.* pleasure, 6/6, 17/33. *Fr.* *plaisir*.
 Point, *sb.* break, 59/28, 67/13. *Fr.* *point du jour*.
 Poo, *sb.* peacock, 136/5, etc.
 Premener, *sb.* promoter, 6/38.
 Purcenaunts, *sb.* pursuivants, 32/28.
 Recomfort, *sb.* comfort, 11/28.
 Recomfort, *vb.* comfort, 12/8.
 Recouerir, *sb.* recovery, 84/39, 86/13.
 Recoured, *pp.* recovered, 22/22.
 Recured, *pp.* recovered, made their way back, 124/29.
 Redeles, *adj.* senseless, 70/30.
 Reise, *vb.* raise, levy, 91/14.
 Renay, *vb.* deny, 102/14; rennaye, 158/22. *Fr.* *renier*, Lat. *renegare*.
 Renome, renone, *sb.* renown, 4/1, 159/22. *Fr.* *renom*.
 Renonce, *sb.* renown, 98/25. *Fr.* *renommée*.

- Rescous, *sb.* rescue, 125/23; rescouse, 125/5; rescuse, 46/1, 69/7. O.Fr. *rescoussé*.
 Resort, *vb.* retire, 157/15; resorted, returned, 76/28.
 Ressplendishd, *vb. int.* glittered, 123/8. Fr. *resplendir*.
 Retourned, *vb. t.* turned, 16/16. Fr. *retourner*.
 Roode, *vb.* rode, 75/33.
 Rought, *vb.* recked, 155/12.
 Russet, *vb.* ? rushed, 60/10.
 Rynage, *sb.* beach, shore, 40/16. Fr. *rivage*.
 Sad, *adj.* sober, 24/18.
 Sacred, *pp.* consecrated, 86/36. Fr. *sacré*.
 Salowed, *vb.* saluted, 104/36. Fr. *saluer*.
 Sauffcondite, *sb.* safe conduct, 93/40. Fr. *saufconduit*.
 Saute, *sb.* assault, 52/12.
 Sawe, *prep.* save, except, 87/25.
 Scutes, *sb.* florins (see p. 72). 71/14. Fr. *écu*, so called from the shield of arms on it. Here it is the small *écu*, or half-crown.
 Serpentyne, *sb.* serpentine, gun with bore of $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches, 40/38.
 Showre, *sb.* storm, tempest, shower, 131/11.
 Somer, *sb.* sumpter, 53/39. Fr. *sommier*.
 Sowde, *vb.* pay, 4/27. Fr. *souder*.
 Sowne, *sb.* swoon, 11/24.
 Spense, *sb.* expense, 122/14.
 Spore, *vb.* spur, 49/15.
 Spradde, *pp.* spread, 38/8.
 Sprynge, *sb.* spring of day, like *point*, 140/36.
 Stale, *vb.* stole, 152/25.
 Steerne, *sb.* helm, 60/10.
 Suffised, *pp.* contented, 8/38.
 Surely, *adv.* in safety, 177/6.
 Surmountour, *sb.* surpasser, exceller, 177/9.
 Surnoine, *pp.* surnamed, 36/39. Fr. *sur-nommé*.
 Surtee, *sb.* affidavit, treaty, 107/40. Fr. *sureté*.
 Swone, *sb.* swoon, 39/25.
 Sy, *vb.* saw, 15/34.
 Taberyne, *sb.* tabor, 40/24. O.Fr. *tabourin*.
 Tain, *num. adj.* one, 14/31.
 Taklee, *pp.* tackled, rigged, 81/32.
 Tarded, *vb.* detained, 10/27.
 Than, *conj.* by than = by when, by the time that, 68/27, 152/15.
 There as = where, 13/19. See *Where as*.
 Tinges, *sb.* ? things, things, 109/39.
 To, *prep.* on board; to shippe = aship, 39/37.
 Toppis, *sb.* tops (of the masts), 44/30.
 To-srag, *pp.* scratched, 130/9.
 Touchid, *vb. t.* to, touched, 25/22.
 Tough, *conj.* though (note pronunciation), 11/14.
 Trapoures, *sb.* trappings, 185/10. Fr. *trappure*.
 Treter, *sb.* traitor, 18/13.
 Trist, *adj.* sad, 26/36. Fr. *triste*.
 Trussid, *pp.* packed, 168/28. O.Fr. *trosser*, *forser*.
 Vacche, *sb.* watch, 74/39.
 Valet, *sb.* servant, 30/26.
 Vessel, *sb. pl.* vessels, 63/35.
 Vigours, *adj.* vigorous, 20/15.
 Vndrowned, *pp.* unsunk, 42/34.
 Vnsayne, *pp.* unseen, 166/21.
 Vntolde, *vb.* did not tell, left untold, 174/30.
 Vp, *adv.* they founde vp, 53/24. Comp. hunt up.
 Vred, *pp.* well ured = fortunate, happy, 145/15.
 Vrous, *adj.* happy, 181/14.
 Wacche, *sb.* the belle of the wacche, 123/3. Comp. τοῦ κώδωνος παρενεχθέντος, Thuc. iv. 135. London Watchmen also carried bells.
 Warte, *sb.* ward, warder, 14/32.
 Weeles, *sb.* weals, goodnesses, 133/32; weelis, 33/3; wele, 36/24; weles, prosperities, 24/21.
 Wery, *vb.* were, 153/3.
 What-som-euer, whatsoever, 27/24.
 Where as = where, 14/29.
 Where-someuir, wheresoever, 64/40.
 Wided, *pp.* voided, departed, 88/11.
 Wilke, *vb.* walked, 47/19.
 Wite, *vb.* know, 12/24, 168/34.
 Withhelde, *vb.* retained, 22/31.
 Yelde, *vb.* repay, requite, 37/7.
 Yen, *sb.* eyen, eyes, 79/40.
 Yngoodly, *adj.* excellent, 174/23.
 Yolden, *pp.* yielded, 176/38.

INDEX OF PROPER NAMES, &c.

BY MR. THOMAS AUSTIN.

ALBORS, King of Spain, weds his daughter to the King of Sicily, 3.

Alfour, King of Sicily, marries Princess Sybil of Spain, daughter of King Albors, 3; has a daughter, Iolante, 3; seeks help against the Turks, 4; gets no help, 5; is joined by Ferant and Prince Philip, 14; hears of capture of Ferabras, 21; Ferabras is handed over to him, 33; Prince Philip presented to him, 34; the French, English, and Scotch expedition reach Gaeta, 40; he is complained of by his allies, 54, who suffer loss by a storm, 59; holds a Council about the loss of the allies at sea, 66; goes to Naples, 68; proposals for ransom of Ferabras laid before him, 94; resolves to consult Ferant about it, 95; welcomes Prince Philip and Prince David at Court, 108; plans defence of Naples against the Turks, 120, 121; gives his officers a banquet, 132; recaptures his towns, 145, 152; is made Emperor, 146; refuses to let Orcays be ransomed, 148; consults his Council on marriage of Iolante, 153; holds a preliminary Tournay on her account, 156, and proclaims final one, 158; goes to Milan to be crowned, and to Rome, 163; welcomes King Humphrey, 181; holds the Tournay, 188; agrees to help the Sultan, 197; visits England, 204; visits Scotland, 204; his death, 206.

Baltasar, a mercenary, a knight of the Sultan's, 42.

Brunswick, Frederick, Duke of, 146.

Burgundy, Duke of, is made regent of

France, 86; talks with Philip, 166; intends personating Philip at the Tournay, 168; goes to Naples, 182; is met by the Emperor, 185; refuses Orcays' sister, 197, 206.

Bussaunt, Earl of (? Buchan), saved from shipwreck, 63.

Capletrent, 122. Cape (or Point) Trionto, on the coast of Italy, extending into the Gulf of Taranto. Lat. 39° 35' N.; long. 16° 50' E.

Charles, King of France, marries a daughter of the King of Navarre (? Navarre), 1; they have a son, 1; is urged by his son to help the King of Sicily, 5; he declines, 5-7; finds his son is departed, 11; his ships at Gaeta, 43; reproaches himself, 65.

Constable of France, 43; his fate unknown, 63.

David, Prince of Scotland, heads the Scotch troops, 27; holds a Council, 46; is shipwrecked, 60, and taken, 61; saved by his captor, and released, 62; goes to Sizé, 72; joins in the sally, 75; captures his captor, Prince Orcays, 76, and sets him free, 77; his rashness, 99; goes to the Neapolitan Court, 108; relates his adventures, 133; goes to see Iolante, 151; does well at the Tournay, 157; goes home, 163; his arrival, 175; succeeds his father, 177; returns to Sicily, 178; returns home, 201; his marriage, 204.

Douglas, Earl, of Scotland, 39; shipwrecked, 60; slain, 61, 133.

Dover, 203.

- England, King of, promises help to the Sicilians, 24; prepares his forces, 38; laments his loss, 65; sorrows for his son's departure for Sicily, 84; mourns his son as dead, 86; dies, 175. See *Humphrey*.
- Ferabras, King of Persia, brother to the Sultan, with him subdues half Sicily, 13; is at Fondi, 14; is captured by Prince Philip in a skirmish, 16; desires to see his captor, 18, 20; is handed over to King of Sicily, 33; proposals for his ransom laid before the King, 94; a Council held thereon, 101; Turkish knights visit him in prison, 104; is enlarged for a time, 106; reaches the Sultan, 107; sends Prince Humphrey to Prince Philip, 113; Sultan apologizes to him, 115; goes to Persia about his ransom, 116; terms of his ransom, 155.
- Ferant, a Sicilian knight, King Alfons's Seneschal, is sent to Spain to ask help, 13; leaves Toledo with Prince Philip, 13; reaches Sicily, 14; is rescued by Philip, 16; visits him, 19; reports Ferabras's capture to the king, 21; his troops attacked by troops of King Ferabras of Persia, 30; commands garrison of Sizé with Philip, 68; Prince David of Scotland joins him, 72; sallies out of Sizé, 75; resolves on a sortie, 96; blames Philip and David for rashness, 99; holds a Council to advise King of Sicily, 100; is welcomed at Court, 108; takes the three Princes to the Emperor, 151; is sorry at their departure, 161.
- Fosses, a town four miles from Gaeta, 51; is captured from the Turks, 53.
- Fondéy (Fondi), a town near Gaeta, in kingdom of Two Sicilies, is held by the Turks, 14; Scotch spies come near it, 47.
- France, King of, Charles, weds a Princess of Navarre (? Navarre), 1; objects to help Sicily, 5; is against his son's departure, 7; mourns at his departure, 11; agrees to help Sicily, 24; prepares his forces, 38; recalls them after the shipwreck, 63; his death, 86. See *Philip*.
- Gayette, Gaeta, occupied by the Sultan, and the Christian fleet anchor there, 40; Turks repel the Christians, 45; the fleet leaves it, 56; is recaptured from the Turks, 147.
- Humphrey, Prince, of England, 78; wishes to help Sicily, 81; starts, 83; is captured, 85; is let out of prison, 110; the Sultan wants to drown him, 111; King Ferabras sends him to Prince Philip, 113; joins the other Princes, 117; tells of his release, 134; is taken to the Neapolitan Court, 151; at the Tourney, 157; goes home, 163; is told of his father's illness, 170; goes to his father's death-bed, 173; is crowned king, 175; makes ready for the Tourney, 175; is welcomed back at Naples, 181; second at the final Tournament, 195; marries Orcays' sister, 200; returns home, 201; his sisters marry the Sultan and the King of Scotland, 204; returns from Scotland, 205.
- Iolante, daughter of the King of Sicily, 3; desires to see Prince Philip, 23; Philip falls in love with her, 37; she loves him secretly, 109; the three Princes go to visit her, 151; her marriage pondered, 153; a three days' Tourney is to decide it, 154; the preliminary Tourney, 156; the grand Tourney proclaimed, 158; is told that Philip will win her in the Tourney, 190; meets Philip, 193; dances with him, 194; her marriage, 196; welcomed in France as queen, 202; goes to England, 203.
- Le toure de Gretus, a port near Gaeta, 56.
- London, 171, 203.
- Luby (? Lybia), King of, 145.
- Millayne (Milan), 163.
- Naples, the King of the Two Sicilies goes there, 67, 68; Turkish messengers arrive there, 94; Neapolitan Court, 108; the Sultan resolves to besiege it, 120; the king arranges the defence, 121; the siege, 123; Ferant sets a gallows up on the walls, to hang Orcays, 127; a grand banquet there, 132; the Turks do not succeed,

137; the siege raised, 140; the Sultan killed before it, 142; Council held there, 153; preliminary Tournament to decide about Iolante's marriage, 156; adorned for final Tourney, 185.

Nauerne (? Navarre), 1.

Oliver, Ferant's brother, is captain at Taprey, 14, 29, 49, 51.

Oreays, son of the Great Turk, takes Prince David of Scotland, and sets him free again, 61, 62; sends him to his friends, 71; is captured by Prince David, 76; released by him, 77; is captured again, 125; gallows prepared for him, 127; at the banquet, 132; tells his history, 135; vows to give back his father's conquests, 136; in love with Iolante, 137; the Turks wish to ransom him, 149; his ransom advised, 153; terms of it, 155; is at the Tourney, 157; his departure, 159; wants Iolante, 164; his return to Sicily, as Sultan, 179; offers to turn Christian, 180; turns Christian, and takes name of Charles, 187; goes to England, 201; marries a sister of David of Scotland, 204; returns to Turkey, 205; his widow returns to England, 207.

Paris, 9, 12.

Peacock, used to swear by, 136.

Persia. See *Ferabras*.

Philip, son of Charles, King of France, is born, 1; is christened, 2; urges his father to help the King of Sicily, 5; is grieved at refusal, 7; resolves to go to Sicily, 9; leaves Paris, and changes his name, 9; goes to Toledo and falls sick, 10; starts from Toledo with Ferant, 13; reaches Sicily, 14; fights his first skirmish, 15; captures King Ferabras, 16; the Sicilian ladies are anxious to see him, 23; is ordered to Sicily, 28; retakes King Ferabras, 31; pledges his faith to Ferant, 35; falls in love with Iolante, 37; commands garrison of Sizé with Ferant, 68; is at the Council on ransoming of Ferabras, 101; advises Christian captives to be freed, 102; is welcomed at Neapolitan Court with Ferant and David of Scotland, 108; is

joined by Prince Humphrey of England, 117; is captured by the Turks, 124; the Sultan resolves to hang him, 126; is rescued, 129; helps to take Gaeta, 146; Iolante sorrows for his supposed death, 150; is taken by Ferant to her, 151; does best of all at the preliminary Tourney, 157; resolves to return home, 159; returns, 163; talks with his uncle, 166; returns to Naples, 182; acts as his uncle's squire, 184; his supposed absence lamented, 187; does best at the Tournament, 189, etc.; the Emperor embraces him, 192; is taken to see Iolante, 193; accepts her, and is married, 196; his welcome in France, 202; goes to England, 203; returns home, 205; succeeds to throne of Sicily, 206.

Port Dean, in Scotland, 39.

Rome, 163.

Scuse, Shys, 206.

Scotland: the king refuses to help Sicily, 6; the Estates advise him to do so, 25; Prince David heads expedition, 27; the king makes joint preparations with France and England, 38; the joint fleet reaches Gaeta, 40; is repulsed, 45; Scotch spies sent out, 47; losses in the Scotch fleet, 63; grief of the king, 65; his death, 177. See *David*.

Shipwreck of vessels of the allied fleet, 59, 63.

Sicily, *i. e.* the Two Sicilies, *passim*.

Sizé, Sessa, a town near Gaeta, a garrison left there, 67; the Turks resolve to lay siege to it, 69; Prince David goes there, 73; Prince Oreays captured in a sally, 75, 76; daily sallies, 87; the Turks think of raising the siege, 89; a sortie resolved on, 96; success of it, 98.

Spain. King of, asked to help Sicily, 13; will give no help, 66. See *Albors*.

Sultan (the Grand Turk), subdues half Sicily, 13; opposes the landing at Gaeta, 40; calls a Council, 42; detains Prince David, 62; resolves to besiege Sizé, 69; goes to see the encampment, 75; calls a Council about the siege, 88; wishes a truce, 103, and settles it, 107; leaves garrisons

- in Sicily, 109; wants to kill Prince Humphrey, 112; apologizes to King Ferabras, 115; appeals to his subjects for help, 119; resolves to besiege Naples, 120; wishes to hang Prince Philip, 127; sees the siege is useless, 137; holds another Council, 138; is killed before Naples, 142.
- Sybil, the King of Spain's daughter, marries King Alfour of Sicily, 3.
- Talpoir, same as Taprey, 21, 22.
- Taprey, a town in the kingdom of the Two Sicilies, near Gaeta, 14, 16; called Tapyr, 47; still held by Oliver, 48, 51.
- Toledo. See *Towlette*.
- Tournament, preliminary, to decide about marriage of Iolante, 154, 156; the field for the final one is settled, 187, 188; King Philip's side wins, 189, 191, 195; the party disperses, 201.
- Towlette, Toledo in Spain, is reached by Prince Philip, 10; he lies sick there, 12, 22, 206.
- Turks make war against Sicily, 4; repulse the Christian fleet at Gaeta, 45; besiege Sizé, 69; make a year's truce, 107; besiege Naples, 123; blame their Sultan, 139; defeated before Naples, 142; are downcast, 149; make a three years' truce, 155. See *Sultan*.
- Warwick, Earl of, welcomes Prince Humphrey on part of King of England, 171, 172.
- Warwick, son of the Earl of, reproaches Prince Humphrey, 79, 82.

RETURN TO  **CIRCULATION DEPARTMENT**
202 Main Library

CIRCULATION DEPARTMENT
202 Main Library

LOAN PERIOD 1 HOME USE	2	3
4	5	6

ALL BOOKS MAY BE RECALLED AFTER 7 DAYS

1-month loans may be renewed by calling 642-3405

6-month loans may be recharged by bringing books to Circulation Desk

Renewals and recharges may be made 4 days prior to due date

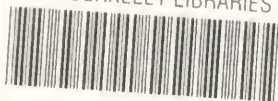
DUE AS STAMPED BELOW

[illegible]

FORM NO. DD 6, 40m 10'77

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA, BERKELEY
BERKELEY, CA 94720

U C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C042640134

